As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols ⚠⚠📖 on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

⚠⚠ is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

➡ **Safety Labels** P. 134

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.
This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.
However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.
However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Vehicle Data Recordings*

This vehicle records the following information as data when the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) is operated.

- Operational status of each function of the CMBS
- Accelerator / brake pedal operation
- Vehicle speed
- Information such as distance and relative speed of the target identified by the CMBS activated

Honda may obtain and use the recorded data for the purpose of technical diagnosis and research and development of Honda vehicles.
The CMBS does not record images or audio inside the vehicle.
Special tools are required to review or remove data recorded by CMBS.
Disclosure of data
Honda will not disclose or provide the acquired data to third parties with data recorded by CMBS except in the following cases:

- When the owner of the vehicle consents
- When required by law, court order, or similar legally enforceable request
- When the data has been processed to de-identify/anonymise the vehicles/users, such as when aggregate data is provided to research institutions

* Not available on all models

System Updates Terms & Conditions*

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server, or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu you may elect to automatically download and install these updates or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy notice are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy notice. Our privacy notice sets out information about how we and any named third-parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us via the application. See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, users, and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver system updates and related services
- to allow us to improve and optimize system updates products and services
- to respond to user questions and complaints
- for internal record keeping
- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights
- as otherwise described in Honda's Privacy Notice and Vehicle Data Privacy Notice

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation), and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third-parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

* Not available on all models

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, Audio/Information screen details, and Meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.

Safe Driving P. 41

For Safe Driving P. 42 Seat Belts P. 47 Airbags P. 62
Safety Labels P. 134

Instrument Panel P. 135

Indicators P. 136 Gauges and Displays P. 160

Controls P. 217

Clock P. 218 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 219
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 257
Climate Control System P. 325

Features P. 333

Audio System P. 334 Colour Audio P. 336
Audio Error Messages* P. 578

Driving P. 597

Before Driving P. 598 Towing a Trailer P. 602 Off-road Guidelines P. 609
Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 789 Multi-View Camera* P. 791

Maintenance P. 811

Before Performing Maintenance P. 812 Oil Monitor System P. 815
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 845
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 862 Cleaning P. 865

Handling the Unexpected P. 873

Tools* P. 874 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 875
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 909 Overheating P. 911
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 929

Information P. 939

Specifications P. 940 Identification Numbers P. 943
Open Source Licence P. 957

Contents

Quick Reference Guide P. 6

Post-Collision Braking System P. 80
Child Safety P. 81
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 133

Safe Driving P. 41

Instrument Panel P. 135

Tailgate P. 236
Security System P. 247
Windows P. 249
Panoramic Roof* P. 253
Mirrors P. 279
Seats P. 283
Interior Convenience Items P. 303

Controls P. 217

Features P. 333

Display Audio P. 388
Display Audio with Google built-in P. 484
General Information on the Audio System P. 580

Driving P. 597

When Driving P. 611
Honda SENSING P. 674
Braking P. 767
Parking Your Vehicle P. 777
Refueling P. 805
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions P. 809
Turbo Engine Vehicle P. 810

Maintenance P. 811

Maintenance Schedule P. 822
Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 829
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 842
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 849
Battery P. 855
Remote Transmitter Care P. 859
Accessories and Modifications P. 871

Handling the Unexpected P. 873

Handling of the Jack P. 899
Engine Does Not Start P. 900
If the Battery Is Dead P. 906
Indicator Coming On/Blinking P. 913
Fuses P. 920
Emergency Towing P. 928
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 931
Emergency Call (eCall)* P. 933

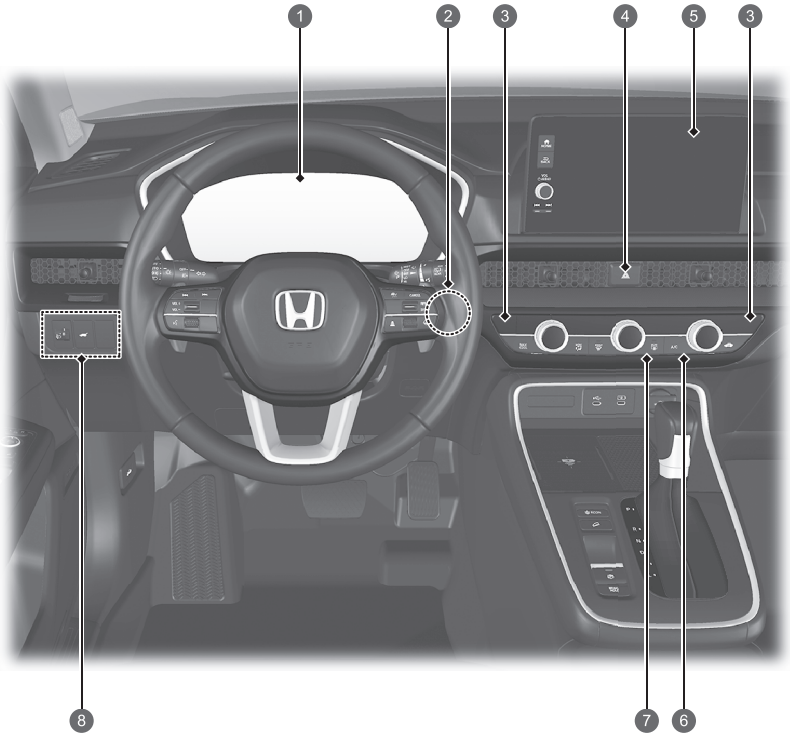
Information P. 939

Utility Compliance* P. 944
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 945

Index P. 959

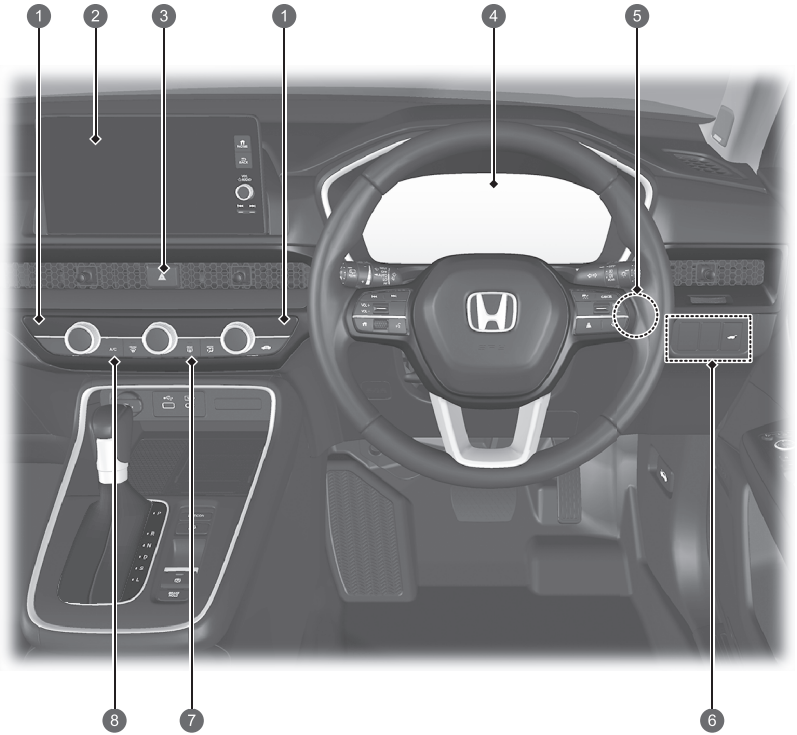
Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type



1. **System Indicators** P. 136
   Gauges P. 160
   Driver Information Interface P. 165, 191, 194
2. **ENGINE START/STOP Button** P. 257
3. **Front Seat Heater Buttons*** P. 323
4. **Hazard Warning Button**
5. **Audio System** P. 334
   Navigation System*
   See the Navigation System Manual
6. **Climate Control System** P. 325
7. **Rear Demister** P. 275
8. **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 267
   Power Tailgate Button* P. 242

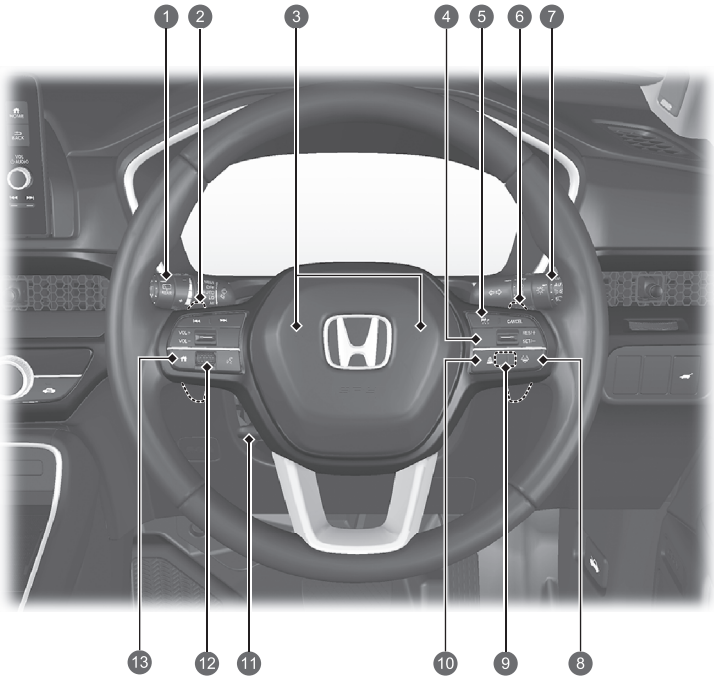
Right-hand Drive Type



1. **Front Seat Heater Buttons*** P. 323
2. **Audio System** P. 334
   Navigation System*
   See the Navigation System Manual
3. **Hazard Warning Button**
4. **System Indicators** P. 136
   Gauges P. 160
   Driver Information Interface P. 165, 191, 194
5. **ENGINE START/STOP Button** P. 257
6. **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 267
   Power Tailgate Button* P. 242
7. **Rear Demister** P. 275
8. **Climate Control System** P. 325

* Not available on all models

Visual Index



❶ Wipers/Washers* P. 272
Headlights/Turn Signals* P. 261, 260
Fog Lights* P. 264
LaneWatch* P. 669
CAMERA Button* P. 792

❷ Paddle Shifter (Shift down)* P. 625

❸ Horn (Press the area around .)

❹ LIM Button* P. 637

❺ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons P. 707

❻ Paddle Shifter (Shift up)* P. 625

❼ Headlights/Turn Signals* P. 261, 260
Wipers/Washers* P. 272
Fog Lights* P. 264
LaneWatch* P. 669
CAMERA Button* P. 792

❽ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button P. 733

❾ Right Selector Wheel* P. 194

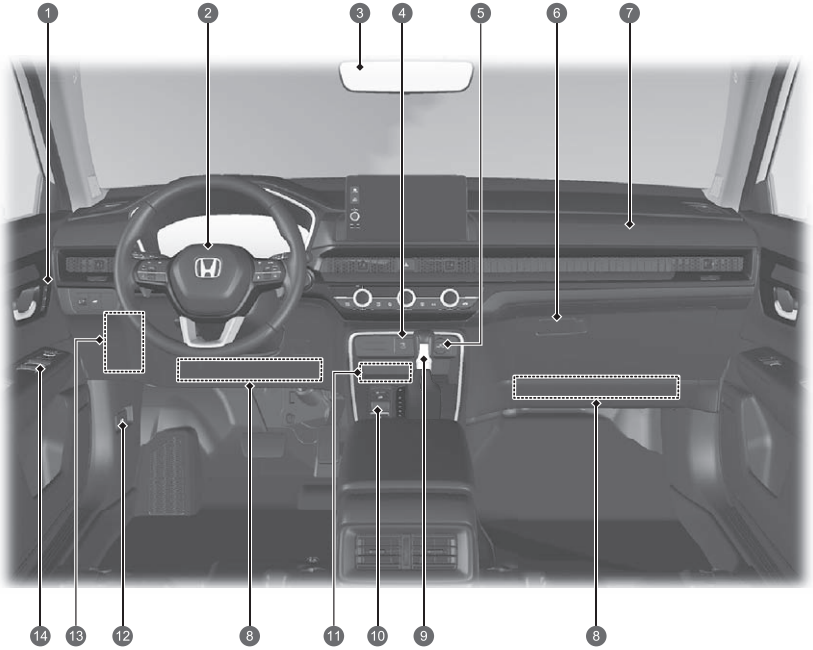
❿ Interval Button P. 724

⓫ Steering Wheel Adjustments P. 278

⓬ Left Selector Wheel P. 165, 392

⓭ Audio Remote Controls P. 339, 392
(Home) Button* P. 165
(Talk) Button
P. 352, 353, 357, 361, 411, 438, 442, 463, 528, 532

Left-hand Drive Type

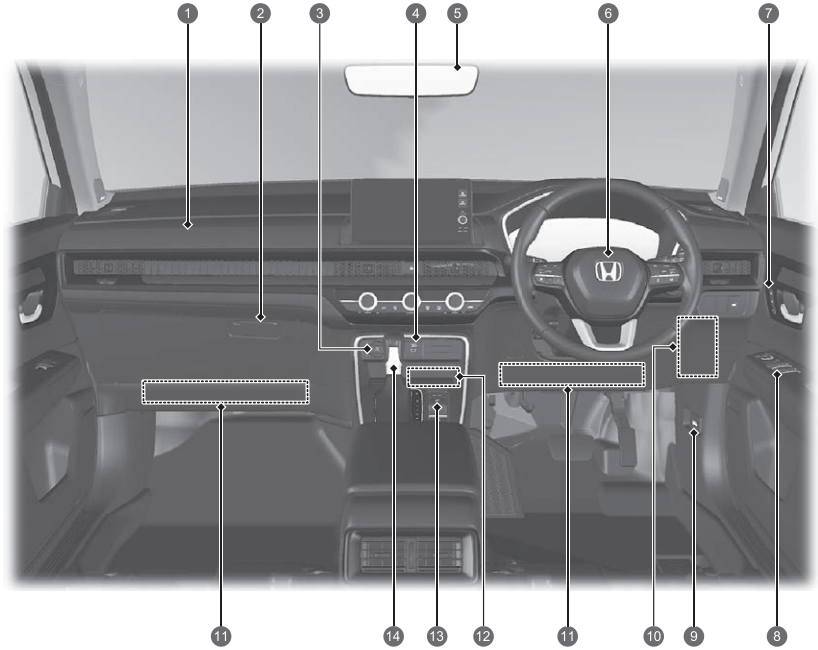


❶ **Memory Buttons*** P. 277
SET Button* P. 277
❷ **Driver's Front Airbag** P. 64
❸ **Rearview Mirror** P. 279
❹ **USB Port(s)** P. 338, 391, 488
❺ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 317
❻ **Glove Box** P. 306
❼ **Passenger's Front Airbag** P. 64
❽ **Knee Airbags** P. 67
❾ **Shift Lever** P. 620, 622
❿ **ECON Button** P. 627
(Hill Descent Control) Button P. 636
Auto Idle Stop OFF Button* P. 630
Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 767
Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 771
⓫ **Wireless Charger*** P. 319
⓬ **Bonnet Release Handle** P. 830
⓭ **Interior Fuse Box** P. 922, 924
⓮ **Door Mirror Controls** P. 281
Master Door Lock Switch P. 233
Power Window Switches P. 250

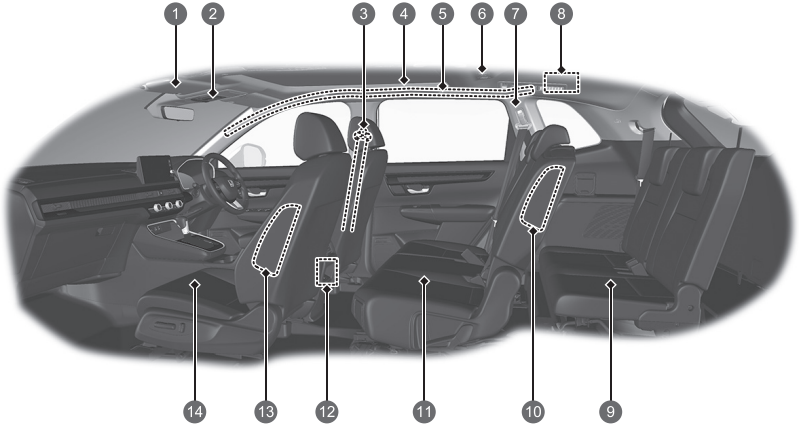
* Not available on all models

Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



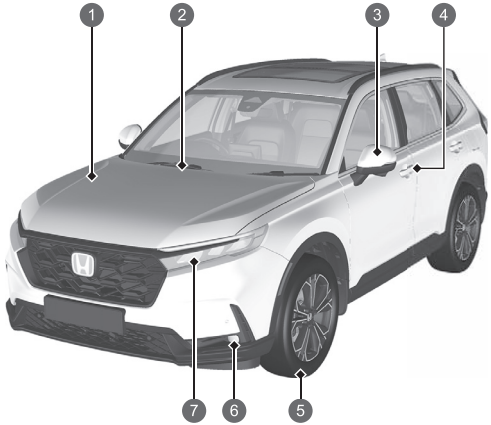
❶ Passenger's Front Airbag P. 64
❷ Glove Box P. 306
❸ Accessory Power Socket P. 317
❹ USB Port(s) P. 338, 391, 488
❺ Rearview Mirror P. 279
❻ Driver's Front Airbag P. 64
❼ Memory Buttons* P. 277
SET Button* P. 277
❽ Door Mirror Controls P. 281
Master Door Lock Switch P. 233
Power Window Switches P. 250
❾ Bonnet Release Handle P. 830
❿ Interior Fuse Box P. 922, 924
⓫ Knee Airbags P. 67
⓬ Wireless Charger* P. 319
⓭ ECON Button P. 627
(Hill Descent Control) Button P. 636
Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 767
Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 771
⓮ Shift Lever P. 620, 622



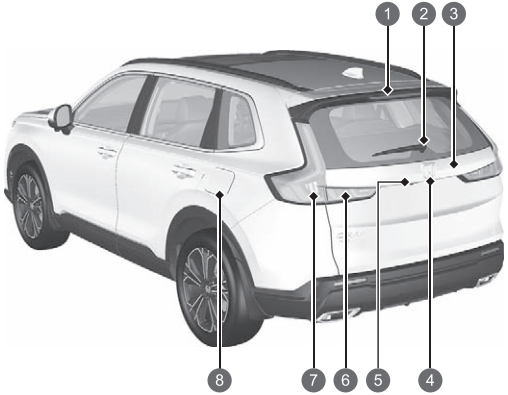
1. **Sun Visors** P. 324
   Vanity Mirrors
2. **Front Map Lights** P. 304
   Panoramic Roof Switch* P. 255
   Sunglasses Holder P. 312
3. **Seat Belts** P. 47
4. **Side Curtain Airbags** P. 76
5. **Grab Handle**
   Coat Hook P. 310
6. **Second Row Map Lights** P. 304
7. **Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint System)** P. 122
   Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System P. 122
8. **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*** P. 56
9. **Third Row Seats*** P. 293
10. **Second Row Side Airbags*** P. 73
11. **Second Row Seats** P. 288
    Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child Restraint Systems P. 115
12. **USB Ports** P. 338, 391, 488
13. **Front Side Airbags** P. 73
14. **Front Seat** P. 283

* Not available on all models

Visual Index



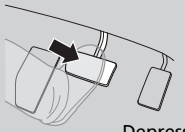
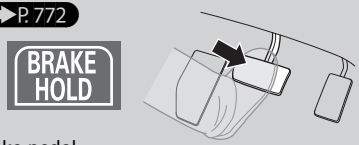
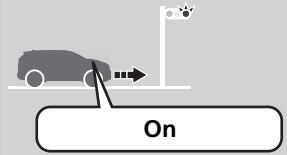
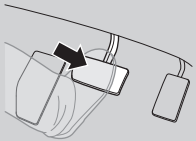
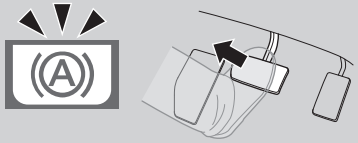
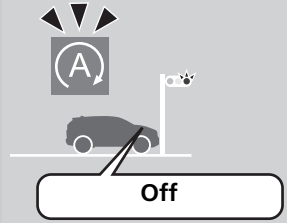
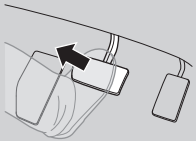
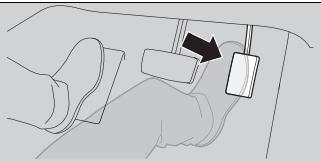
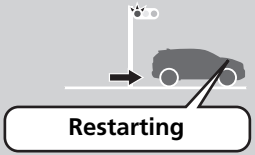
1. Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 829
2. Windscreen Wipers P. 272, 845
3. Power Door Mirrors P. 281
   Side Turn Signal Lights P. 260, 842
4. Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 223
5. Tyres P. 849, 851
6. Front Fog Lights* P. 264, 842
7. Headlights P. 261, 842
   Position/Daytime Running Lights P. 261, 266, 842
   Front Turn Signal Lights P. 260, 842



1. High-Mount Brake Light P. 843
2. Rear Wiper P. 847
3. Opening/Closing the Tailgate P. 237
4. Rear Licence Plate Light P. 261, 843
5. Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 789
   Multi-View Camera* P. 791
6. Taillights P. 261, 843
   Back-Up Lights P. 843
   Rear Fog Light* P. 843
7. Taillights P. 261, 842
   Brake Lights P. 261, 842
   Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 260, 842
8. How to Refuel P. 807

Auto Idle Stop Function*

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the Auto Idle Stop indicator (green) comes on. P. 628

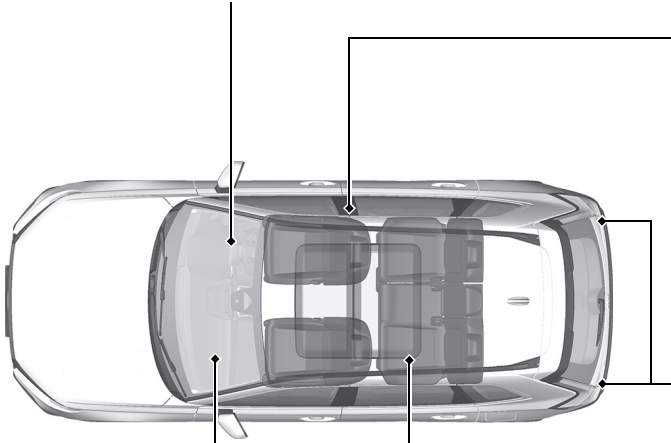
At	Continuously variable transmission	Engine status
Deceleration	**Automatic Brake Hold Off** P. 772  **Automatic Brake Hold On** P. 772  Depress the brake pedal.	
Stop	 Keep the brake pedal depressed.  With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal when the Ⓐ indicator (green) comes on.	
Start-up	 Release the brake pedal.  With the automatic brake hold system activated, depress the accelerator pedal.	

* Not available on all models

Safe Driving P. 41

Before Driving Checklist P. 46

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.



Seat Belts P. 47

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 133

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Child Safety P. 81

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

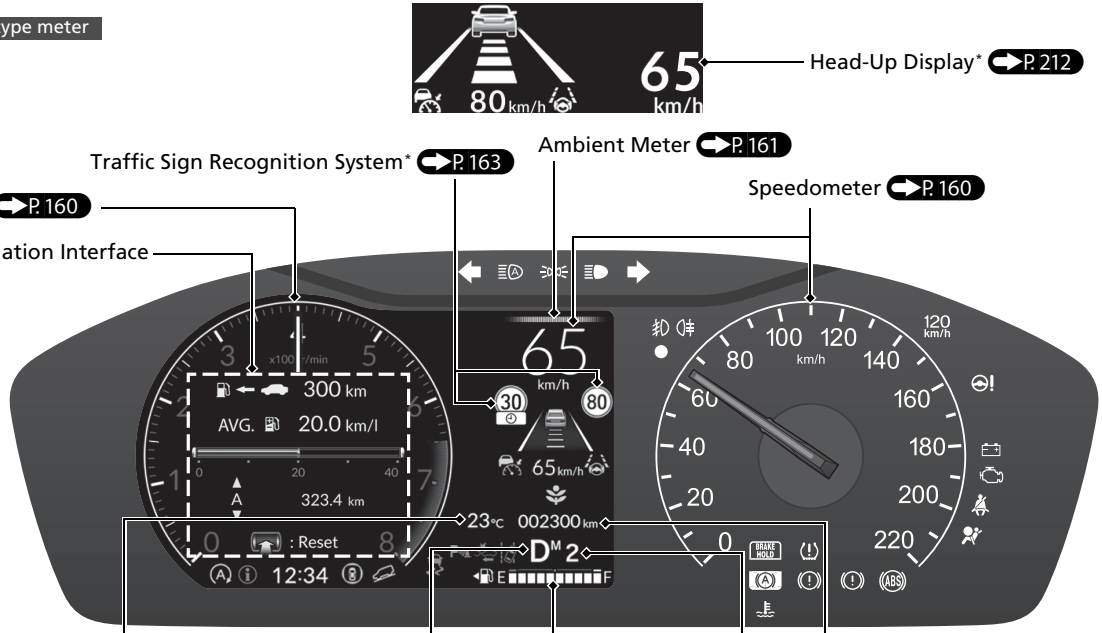
Airbags P. 62

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Instrument Panel P. 135

Indicators P. 136/Gauges P. 160/Driver Information Interface P. 165, 191, 194/ Head-Up Display* P. 212

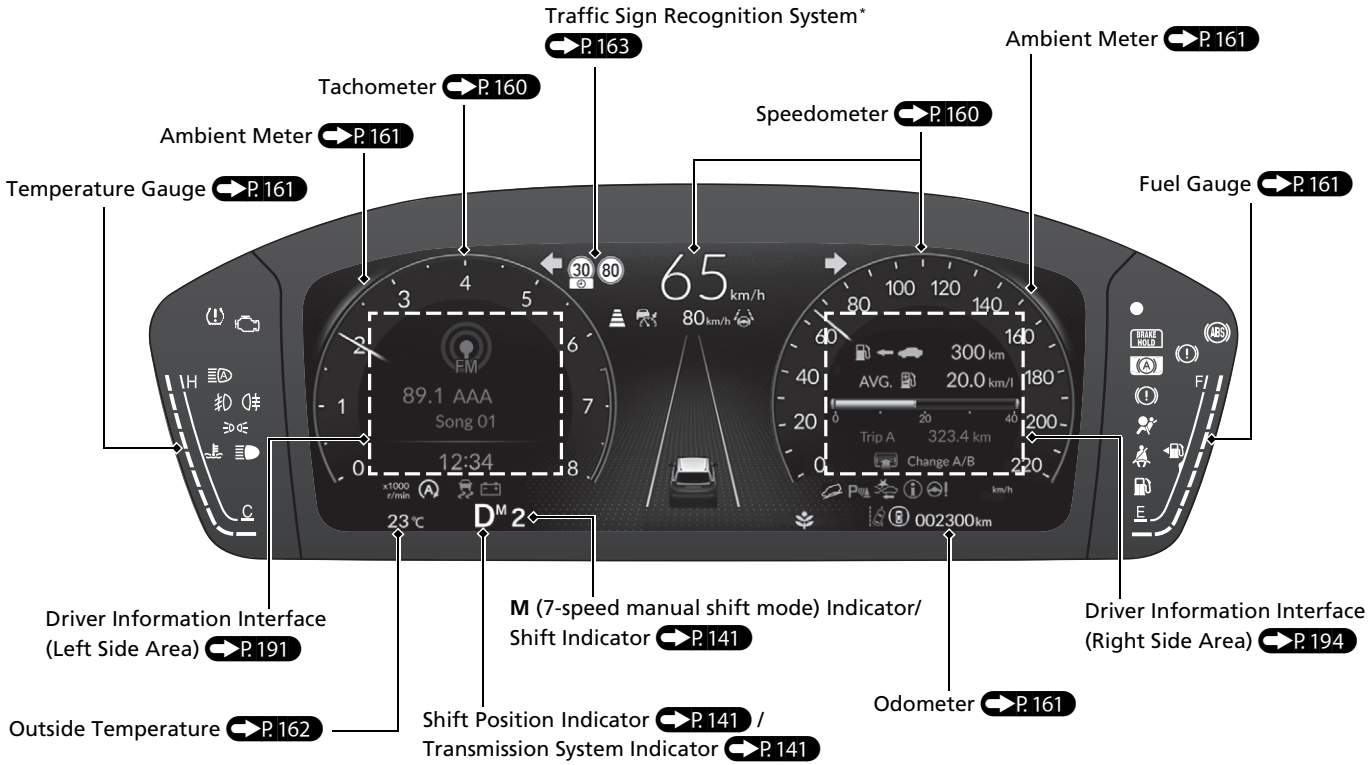
Models with A-type meter



* Not available on all models

Models with B-type meter

● You can change the gauge design.
Change gauge design P. 192



Controls P. 217

Clock P. 218

Models with Display Audio

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

Models without Google built-in

P. 402

Models with Google built-in

P. 499

Models with colour audio system



MENU Button

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **Clock Settings**.
3. Select **Automatic Time**, then select **OFF**.
4. Select **Set Time**.
5. Select **12H(12-H)/24H(24-H)** to change 12 or 24 hour clock.
6. Select ▲ or ▼.
7. Select **Set** to set the time.

ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 257

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



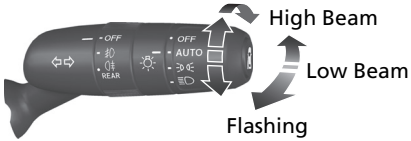
Turn Signals P. 260

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P. 261

Light Control Switches



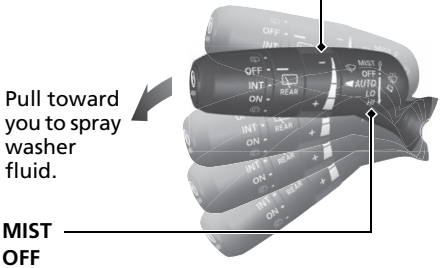
* Not available on all models

Wipers and Washers

P. 272

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring
−: Low sensitivity*1
: Lower speed, fewer sweeps*2
+: High sensitivity*1
: Higher speed, more sweeps*2



MIST
OFF
AUTO*1: Wiper speed varies automatically
INT*2: Low speed with intermittent
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe

*1:Models with automatic intermittent wipers
*2:Models with manual intermittent operation

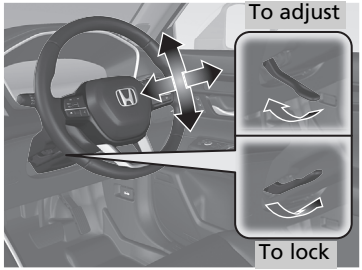
Models with automatic intermittent wipers

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:
- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel

P. 278

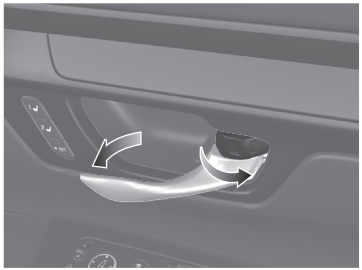
- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

P. 233

- Pull the driver's door or passenger's door* inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

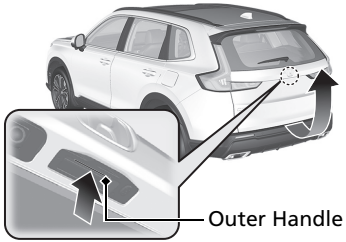


Tailgate P. 236

- Press the tailgate outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote on you.

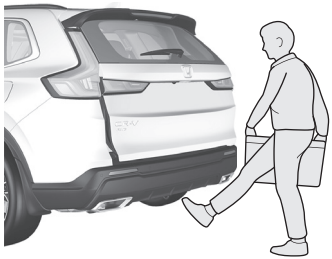
Models with power tailgate

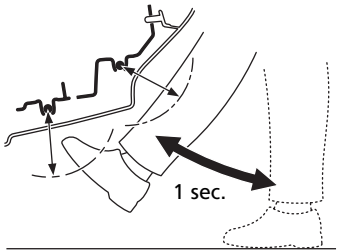
- Press the tailgate outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote on you.
- Press the power tailgate button on the driver side control panel.
- Press the power tailgate button on the keyless remote.



Models with hands free access

With the keyless remote on you, raise and lower your foot (in a kicking motion) under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the tailgate.

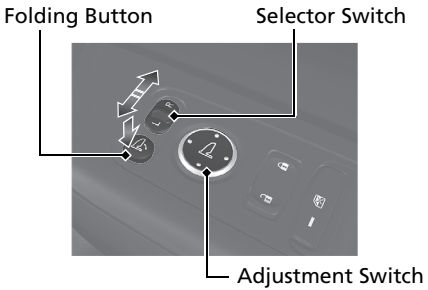




Power Door Mirrors

P. 281

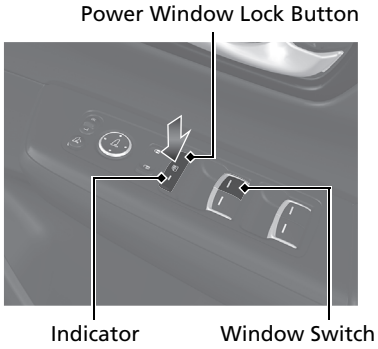
- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.



* Not available on all models

Power Windows P. 249

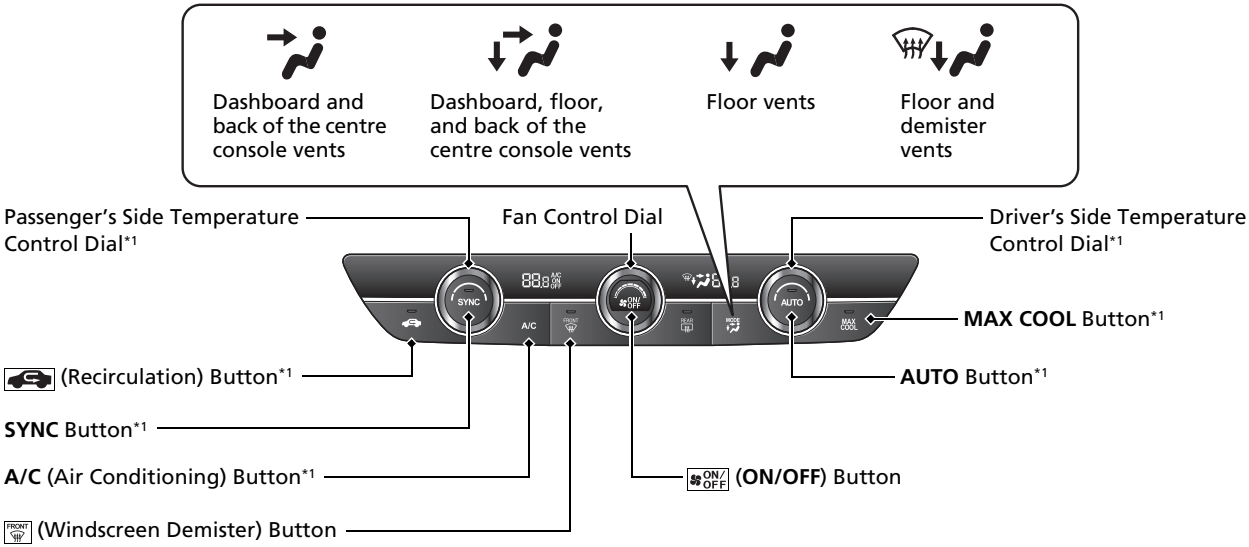
- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the ON position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



Climate Control System P. 325

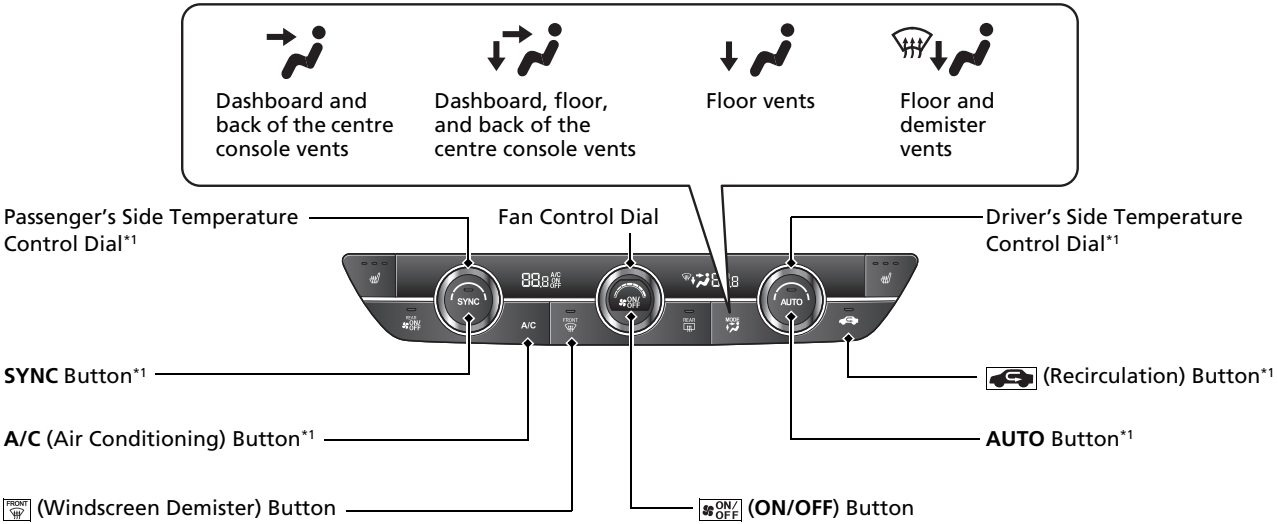
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windscreen.

Models with MAX COOL button



*1:Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.

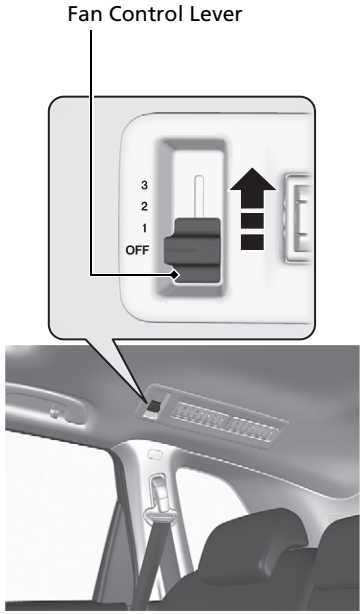
Models without MAX COOL button



*1:Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.

Rear Cooling* P. 331

The rear cooler can be used when the **REAR** ON/OFF (Rear On/Off) button on the front control panel is ON.
Adjust the fan speed by sliding the fan control lever on the ceiling above the second row seat position.

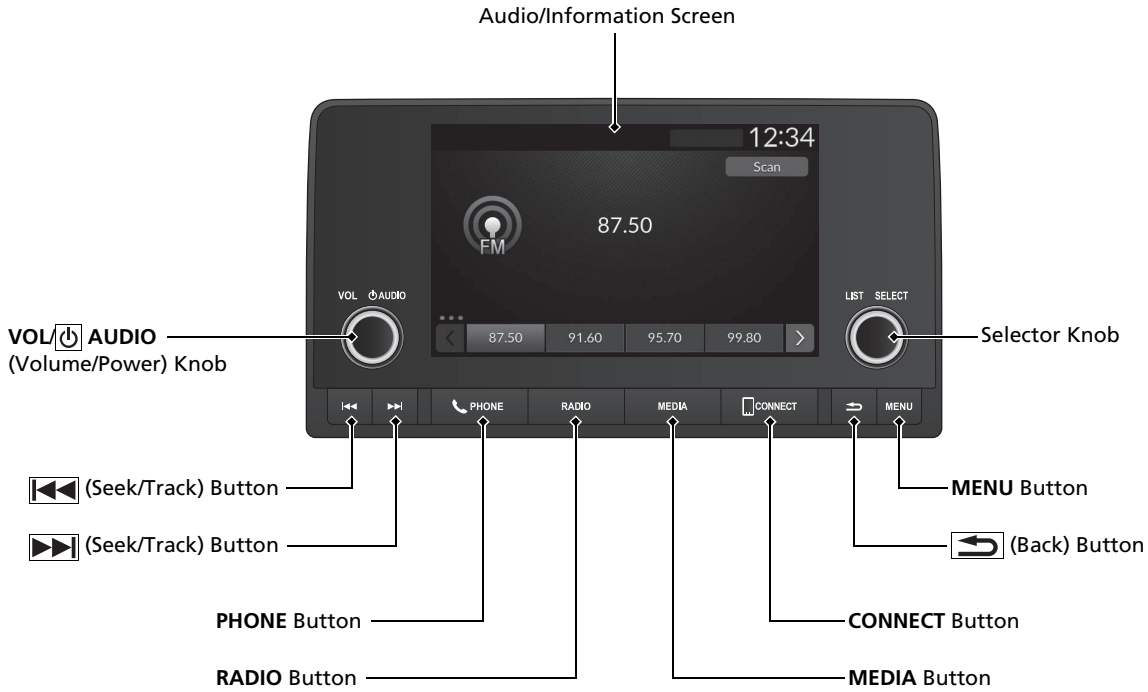


* Not available on all models

Features P. 333

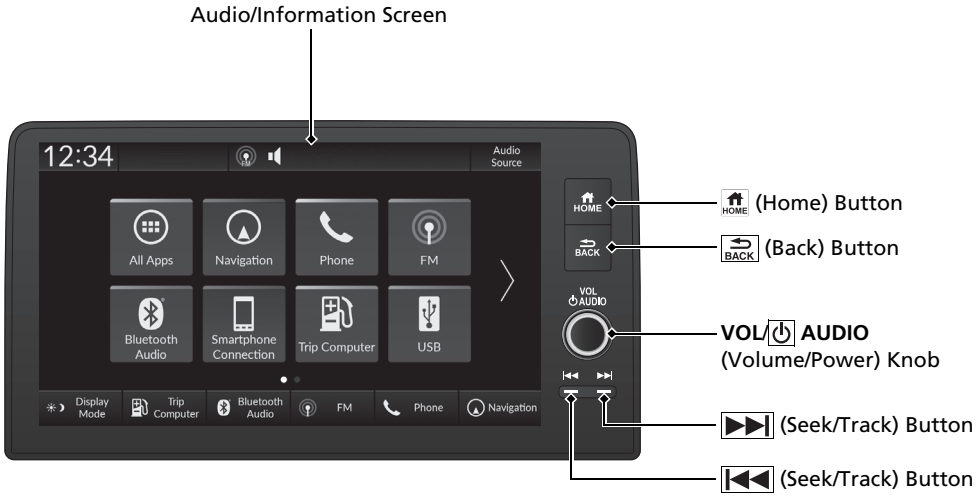
Audio System P. 334

Models with colour audio system P. 336

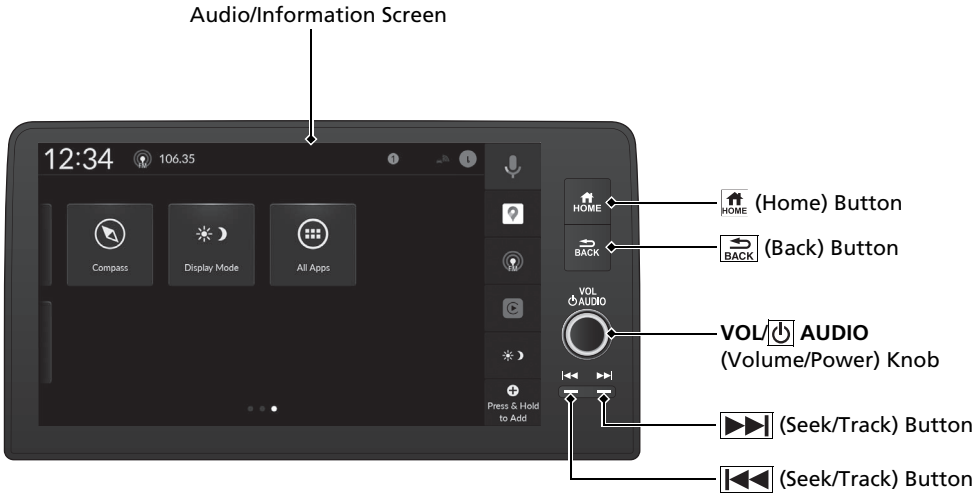


Models with Display Audio P. 388

For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual

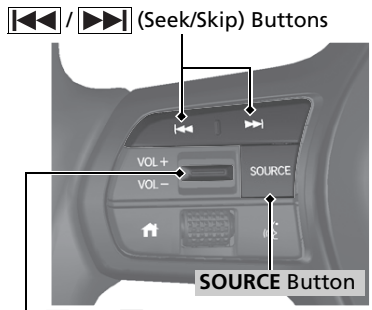


Models with Display Audio with Google built-in P. 484



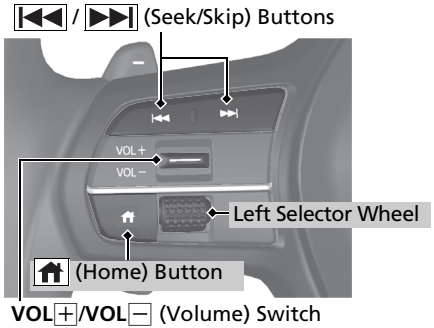
Audio Remote Controls

Models with colour audio system P. 339

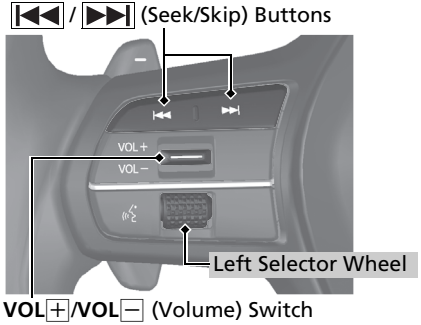


- **SOURCE** Button
  Press to cycle through the audio modes.
- **VOL+** / **VOL−** (Volume) Switch
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
  Radio:
  Press |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change the preset radio station. Press and hold |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change the strong station.
  A wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection:
  Press |◀◀ / ▶▶| to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  USB flash drive or *Bluetooth*® Audio:
  Press and hold |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change a folder/group.

Models with Display Audio P. 392, 489
Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



- **VOL+** / **VOL−** (Volume) Switch
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
  Radio:
  Press |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change the preset radio station. Press and hold |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change the strong station.
  A wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection:
  Press |◀◀ / ▶▶| to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  USB flash drive:
  Press and hold |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change a folder.

Models with A-type meter

- Left Selector Wheel
  When selecting the audio mode
  Press the (Home) button, then roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.
  Roll up or down:
  To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel.

Models with B-type meter

- Left Selector Wheel
  Roll up or down:
  To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel.

About System Updates*

When a software update is available for your vehicle, a notification will be displayed on the audio/information screen.
Instructions for performing updates via the audio/information screen are included in this manual.
For details on other methods of performing an update, please refer to the Honda Connect manual*, or ask a dealer.
System updates that change specifications may result in some discrepancies with the information in this owner's manual.

■ **Instructions**

System Updates P. 407, 504

Remote Immobilizer*

The remote immobilizer system remotely prevents the vehicle from starting if the vehicle is stolen.
For more detailed information on this system, please refer to the Honda Connect manual.

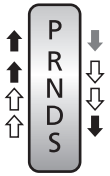
Driving P. 597

Continuously Variable Transmission P. 619

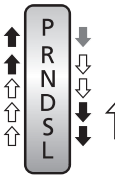
● Shift to [P] and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Shifting

Models with paddle shifter



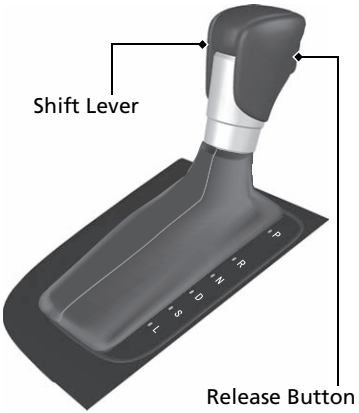
Models without paddle shifter



Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.



P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Used:
● For normal driving

Models with paddle shifter
● When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

S **Drive (S)**
Used:
● For better acceleration
● To increase engine braking
● When going up or down hills

Models with paddle shifter
● When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

L **Low***
● Used to further increase engine braking.
● Used when going up or down hills.

* Not available on all models

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode* P. 625

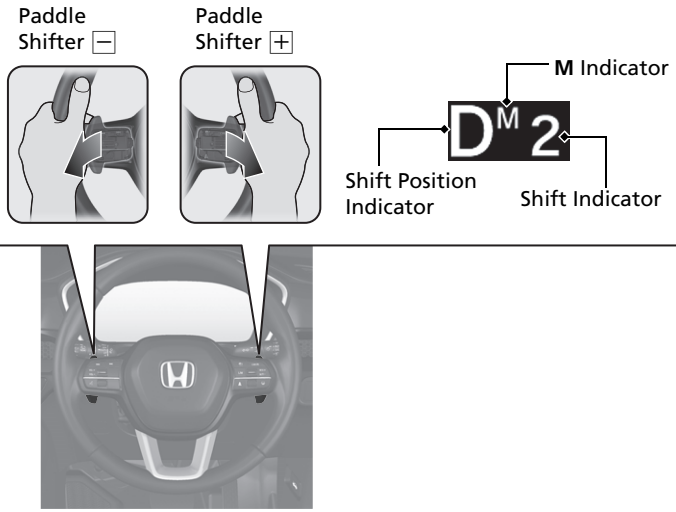
Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

When the transmission is in S

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

When the transmission is in D

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.



CMBS On and Off P. 682

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support of the driver information interface.

VSA On and Off P. 653

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- The VSA function can be partially disabled or fully restored in VSA settings using the driver information interface.

Vehicle Stability Assist Mode P. 209

Taiwanese models

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 656

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Except Taiwanese models

Deflation Warning System* P. 659

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The deflation warning system is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Adjustable Speed Limiter* P. 637

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.
- The vehicle speed limit can be set from 30 km/h to 250 km/h.

Refueling P. 805

Fuel recommendation:

Pakistani models

EURO V/5 Unleaded petrol, manganese: maximum 2mg/ Litre, research octane number 91 or higher

Singaporean models

Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher

Taiwanese models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher

Models for other countries

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 57 L

* Not available on all models

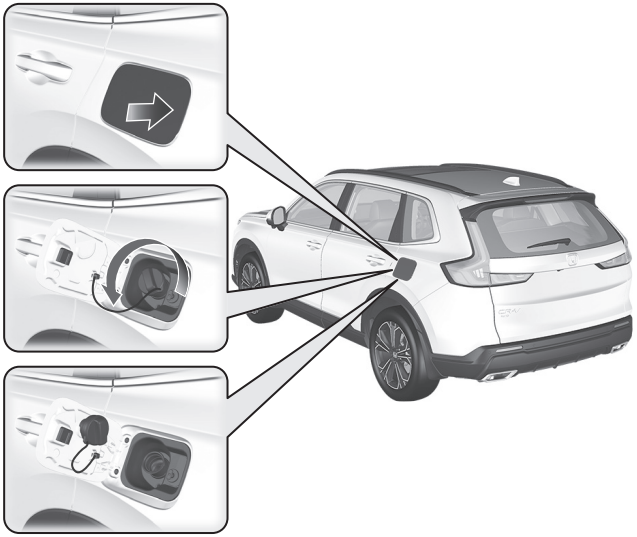
1. Unlock the driver's door. P. 232

2. Press and release the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.

3. Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.

4. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.

5. After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Honda SENSING P. 674

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda Sensing has the following functions.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

P. 677

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Low Speed Braking Control* P. 691

The Low Speed Braking Control system has three functions: Low Speed Brake, Collision Mitigation Throttle Control, and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control.
Using sonar sensors located on the front and rear bumpers, the vehicle detects if there danger of collision with a wall or other obstacle when the accelerator is depressed with too much force, and the system assists in avoiding collisions and reducing damage from impact by limiting power system output.

Road Departure Mitigation System P. 697

Oceanian and Singaporean models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

Except Oceanian and Singaporean models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 707

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

* Not available on all models

Intelligent Speed Limiter* P. 644

Automatically sets the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. And the speed limit cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal. If you fully depress the accelerator the speed limit can be exceeded.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 729

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Oceanian and Singaporean models

Traffic Jam Assist P. 742

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

Lead Car Departure Notification System* P. 751

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.

Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 756

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

Auto High-Beam P. 269

The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights.
When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

Blind Spot Information System* P. 665

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

Cross Traffic Monitor* P. 785

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.
The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

Parking Sensor System P. 779

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

Driver Attention Monitor P. 173, 202

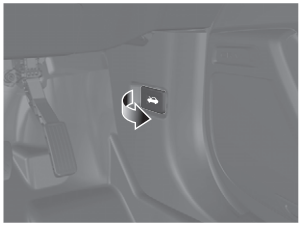
The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.

Maintenance P. 811

Under the Bonnet P. 829

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.



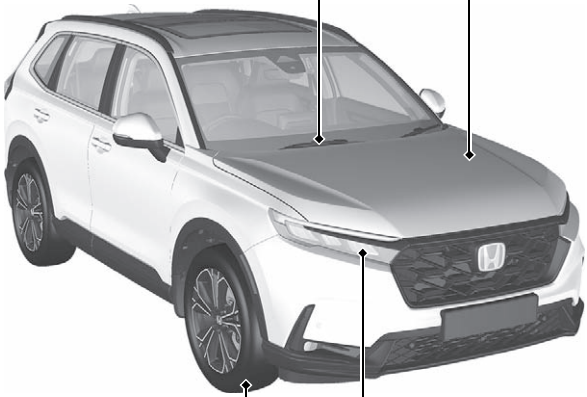
2. Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 845

- When lifting the front wiper arms, move them into the maintenance position before lifting them.
- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



Tyres P. 849

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights P. 842

- Inspect all lights regularly.

* Not available on all models

Handling the Unexpected P. 873

Flat Tyre P. 875

Models with tyre repair kit

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.

Models with spare tyre

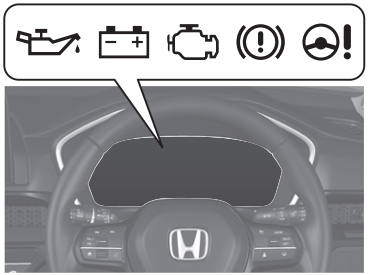
- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the luggage area.



Indicators Come On

P. 913

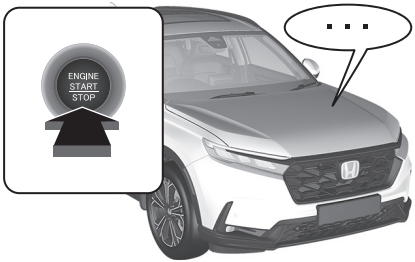
- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Engine Won't Start

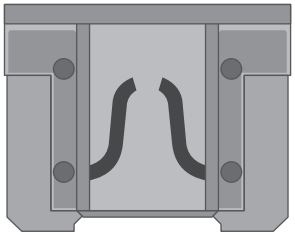
P. 900

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Blown Fuse P. 920

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Overheating P. 911

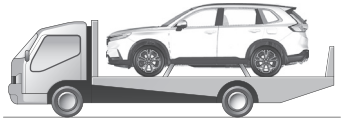
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



Emergency Towing

P. 928

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q **The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?**

A
- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



Q **The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?**

A The shift lever should be moved to P.



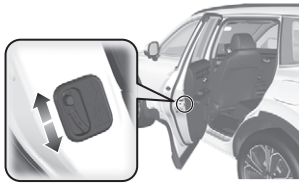
Q **Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?**

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 774

Q **The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?**

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.
To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Q **Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?**

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?**

A The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Models with Auto Idle Stop
- The Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

Q **Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?**

A The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.
➡ **Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)** ➡P. 226

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**

A The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Q **Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q Models with TPMS/deflation warning system

I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?

A Taiwanese models

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

➡ **Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)** P. 656

Except Taiwanese, Malaysian models

The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

➡ **Deflation Warning System*** P. 659

Q **Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?**

A
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

Q **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q

Singaporean models

Unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 95 or higher is recommended.
Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 92 or lower on this vehicle?

A

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of petrol with a research octane less than 92 can lead to engine damage.

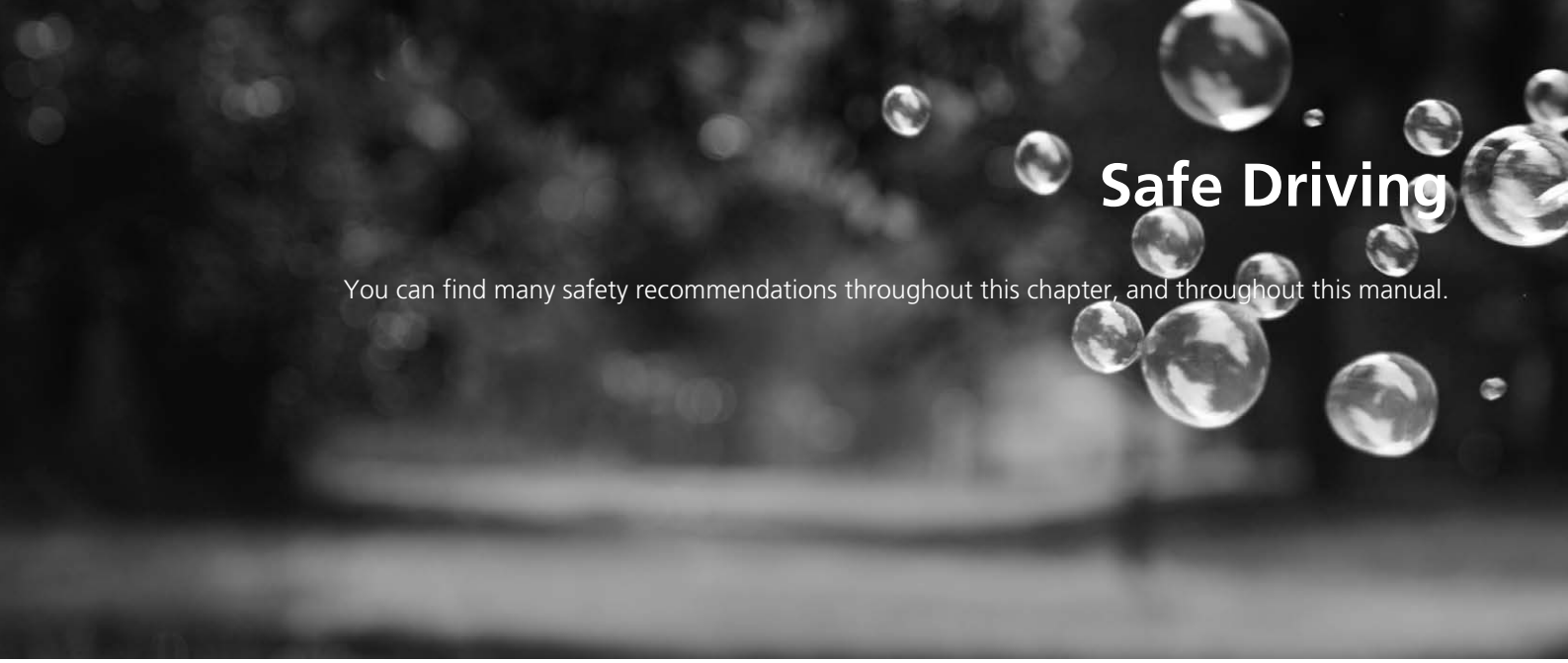
Q

Pakistani models

Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher on this vehicle?

A

Your vehicle is designed to operate on EURO V/5 unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher.
The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.



Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions 42
- Important Handling Information 44
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features 45
- Safety Checklist 46

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts 47
- Fastening a Seat Belt 53
- Seat Belt Inspection 59
- Anchorage Points 60

Airbags
- Airbag System Components 62
- Types of Airbags 64
- Front Airbags (SRS) 64
- Knee Airbags 67
- Centre Airbag* 71
- Side Airbags 73
- Side Curtain Airbags 76
- Airbag System Indicators 78
- Airbag Care 79

Post-Collision Braking System
- About the Post-Collision Braking System ... 80

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers 81
- Safety of Infants and Small Children 84
- Safety of Larger Children 130

Exhaust Gas Hazard
- Carbon Monoxide Gas 133

Safety Labels
- Label Locations 134

* Not available on all models

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt
A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children
Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards
While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive
Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-road driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher centre gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or rollover if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

Important Handling Information

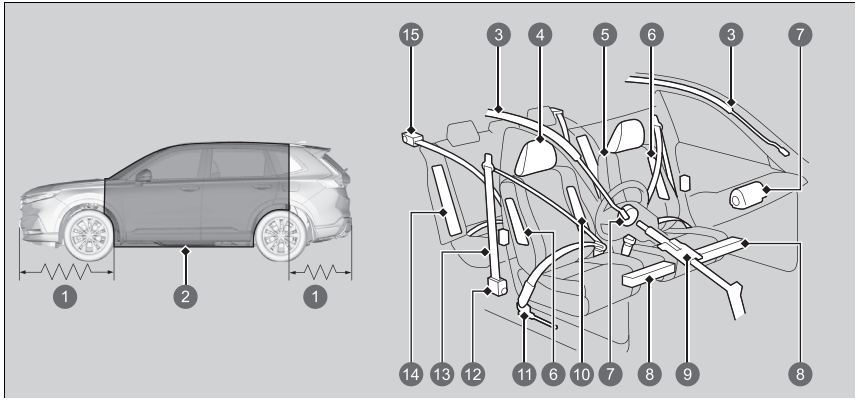
For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

Precautions While Driving P. 617
Off-road Guidelines P. 609

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

In many countries, the law prohibits off-road driving, e.g., driving in forests, trailblazing, etc. Please check your local laws and regulations before commencing any off-road driving activity.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



❶ Crush Zones
❷ Safety Cage
❸ Side Curtain Airbags
❹ Head Restraints
❺ Seats and Seat-Backs
❻ Front Side Airbags
❼ Front Airbags
❽ Knee Airbag
❾ Collapsible Steering Column
❿ Centre Airbag*
⓫ Outer Lap Pretensioners
⓬ Front Seat Belt Tensioners
⓭ Seat Belts
⓮ Second Row Side Airbags*
⓯ Rear Seat Belt Tensioners*

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and rear outer* seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

* Not available on all models

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➡ **Seats** P. 283
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 297
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 53
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.
  ➡ **Child Safety** P. 81

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

⚠WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Continued

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five or seven seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➡ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 122

About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

■ **Proper use of seat belts**

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Continued

■ Seat Belt Reminder



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on. If the driver or front passenger does not fasten the belt, the indicator will remain on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

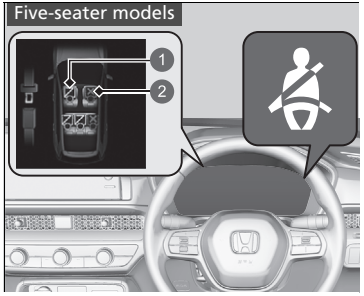
If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

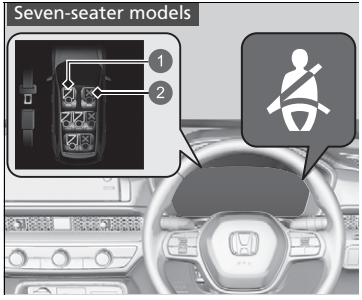
If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened



❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened

■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use.

The driver information interface notifies you about the status of the rear seat belts use.

The display appears when:
- Any of the rear passenger seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- Any of the rear passengers fasten or unfasten their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and the beeper sounds if any rear passenger seat belt has been unfastened while driving.

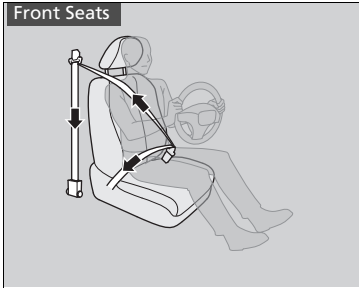
Continued

■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

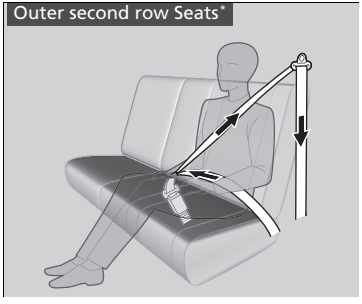
The front seats and the outer second row seats* are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer second row seat belts* during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags or the front knee airbags.

Front Seats



Outer second row Seats*



Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioners on both sides of the vehicle also activate.

* Not available on all models

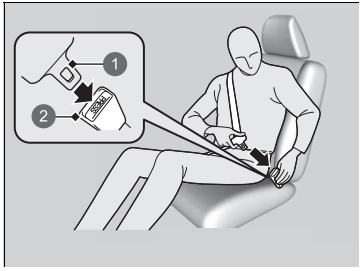
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat (see illustrations for correct seating posture):

➡ **Seats** P. 283



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

❶ Latch Plate
❷ Buckle

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten.
If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

➡ **About Your Seat Belts** P. 47
➡ **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 59

Continued



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

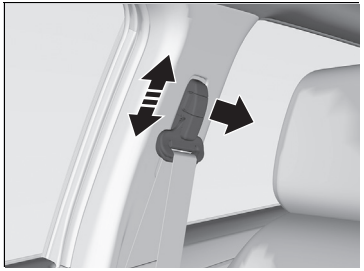
Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

The front seats and second row seats have adjustable shoulder anchorages to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchorage up and down while pulling the shoulder anchorage outward.
2. Position the anchorage so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

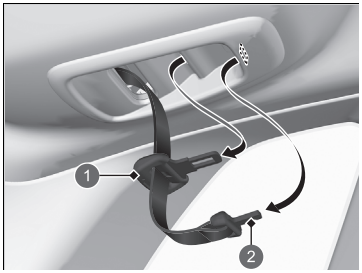
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchorage position is secure.

The shoulder anchorage height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

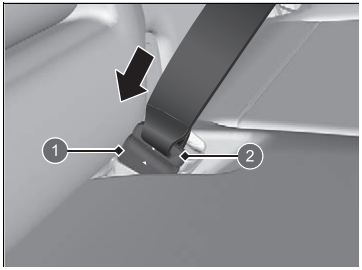
Continued

■ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*



1. Latch Plate
2. Small Latch Plate

1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



1. Anchorage Buckle
2. Small Latch Plate

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchorage buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchorage buckle.

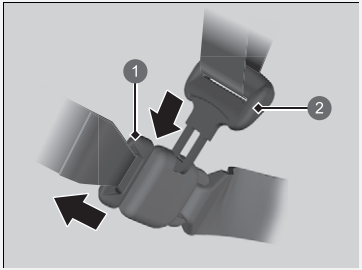
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*

⚠WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchorage unfastened increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

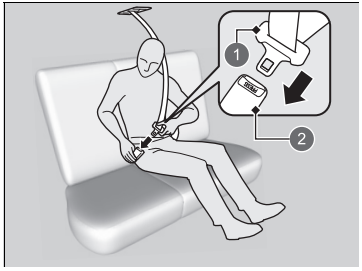
Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchorage is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchorage, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.



1. Small Latch Plate
2. Latch Plate

* Not available on all models



❶ Latch Plate
❷ Buckle

3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*

Taiwanese models

When fastening a seatbelt in the centre seat, the seatbelt should pass over the bar.



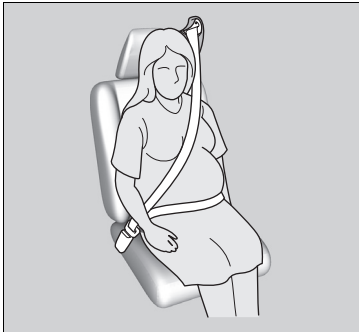
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Advice for Pregnant Women

Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

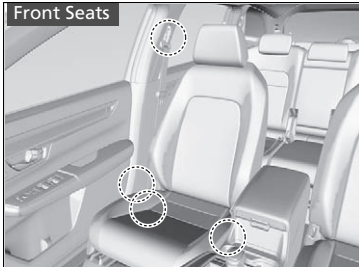
WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

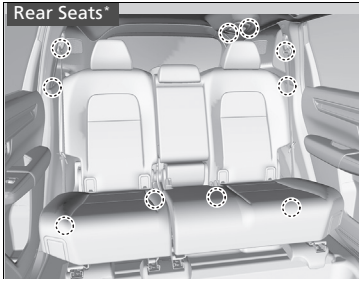
Anchorage Points

Front Seats



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.

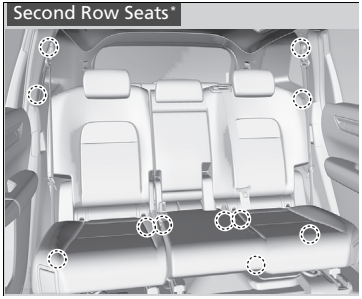
Rear Seats*



Five-seater models

The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

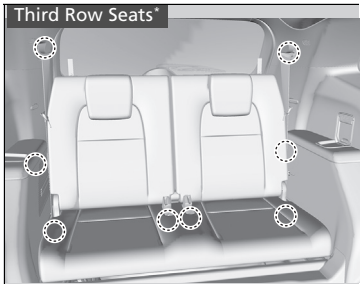
Second Row Seats*



Seven-seater models

The second row seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

* Not available on all models



Seven-seater models

The third row seat has two lap/shoulder belts.

* Not available on all models

Airbag System Components

The front, driver's knee, front passenger's knee, front side, second row side*, front centre* and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two knee airbags. The driver's knee airbag is stored under the steering column; the front passenger's knee airbag is stored under the glove box. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Four side airbags. One for the driver, one for the front passenger, and two for the second row outboard* seating positions. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. All are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

Oceanian models

- One centre airbag. The airbag is stored in the centre side of driver's seat-back. It is marked **CENTER AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.
- Seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer second row seats*.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

Oceanian models

- Pressure sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe side impact.

* Not available on all models

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front, driver's knee, and front passenger's knee airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with five types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Knee airbags:** Airbags under the steering column and under the glove box.
- **Centre airbags*:** Airbag in the centre side of driver's seat-back.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's, front passenger's, and second row outer passenger's* seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

■ Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

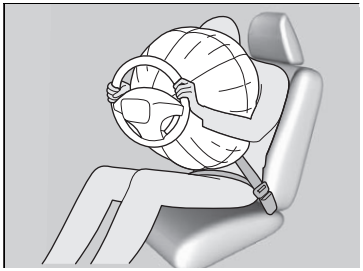
* Not available on all models

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.
The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

Continued

■ **When front airbags should not deploy**

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ **When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ **When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe**

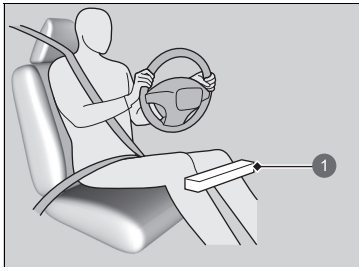
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Knee Airbags

The knee SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to keep the driver and/or front passenger in the proper position and to help to maximise the benefit provided by the vehicle's other safety features.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belt not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations



The knee airbag for the driver and the one for the front passenger are housed under the steering column and the glove box respectively.

Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

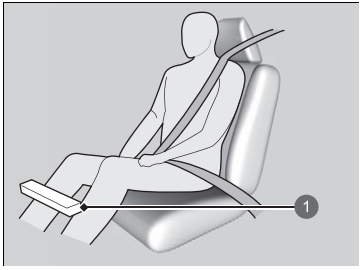
❶ Driver's Knee Airbag Location

Knee Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near a knee airbag as they can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or even hurt someone if the airbag inflates.

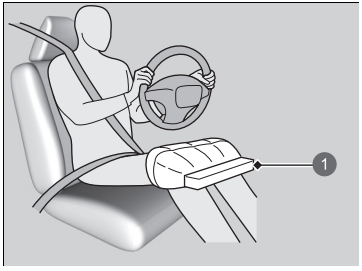
The driver and front passenger should not store any items under the seat or behind their feet. The items can interfere with proper airbag deployment in the event of a moderate to severe frontal collision and may result in inadequate protection.

Continued



1 Passenger's Knee Airbag Location

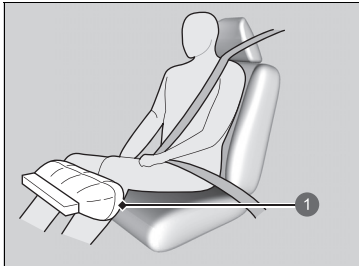
■ Operation



1 Deployed Driver's Knee Airbag

The driver's and front passenger's knee airbag deploy at the same time as the driver's and front passenger's airbag respectively.

Even if the collision is not severe enough to deploy the front airbag, the knee airbag may inflate alone.



❶ Deployed Passenger's Knee Airbag

Continued

■ When knee airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed objects that cause a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

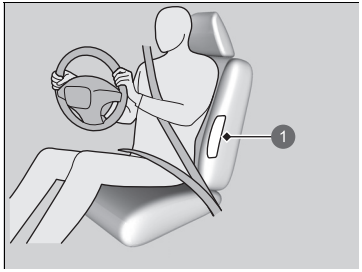
■ When knee airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Centre Airbag*

The centre airbag is designed to help to protect the heads of the driver and front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Location

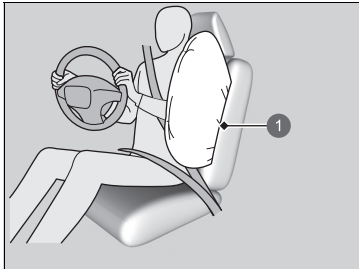


The centre airbag is housed in the centre side of the driver's seat-back.

It is marked **CENTER AIRBAG**.

1 Centre Airbag Location

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the centre airbag to deploy.

1 Centre Airbag

Centre Airbag*

Make sure you and any front seat passenger always sit upright. Leaning into the path of the centre airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of serious injury.

Do not attach accessories on or near the centre airbag. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or hurt someone if an airbag inflate.

Do not open the lid of the console compartment while driving.

Do not cover or replace the driver's seat-back cover without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering driver's seat-back covers can prevent your centre airbag from properly deploying during a side impact.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When the centre airbag deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause the centre airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

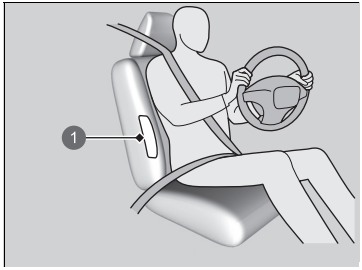
■ When the centre airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for the centre airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the centre airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver, front passenger, or an outer second row seat occupant* during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations

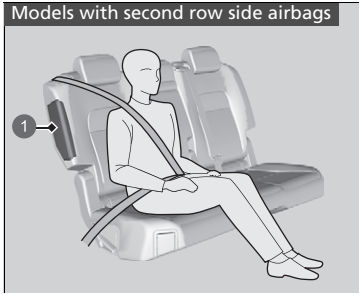


The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's, passenger's, and second row outer passenger's* seat-backs.

Each is marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

❶ Side Airbag Location

Models with second row side airbags



❶ Side Airbag Location

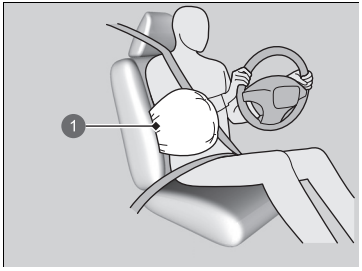
Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

* Not available on all models

Continued

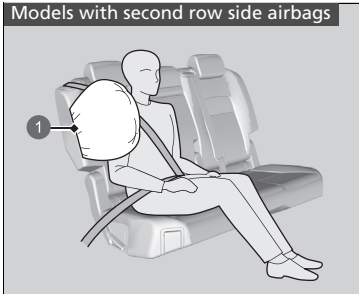
■ Operation



❶ Deployed Side Airbag

When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Models with second row side airbags



❶ Deployed Side Airbag

Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the front and second row* seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front and second row* seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front and rear passengers lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Oceanian models

Side airbag deployment is controlled by a pressure sensor inside each front door. Damage or changes to the inside or outside of the doors may negatively affect side airbag deployment. Contact an authorized dealer before changing or repairing a front door.

* Not available on all models

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

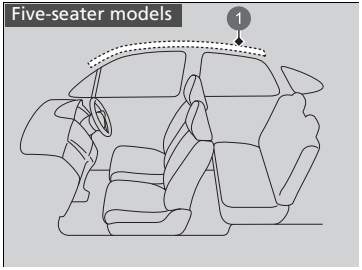
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

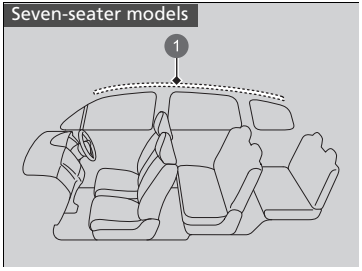
The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

❶ Side Curtain Airbag Location



❶ Side Curtain Airbag Location

Side Curtain Airbags

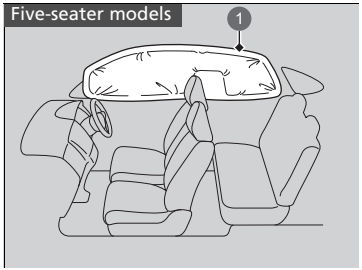
The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

■ Operation

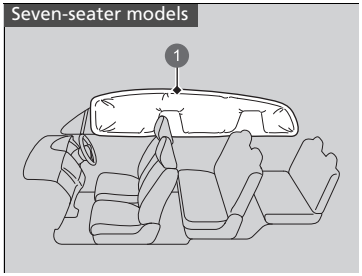
Five-seater models



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

❶ Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

Seven-seater models



❶ Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the power mode is set to ON
The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer second row seats*, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

* Not available on all models

About the Post-Collision Braking System

When the airbag system is activated after a collision is detected, this system simultaneously applies the brakes and limits propulsion to reduce damage from a secondary collision.

■ Conditions for activation

The Post-Collision Braking System activates when the airbag system or automatic seat belt tensioners activate due to a frontal collision or side impact.
However, it will not activate if components of the system are damaged.

■ Conditions for cancellation

After the Post-Collision Braking System is activated, the system will be cancelled if either of the following conditions is met.

- The vehicle is stopped.
- You depress the accelerator pedal after releasing it.

Post-Collision Braking System

This system may not be able to reduce damage from secondary collisions in all situations.
Its effectiveness depends on the circumstances of the collision.

When a collision occurs, confirm your surroundings, and carefully operate your vehicle as needed to park in a safe place.

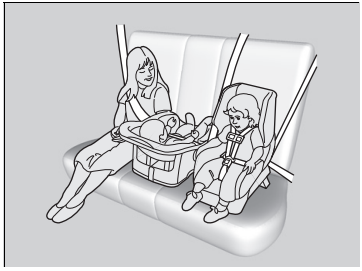
When the system activates, the engine may stop automatically.
Start the engine by normal operation if the engine stops.

Starting the Engine P. 611

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.



Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

Except Taiwanese models

⚠WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Taiwanese models



Continued

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

➔ **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 87

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows** P. 249

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

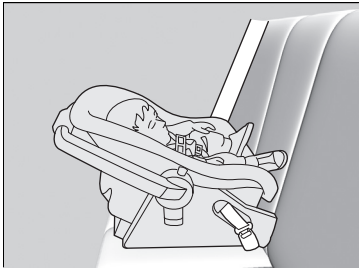
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.
Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

➡ **Safety Labels** P. 134

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.
  If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

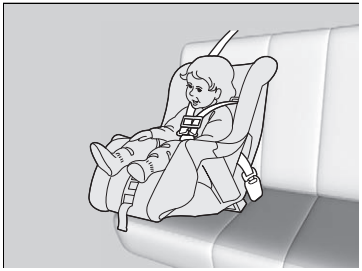
Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Continued

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

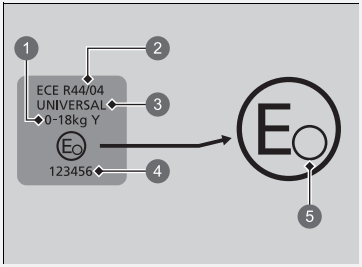
Continued

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

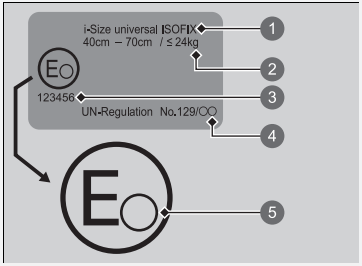
Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



❶ "Mass group"
❷ Regulation number
❸ Category
❹ Approval number
❺ Country code

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label

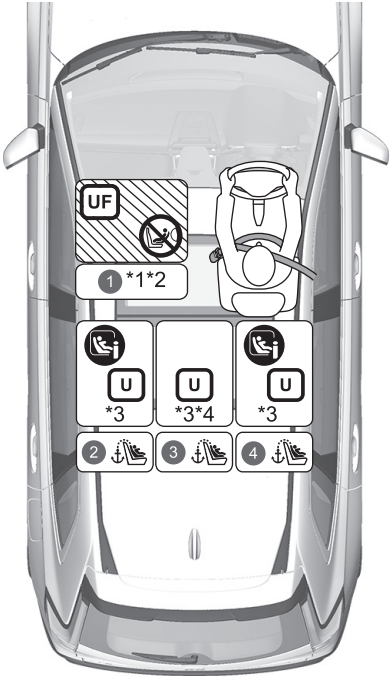


❶ Category
❷ Size and weight indication
❸ Approval number
❹ Regulation number
❺ Country code

Continued

Oceanian models
Five-seater models

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1:Adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
*2:For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*3:Adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*4:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed.

Continued

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position number					
	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸	❹
			Front passenger*1	2nd row*3		
				Left	Centre*4	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg				
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150cm		B3	B3	B3	B3

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

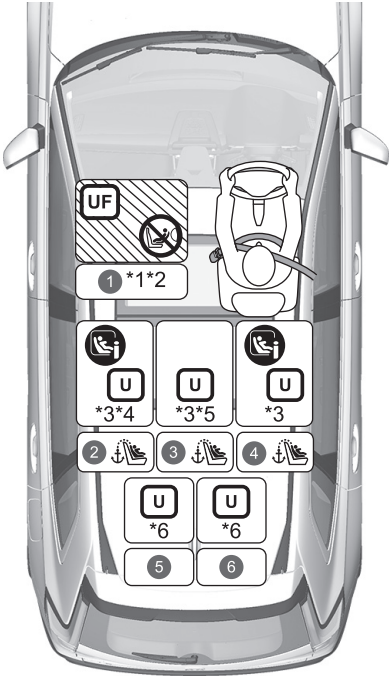
*1:Adjust the seat slide to the most rear position. Forward facing only.
*2:For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*3:Adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*4:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed.

Continued

Oceanian models
Seven-seater models

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1:Adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
*2:For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*3:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*4:If you attach a ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt can not be used.
*5:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.
*6:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the front most position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position. If it still interferes with the second row seats, fold down the seat back.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the 3rd row seat is excluded.

Continued

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position number							
	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸	❹	❺	❻
			Front passenger*1	2nd row*3			3rd row*6	
				Left*4	Centre*5	Right	Left	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg						
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg						
	Group III	22-36kg						
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	No	No	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3	No	No
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg						
	Group I	9-18kg						
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3	No	No
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150cm		B3	B3	No	B3	B3	B3

*1:Adjust the seat slide to the most rear position. Forward facing only.
*2:For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*3:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*4:If you attach a ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt can not be used.
*5:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.
*6:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the front most position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position. If it still interferes with the second row seats, fold down the seat back.

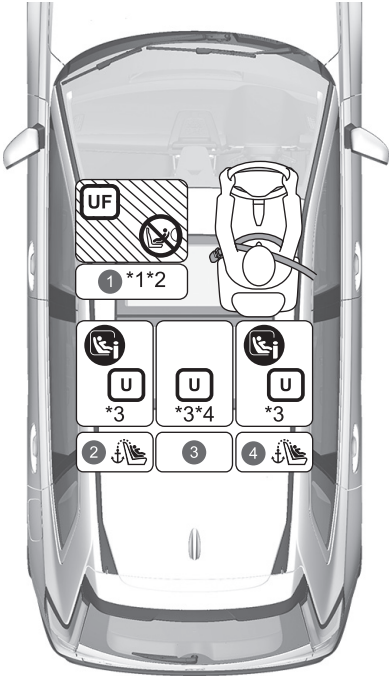
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the 3rd row seat is excluded.

Continued

Except African, Middle Eastern, Oceanian and Taiwanese models

Five-seater models

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1:Adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
*2:For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*3:Adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*4:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed.

Continued

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position number					
	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸	❹
			Front passenger*1	2nd row*3		
				Left	Centre*4	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg				
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS*5	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150cm		B3	B3	B3	B3

*1:Adjust the seat slide to the most rear position. Forward facing only.
*2:For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*3:Adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*4:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.
*5:The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.

  Except Malaysian models

  However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.

All models

- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed.

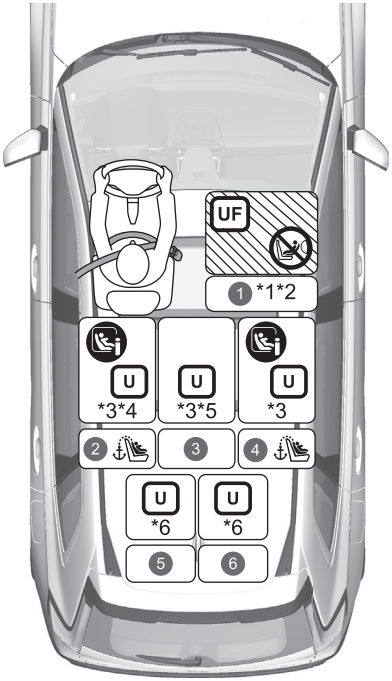
Continued

Except African, Middle Eastern, Oceanian and Taiwanese models

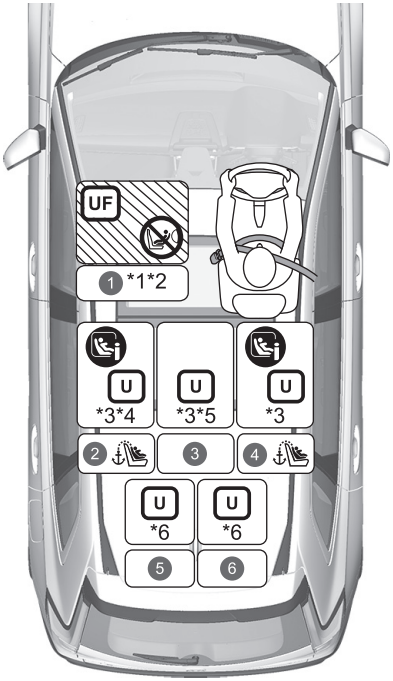
Seven-seater models

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Left-hand Drive Type



Right-hand Drive Type



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1:Adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
*2:For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*3:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*4:If you attach a ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt can not be used.
*5:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.
*6:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the front most position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position. If it still interferes with the second row seats, fold down the seat back.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the 3rd row seat is excluded.

Continued

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position number							
	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸	❹	❺	❻
			Front passenger[*1]	2nd row[*3]			3rd row[*6]	
				Left[*4]	Centre[*5]	Right	Left	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg						
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes[*2]	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg						
	Group III	22-36kg						
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS[*7]	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3	No	No
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg						
	Group I	9-18kg						
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3	No	No
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150cm		B3	B3	No	B3	B3	B3

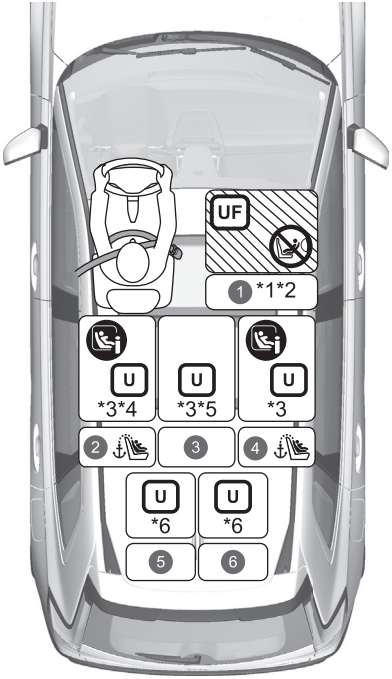
*1:Adjust the seat slide to the most rear position. Forward facing only.
*2:For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*3:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*4:If you attach a ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt can not be used.
*5:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.
*6:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the front most position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position. If it still interferes with the second row seats, fold down the seat back.
*7:The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the 3rd row seat is excluded.

Continued

African models and Middle Eastern models

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1:Adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
*2:For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*3:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*4:If you attach a ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt can not be used.
*5:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.
*6:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the front most position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position. If it still interferes with the second row seats, fold down the seat back.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the 3rd row seat is excluded.

Continued

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position number							
	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸	❹	❺	❻
			Front passenger*1	2nd row*3			3rd row*6	
				Left*4	Centre*5	Right	Left	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg						
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg						
	Group III	22-36kg						
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	No	No	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3	No	No
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg						
	Group I	9-18kg						
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3	No	No
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150cm		B3	B3	No	B3	B3	B3

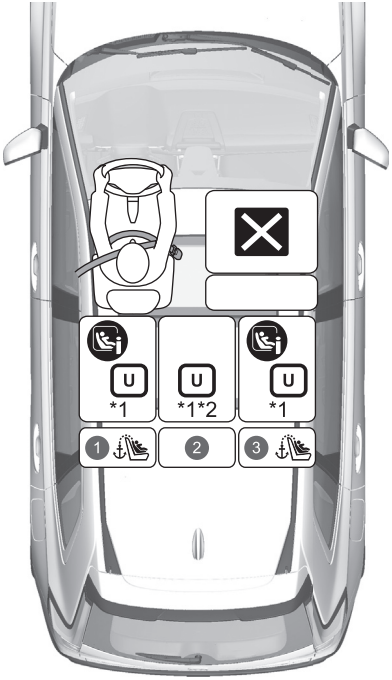
*1:Adjust the seat slide to the most rear position. Forward facing only.
*2:For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*3:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*4:If you attach a ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt can not be used.
*5:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.
*6:When installing a child restraint system, adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the front most position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position. If it still interferes with the second row seats, fold down the seat back.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the 3rd row seat is excluded.

Continued

Taiwanese models

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
i-Size	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
Top Tether	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.
✕	Never use a child restraint system.

*1:Adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*2:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed.

Continued

Detail information for CRS installation

	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸
			2nd row[*1]		
			Left	Centre[*2]	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg			
	Group III	22-36kg			
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150cm		Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS[*3]	Refer to genuine CRS list		Yes	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg			
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150cm		B3	B3	B3

*1:Adjust the 2nd row seat slide to the rearmost position.
*2:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat may make the left side seat belt unusable.
*3:The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
  However, when using the booster cushion only, do not remove the head restraint.
- If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed.

Continued

■ Genuine CRS List

Except African, Middle Eastern, Oceanian and Taiwanese models

UN R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
Under 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Over 71cm and 15 months to 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

Taiwanese models

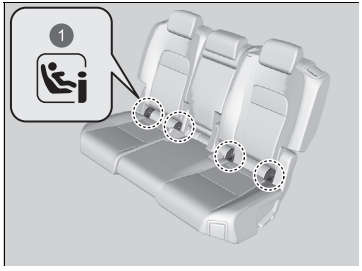
CNS11497

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	-	-
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	Joie Arc360 (C1416)	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Group I 9 kg to 18kg	Joie Arc360 (C1416)	Semi-universal ISOFIX
Group II, III 15 kg to 36 kg	Honda KIDFIX*1	Universal Semi-universal

*1:Move the shoulder anchorage to its highest position when the child restraint system is placed on the rear outboard seating position.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

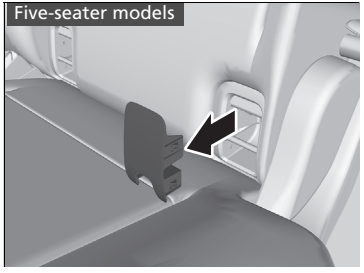
A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer second row seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors (see illustrations).



❶ Marks

1. Locate the lower anchorages under the cover.

2. Move the seat to the most rear position.



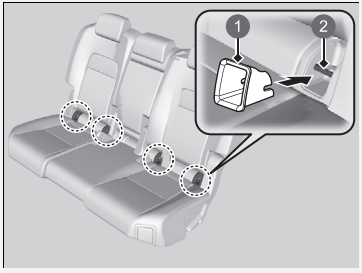
3. Remove the anchorage covers with the marks* to expose the lower anchorages.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

⚠WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

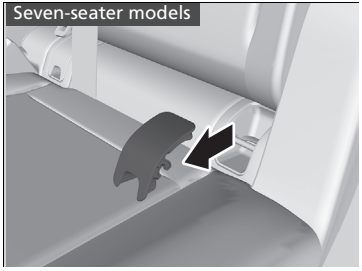
Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.

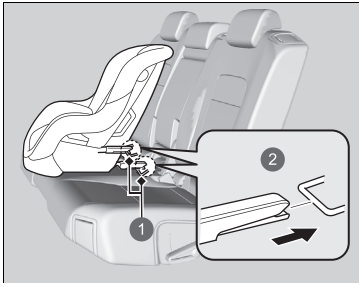


❶ Guide-cup
❷ Lower Anchorage

* Not available on all models

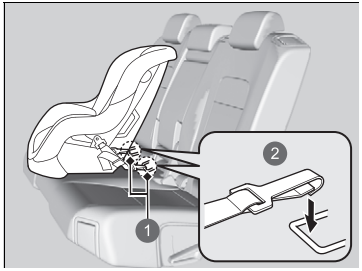
Continued





❶ Lower Anchorages
❷ Rigid Type

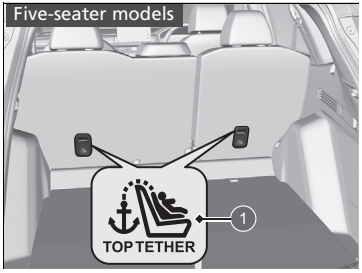
4. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.
▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.
▶ Install the child restraint system so that the gap between it and the seat back is as small as possible.



❶ Lower Anchorages
❷ Flexible Type

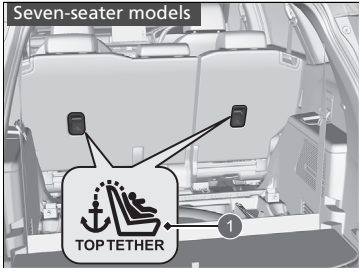
Continued

Five-seater models



❶ Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

Seven-seater models



❶ Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

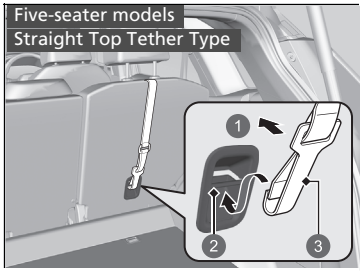
Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.
A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

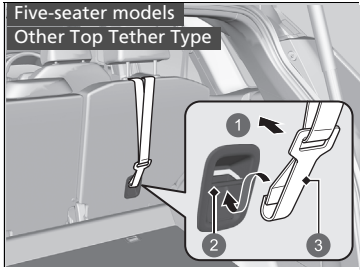
The flexible type may not be available in your country.

Five-seater models
Straight Top Tether Type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Anchorage
❸ Tether Strap Hook

Five-seater models
Other Top Tether Type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Anchorage
❸ Tether Strap Hook

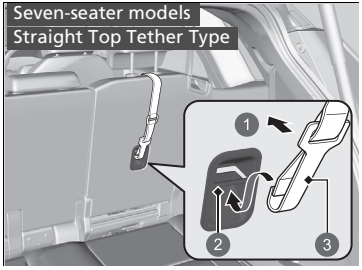
Child restraint system with tether strap

5. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
▶ Retract the luggage area cover*.
➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 315
6. Route the tether strap through the head restraint legs.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.
7. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

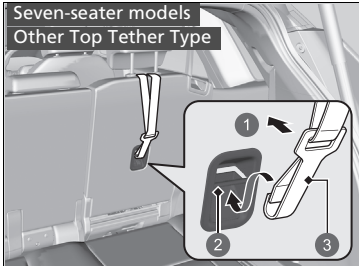
8. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
9. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
10. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

* Not available on all models

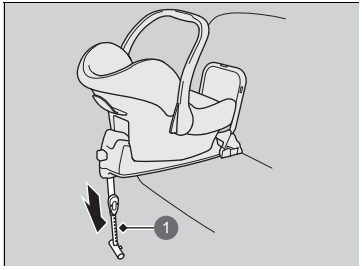
Continued



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Anchorage
❸ Tether Strap Hook



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Anchorage
❸ Tether Strap Hook



❶ Support Leg

Child restraint system with support leg

5. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- ▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support. If this is the case, move the seat forward or back so that the support leg is resting on a level section.
- ▶ Make sure that the support leg is not resting on the slide rail or cover.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

Continued

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



When installing the child restraint system on the second row seat

1. Move the second row seat to the most rear position.

When installing the child restraint system on the third row seat*

1. Move the second row seat to the most front position.

Common procedure

2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.

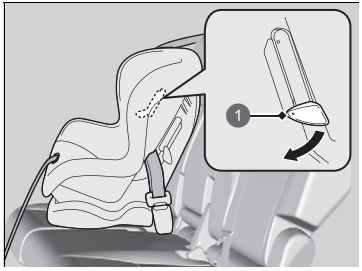
3. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.

▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

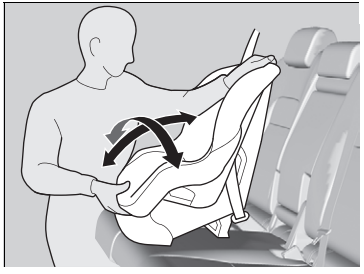
A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

 * Not available on all models



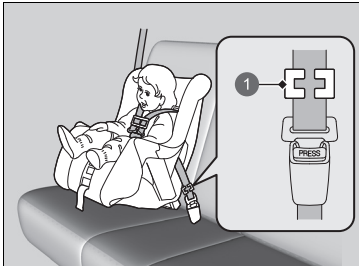
1 Tab

4. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
5. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
   ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
6. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
   ▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.



7. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
8. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

Continued



❶ Locking Clip

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 - 3, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

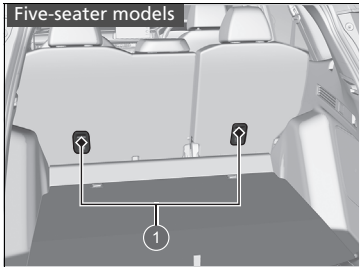
4. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.

5. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.

6. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 7 and 8.

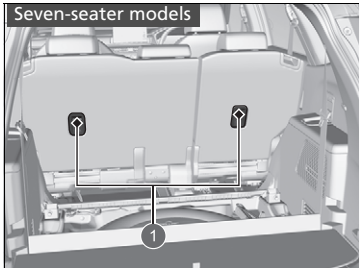
Adding Security with a Tether

Five-seater models



❶ Tether Anchorage Points

Seven-seater models



❶ Tether Anchorage Points

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each second row outer seating position and in the ceiling for the second row centre*.
If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

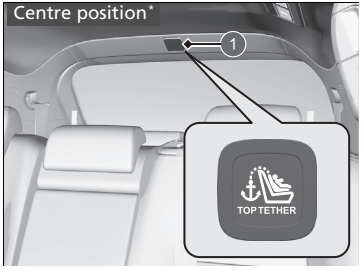
Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

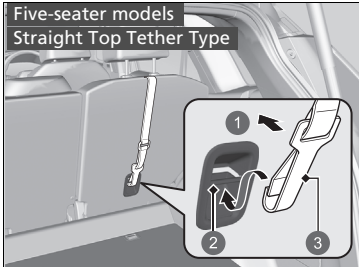
Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

* Not available on all models

Continued



❶ Tether Anchorage Points



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Anchorage
❸ Tether Strap Hook

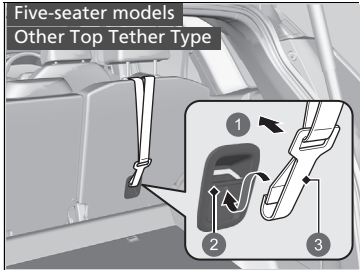
■ Using an outer anchorage

1. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
▶ Retract the luggage area cover*.
➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 315

2. Route the tether strap through the head restraint legs.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.

3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

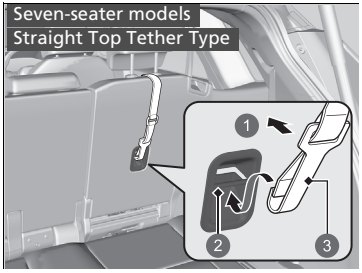
 * Not available on all models



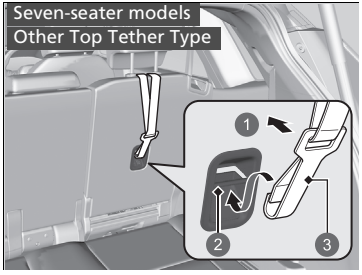
❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Anchorage
❸ Tether Strap Hook

4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Continued

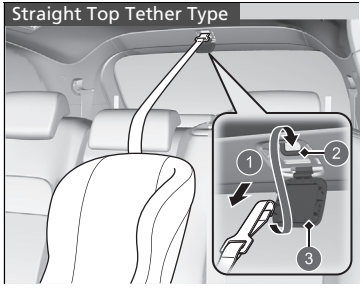


❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Anchorage
❸ Tether Strap Hook



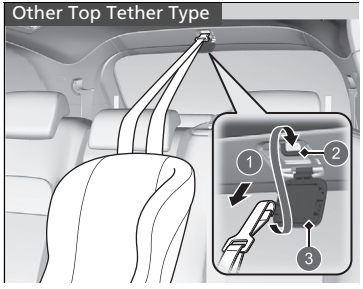
❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Anchorage
❸ Tether Strap Hook

Straight Top Tether Type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Anchorage
❸ Anchorage Cover

Other Top Tether Type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Anchorage
❸ Anchorage Cover

■ **Using the centre anchorage***

1. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
2. Open the anchorage cover.
3. Route the tether strap over the head restraint.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

* Not available on all models

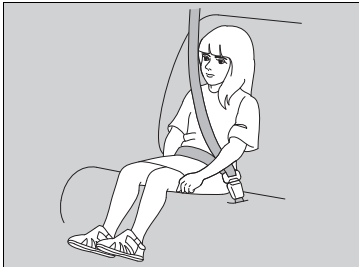
Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

⚠WARNING

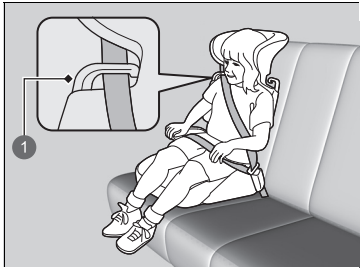
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, and use a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

1 Guide

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

Continued

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ **Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever**

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

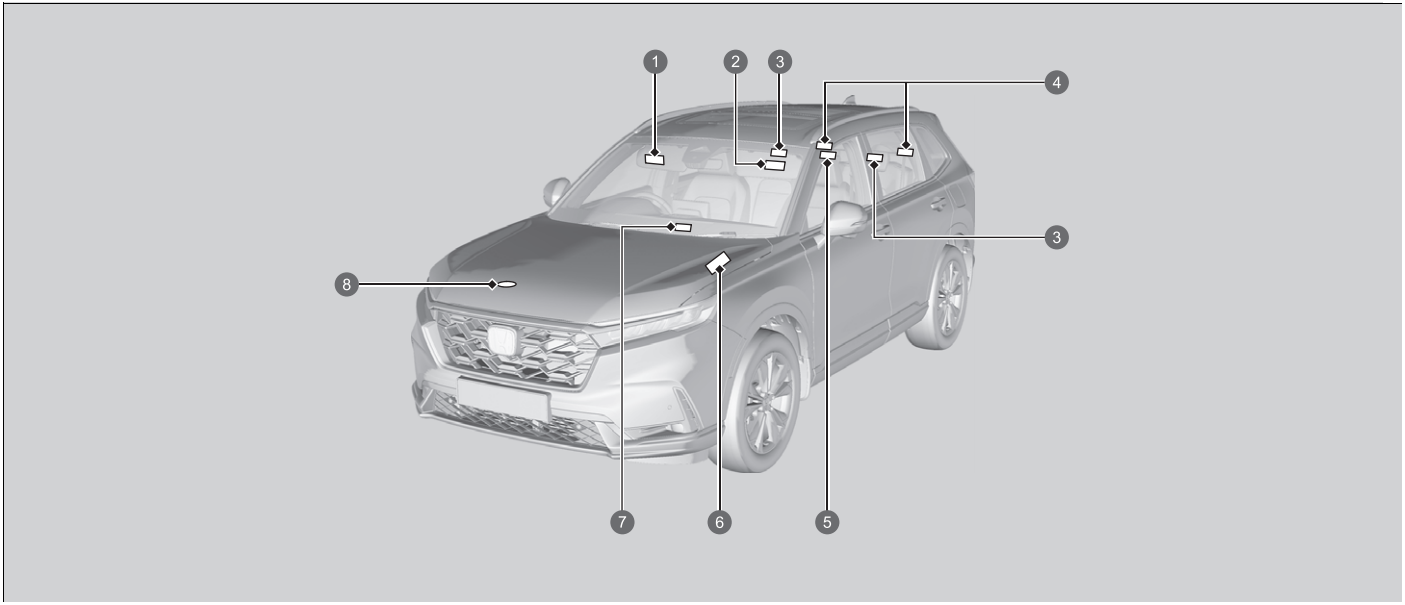
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



1. Protecting Child Passenger (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 81
2. Protecting Child Passenger (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 81
3. Second Row Outer Head Restraint* ➔ P. 299
4. Third Row Head Restraint* ➔ P. 299
5. Second Row Centre Head Restraint ➔ P. 299
6. Battery*
7. Wireless Charger* ➔ P. 319
8. Radiator Cap ➔ P. 838

* Not available on all models

Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

Indicators 136
Gauges and Displays
Gauges 160
Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter) 165
Driver Information Interface Left Side Area (B-type Meter) 191
Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type Meter) 194
Head-Up Display* 212

* Not available on all models

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the Driver Information Interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→ P. 138
*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 140
*1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→ P. 140
*1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→ P. 140
*1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→ P. 141
*1	Charging System Indicator	→ P. 141
	Shift Position Indicator	→ P. 141
	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/ Shift Indicator*	→ P. 141

	Transmission System Indicator	→ P. 141
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→ P. 142
	Low Fuel Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 142
*1	Low Temperature Indicator*	→ P. 143
*1	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	→ P. 143
*1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→ P. 143
*1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→ P. 143
*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→ P. 144
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	→ P. 144

Taiwanese models

*1	Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator	→ P. 145

Except Taiwanese models

*1	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator*	→ P. 146
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→ P. 147
	Lights On Indicator	→ P. 147
	High Beam Indicator	→ P. 147
*1	Auto High-Beam Indicator	→ P. 147
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	→ P. 147
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	→ P. 147

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

* Not available on all models


ECON Mode Indicator → P. 149


*1 Hill Descent Control System Indicator (White/Green) → P. 149


System Message Indicator → P. 150


1 Speed Alarm Indicator → P. 150


Parking Sensor Indicator* → P. 150


Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)* → P. 153


Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)* → P. 153


Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator* → P. 154

Immobilizer System Indicator → P. 148

Security System Alarm Indicator → P. 149


Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)* → P. 151


Auto Idle Stop **OFF** Indicator* → P. 151


1 Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber) → P. 151


Auto Idle Stop Suspend Indicator* → P. 152


*1 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber) → P. 153


Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green) → P. 153


*1 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber) → P. 154


Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green) → P. 154


*1 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber) → P. 154


Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey) → P. 154


*1 Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber) → P. 155


Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator → P. 155


Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey) → P. 155


*1 Safety Support Indicator (Amber) → P. 156


Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey) → P. 159

*1 : When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

* Not available on all models

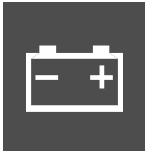
Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.	• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied. • Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off. • Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.
		• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 915

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.	• **Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 916 • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 915 • **Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 916

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
		• Comes on if the brake system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor. • Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 601 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 771
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 771

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 914
	Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.	• Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately. ➡ **Checking the Battery** P. 855 ➡ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 914
	Shift Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift position.	➡ **Shifting** P. 620, 622
	**M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/ Shift Indicator*	• Comes on when the 7-speed manual shift mode is applied.	➡ **7-Speed Manual Shift Mode** P. 625
	Transmission System Indicator	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode in ON. • Blinks while driving if you and/or any passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 50
	Low Fuel Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 8.0 Liters left).	• Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.
		• Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Low Temperature Indicator*	• Comes on when the engine coolant temperature is low.	• If the indicator stays on after the engine has reached normal operating temperature, there may be a problem with the temperature sensors. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 774
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental Restraint System - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system or Driver Attention Monitor System.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Do not drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 917

* Not available on all models

Continued

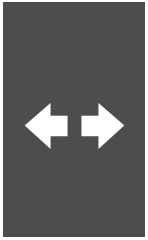
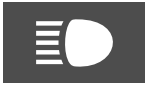
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	• Blinks when VSA, or trailer stability assist* is active.	—
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, brake assist system, hill start assist system, starting assist brake function*, agile handling assist, or trailer stability assist*.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System** P. 652 ➡ **Hill start assist system** P. 616 ➡ **Brake Assist System** P. 775 ➡ **Starting Assist Brake Function** P. 634 ➡ **Agile Handling Assist** P. 654 ➡ **Trailer Stability Assist*** P. 606 Models with trailer stability assist • When **Trailer stability assist system problem** is displayed on the driver information interface, the VSA does not activate.
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on when you partially disable VSA.	➡ **VSA On and Off** P. 653

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Taiwanese models Low Tyre Pressure/ TPMS Indicator	• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been calibrated.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be calibrated. ➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 657
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the TPMS is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Except Taiwanese models Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator*	• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been calibrated.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be calibrated. ➡ **Deflation Warning System*** P. 659
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system, or when a compact spare tyre* is temporarily installed.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare tyre*, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.
		• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

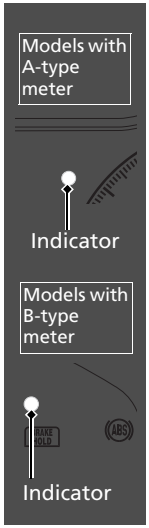
 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Blinks along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.	➡ **Emergency Stop Signal** P. 776
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.	➡ **Lights** P. 261
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.	➡ **Auto High-Beam** P. 269
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the front fog lights are on.	➡ **Fog Lights*** P. 264
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the rear fog light is on.	➡ **Fog Lights*** P. 264

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
Models with A-type meter  Indicator Models with B-type meter  Indicator	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	➡ **Security System Alarm** P. 248
	ECON Mode Indicator	• Comes on when the ECON mode is on.	➡ **ECON Mode** P. 627
	Hill Descent Control System Indicator (White/ Green)	• Lights up in white when the Hill Descent Control System is on and ready to use. • Lights up in green when the Hill Descent Control System is in operation.	➡ **Hill Descent Control System** P. 635

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Speed Alarm Indicator*	• Blinks when your vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. A reminder tone sounds.	• This indicator keeps blinking while your vehicle speed is faster than 120 km/h.
	System Message Indicator	• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	• Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. Models with A-type meter • While the indicator is on, press the (home) button, and select **Warnings** to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 165 • The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the (home) button is pressed. Models with B-type meter • While the indicator is on, roll the right selector wheel to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 194 • The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the right selector wheel is rolled.
	Parking Sensor Indicator*	• Blinks if there are obstacles around the sensors.	➡ **Parking Sensor System** P. 779

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*	• Comes on when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off.	**Auto Idle Stop*** P. 628
	Auto Idle Stop **OFF** Indicator*	• Comes on when the Auto Idle Stop system has been turned off by the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button.	**Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF** P. 630
	Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*	• Blinks if there is a problem with the Auto Idle Stop system.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

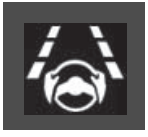
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Auto Idle Stop Suspend Indicator*	• Comes on while Auto Idle Stop is temporarily suspended in the following situations.	—
		- Brake pedal is not fully pressed	• Depress the brake pedal firmly.
		- The transmission is in a position other than D	➡ **Auto Idle Stop*** P. 628
		- System charging is prioritised	
		- Climate control system is prioritised	
		- FRONT is ON (indicator on).	
		- Engine coolant temperature is not in operating range	
		- The battery temperature is too low.	
		- Auto Idle Stop does not activate for some reason.	

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 601 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the  button. Oceanian models You can switch between indicators by pressing the **LIM** button. • Lights up in green while the system is in operation.	➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 707
	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*		➡ **Adjustable Speed Limiter*** P. 637
	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*		➡ **Intelligent Speed Limiter*** P. 644

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator*	• Comes on when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow indicator comes on.	➔ **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 724
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➔ **Load Limit** P. 601 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button. • Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation.	➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 729 Oceanian and Singaporean models ➔ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 742
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. ➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 156
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)	• Comes on when the CMBS is off.	➔ **Safety Support** P. 178, 207

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. ➡ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 156
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.	➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 697
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off.	➡ **Safety Support** P. 178, 207

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, Low Speed Braking Control*, or blind spot information system*.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the parking sensor.	• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. **Load Limit** P. 601 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS and Low Speed Braking Control* are deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected and then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off.	• Indicator may come on temporarily if the radar sensor cannot detect any objects when passing through an enclosed space such as a tunnel, or driving on an open road without any structures nearby. • The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you have cleaned the radar sensor. ➡ **Radar Sensor** P. 765
			• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 763

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 763 • It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.
		Models with blind spot information system • Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor. • Comes on when the temperature of the blind spot information system sensor is high.	• **Comes on while driving** - Something may be interfering with the blind spot information system sensor. Check the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor and remove any obstacles. • The system will return to normal when the temperature cools down. ➡ **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 665
		Models with Low Speed Braking Control • Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the sonar sensor.	• Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of the sonar sensor. ➡ **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 691

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/ Grey)	• Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, Low Speed Braking Control*, blind spot information system*, and parking sensor system*/parking sensor warning* are on. • Lights up in green and grey when one or more of the systems above are off. • Lights up in grey when all systems above are off.	**Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 677 **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 697 **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 691 **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 665 **Parking Sensor System** P. 779

* Not available on all models

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

Tachometer

Models with A-type meter

You can turn the tachometer display on or off.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Customized Features P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Customized Features P. 540

* Not available on all models

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches E. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

After lightly refueling, or depending on your vehicle's condition, the actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Models with B-type meter

■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

Temperature Gauge

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge reading in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

➡ **Overheating** P. 911

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Ambient Meter

Changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel-efficient manner.

Continued

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the **Outside temperature low** message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

Models with colour audio system

➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 540

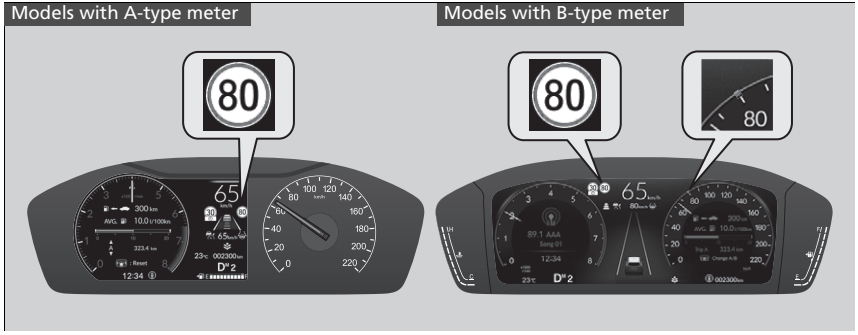
* Not available on all models

■ Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Shows certain detected traffic signs while driving.

If speed limit warning is activated, the sign icon blinks when the maximum speed of the detected traffic sign is exceeded.

➲ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 756



* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*1

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*1.

➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 707

➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 729

Oceanian and Singaporean models

➔ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 742

Models with A-type meter

■ Clock

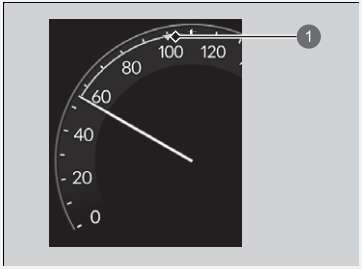
Shows the clock.

*1: Oceanian and Singaporean models

Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*1

Models with B-type meter

When you set speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow, a set speed mark will be displayed on the speedometer.



❶ Set Speed

Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➔ **Clock** P. 218

Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low** or **Engine temperature too hot** message is displayed.

➔ **If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears** P. 913

➔ **Overheating** P. 911

■ Switching the Display

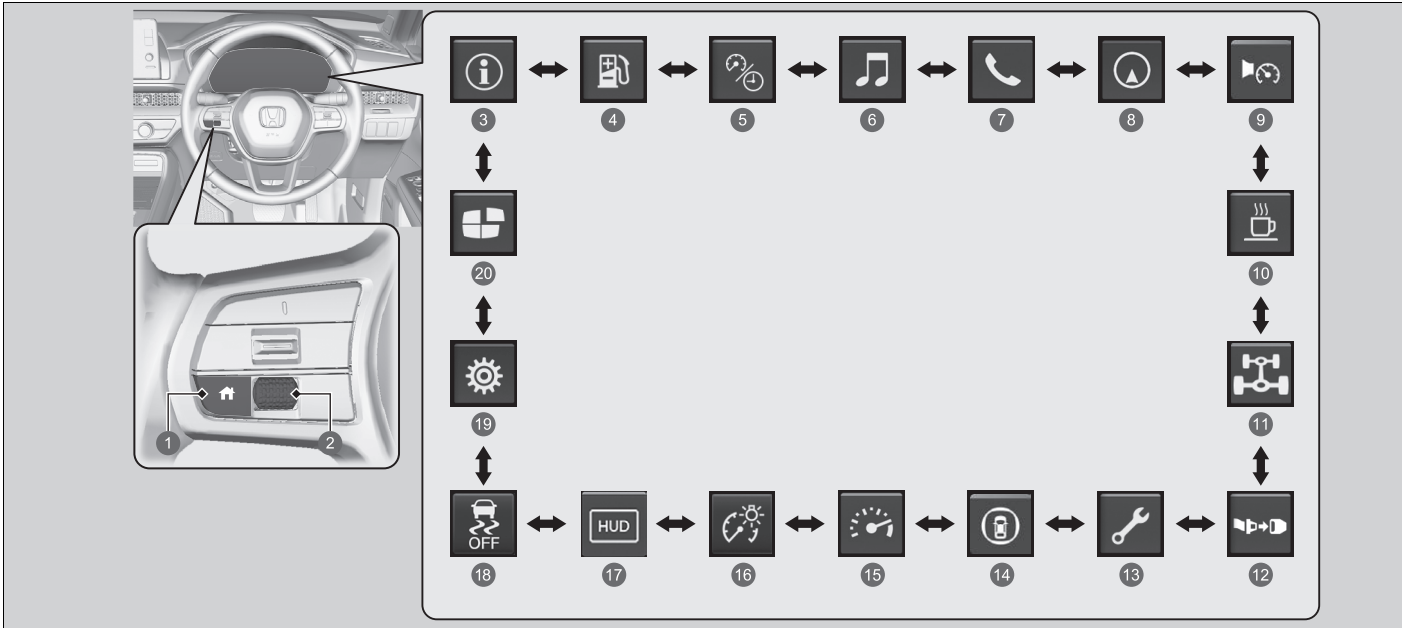
Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

You can add or delete the meter contents.

➔ **Instrument Display Settings** P. 182

Continued

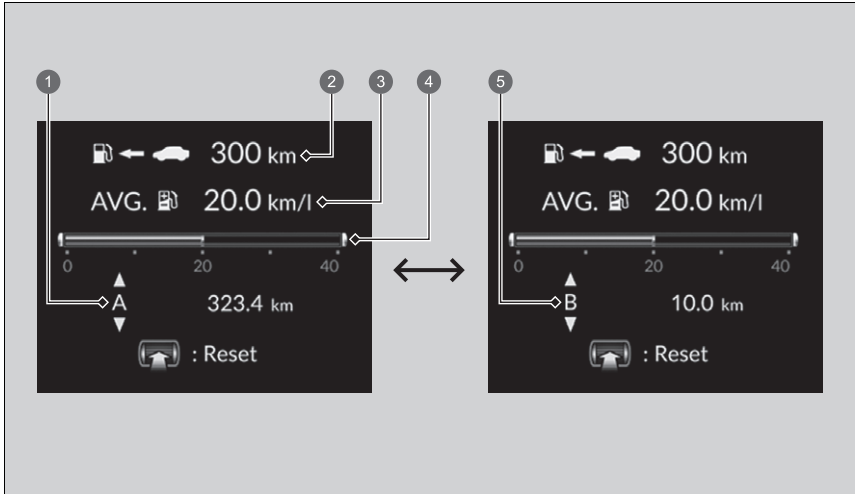


❶ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ **Information** ➡ P. 182
❹ **Range & fuel** ➡ P. 167
❺ **Speed & time** ➡ P. 169
❻ **Audio** ➡ P. 170
❼ **Phone** ➡ P. 171
❽ **Navigation*** ➡ P. 171
❾ **Speed alarm*** ➡ P. 172
❿ **Driver attention** ➡ P. 173
⓫ **AWD torque distribution*** ➡ P. 177
⓬ **Seat belts** ➡ P. 177
⓭ **Maintenance** ➡ P. 177
⓮ **Safety support** ➡ P. 178
⓯ **No content** ➡ P. 180
⓰ **Brightness** ➡ P. 180
⓱ **Head-Up Display settings*** ➡ P. 213
⓲ **VSA mode** ➡ P. 181
⓳ **Vehicle settings*** ➡ P. 183
⓴ **Instrument display settings** ➡ P. 182

 * Not available on all models

■ Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip Meter A
2. Range
3. Average Fuel Economy
4. Instant Fuel Economy
5. Trip Meter B

Continued

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**.

▶ The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l* or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l* or l/100 km.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Except African, Middle Eastern and Oceanian models

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Customized Features P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Customized Features P. 540

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Customized Features P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Customized Features P. 540

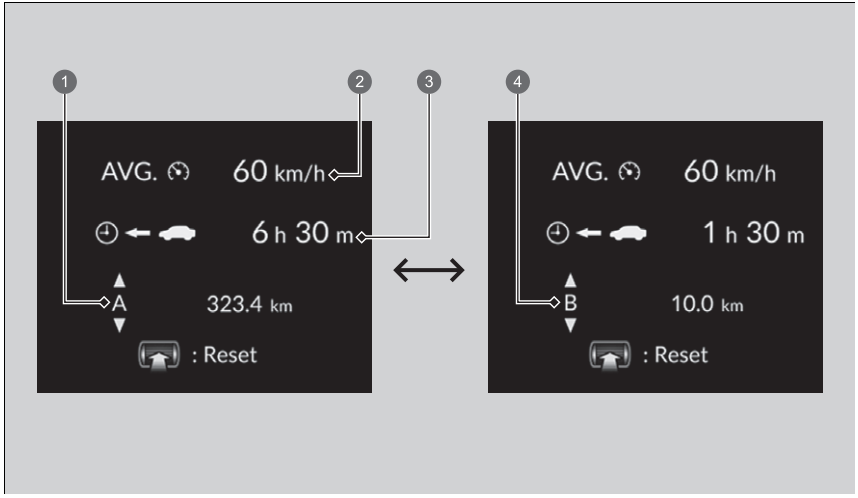
Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ to the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

* Not available on all models

■ Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



❶ Trip Meter A
❷ Average Speed
❸ Elapsed Time
❹ Trip Meter B

Continued

■ Trip meter

➔ **Trip meter** P. 168

■ Elapsed time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

Models with colour audio system

➔ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➔ **Customized Features** P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➔ **Customized Features** P. 540

■ Average speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

Models with colour audio system

➔ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➔ **Customized Features** P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➔ **Customized Features** P. 540

■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

Models with colour audio system

➔ **Basic Operation** P. 336

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➔ **Basic Operation** P. 389

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➔ **Basic Operation** P. 486

 * Not available on all models

■ Phone

Shows the current phone information.

Models with colour audio system

➔ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 368

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➔ **Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System** P. 463

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➔ **Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System** P. 561

■ Navigation*

■ Compass

Shows the compass screen.

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system*, Google Maps*, Android Auto* or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

Models with navigation system

➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➔ **Android Auto™*** P. 439

➔ **Apple CarPlay** P. 433

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➔ **Android Auto™** P. 529

➔ **Apple CarPlay** P. 525

➔ **Google built-in** P. 533

Navigation*

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➔ **Customized Features** P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➔ **Customized Features** P. 540

Navigation features may not be available for all apps.

Models with navigation system

You can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by rolling the left selector wheel.

➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

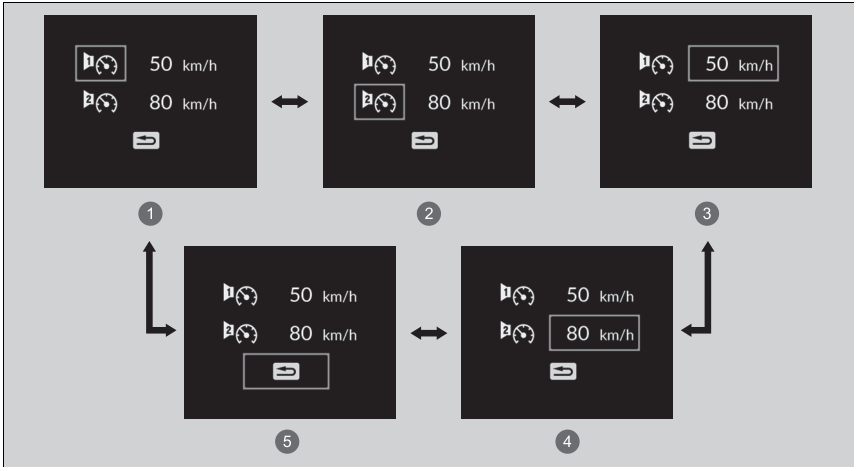
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Speed Alarm*

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Roll the left selector wheel, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:

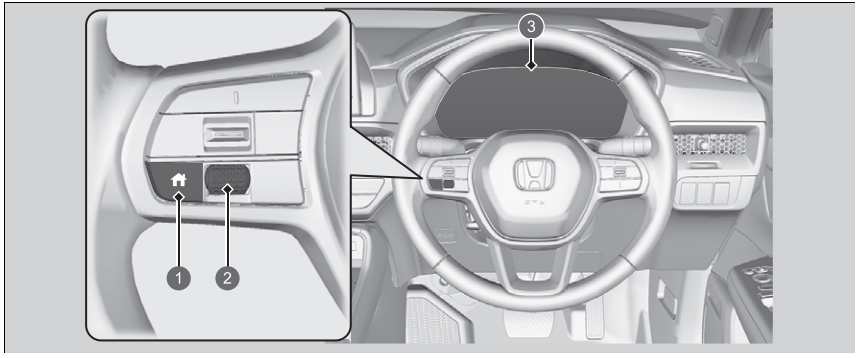


❶ Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
❷ Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
❸ Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting (50 km/h*1)
❹ Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting (80 km/h*1)
❺ Back
*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

■ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.



❶ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ Driver Information Interface

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

Continued



When you select **Driver attention** on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 165

❶ Level



If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.



If one bar lights up, the **Driver attention level low. Take a rest** message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.
If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

Except Oceanian models

If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.

Oceanian models

Make sure to reset the system after you take a break.

➡ **The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:** P. 176

Driver Attention Monitor

The message does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

Except Oceanian models

The message will disappear when the left selector wheel is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.

Oceanian models

The message will disappear when the left selector wheel is pressed.

If one bar lights up, the distance at which CMBS alerts may be set to Far, and the Road Departure Mitigation system may be set to Early.

➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 677
➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 697

If the system is not reset, the Driver Attention Monitor will continue to light up only one bar.

Continued

■ **The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:**
- The engine is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:**
- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h.
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ **Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:**
- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
  ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 729
- The condition of the road is poor; e.g., the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner, such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ **Customizing**

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile and audible alert**, **Tactile alert only** or **OFF**.

Models with colour audio system

➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 540

Oceanian models

Tactile and audible alert is selected every time you set the power mode to ON, even if you changed the Driver Attention Monitor settings the last time you drove the vehicle.

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

The bars on the driver information interface remain greyed-out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

* Not available on all models

■ AWD Torque Distribution Monitor*

The indicators on the display show the amount of torque being transferred to the right front, left front, right rear, and left rear wheels.

➡ **Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System*** P. 655

■ Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 50

■ Maintenance

Show the oil monitor system.

➡ **Oil Monitor System** P. 815

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, Low Speed Braking Control*, blind spot information system*, and parking sensor system*/ parking sensor warning*, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

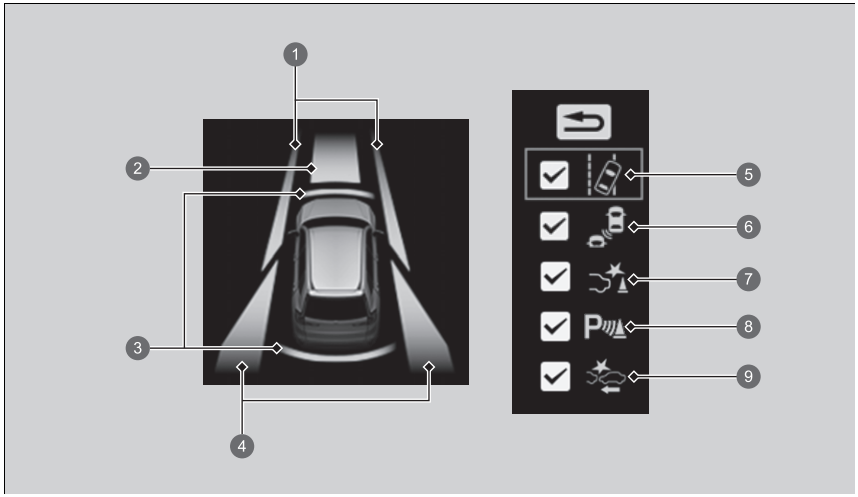
To turn each system on or off, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 677
- **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 697
- **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 691
- **Parking Sensor System** P. 779
- **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 665

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 156
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 159
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)** P. 154
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)** P. 154
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 155
- **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator** P. 155
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)** P. 155

 * Not available on all models



❶ Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
❷ Area Info for CMBS
❸ Area Info for Low Speed Braking Control* and Parking Sensor System*/Parking Sensor Warning*
❹ Area Info for Blind Spot Information System*
❺ Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
❻ Blind Spot Information System Icon and Status Info*
❼ Low Speed Braking Control Icon and Status Info*
❽ Parking Sensor System*/Parking Sensor Warning* Icon and Status Info
❾ CMBS Icon and Status Info

Safety Support

Models with Low Speed Braking Control

Even when the Low Speed Braking Control icon is green, if the **Rear sensor setting** is turned off, the brake assist will not operate when reversing.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Customized Features P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Customized Features P. 540

Models with Front Parking Sensor System

Even when the Parking Sensor System icon is green, if the **Rear Sensor Setting** is turned off, the rear parking sensor will not operate when reversing.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Customized Features P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Customized Features P. 540

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ No Content

Tachometer P. 160

No Content

The tachometer can be turned on and off using the driver information interface or audio/information screen.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Customized Features P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Customized Features P. 540

Even if you have turned off the tachometer on the driver information interface or audio/information screen, if **No content** is selected on the driver information interface, it will change to a tachometer-only display.

Switching the Display P. 165

■ Brightness

Press the left selector wheel when the **Brightness** screen is displayed.

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the left selector wheel to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Roll the left selector wheel up.
Dim: Roll the left selector wheel down.

Press the left selector wheel to exit.

Brightness

The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.

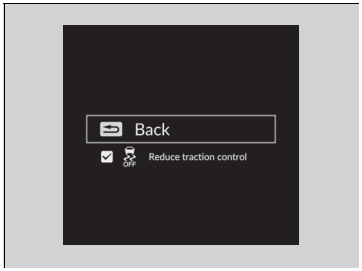
- The brightness decreases when the ambient light is dark.
- The brightness increases when the ambient light is bright.

You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.

* Not available on all models

VSA Mode

You can turn the VSA on or off.



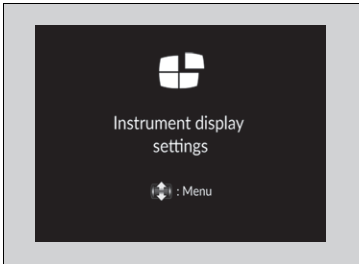
Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Reduce traction control**, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck it.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System P. 652

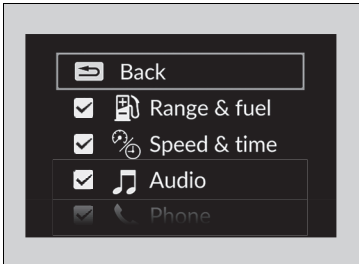
Continued

■ Instrument Display Settings

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Instrument display settings** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

■ Information

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

Instrument Display Settings

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

When you customize settings, shift to P.

Information

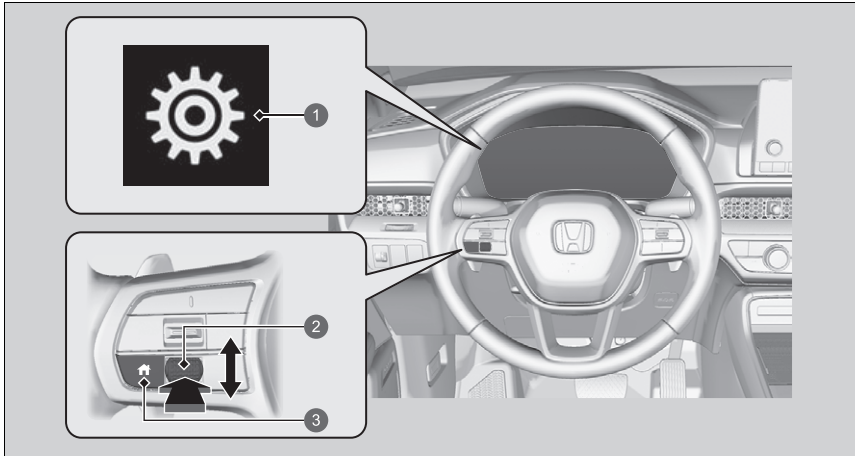
If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

■ Vehicle Settings*

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

Press the (home) button, then select the screen by rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift position is in P. Then, press the left selector wheel.



❶ Driver Information Interface
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ (Home) Button

Vehicle Settings*

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

List of customizable options P. 184
Example of customization settings P. 188

When you customize settings, shift to P.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation warning system	—	Initialises the deflation warning system.	**Cancel/Initialise**
Driver assist system setup	**Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance**	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	**Far/Normal***1**/Near**
	ACC vehicle ahead detected beep	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle is detected or when the vehicle is out of ACC with Low Speed Follow range.	**ON/OFF***1
	Lead car departure notification system*	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system.	**Normal***1**/Early/OFF**
	Road departure mitigation setting	Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system.	**Early/Normal***1**/Delayed/ Warning only**
	Lane keep assist beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**ON/OFF***1
	Driver attention monitor	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor.	**Tactile and audible alert***1**/ Tactile alert only/ OFF**
	Rear sensor setting*	Turns the rear parking sensor system on and off. ➡ **Parking Sensor System** P. 779	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter setup	**Language***	Changes the displayed language.	**Arabic*1/English**
	Adjust outside temp. display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C**
	"Trip A" reset timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	**When fully refueled/ When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset*1**
	"Trip B" reset timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	**When fully refueled/ When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset*1**
	Alarm volume control	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	**Max/Mid*1/Min**
	Fuel efficiency backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Rear seat reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Fuel economy unit*	Selects the fuel economy units.	**km/l*1/l/100km**
	Tachometer	Selects whether the tachometer is displayed on the instrument panel.	**ON*1/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless access setup	**Keyless access beep volume**	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	**High**[*1]**/Low**
	Keyless access light flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Keyless access beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Remote start system ON/OFF	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Lighting setup	**Auto High-Beam**	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Interior light dimmer duration	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
	Headlight auto OFF timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**
	Headlight integration with wipers	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door setup	**Auto door lock***	Changes the setting for when the doors and the tailgate automatically lock.	**With vehicle speed**[*1]/ **Shift from P/OFF**
	Auto door unlock*	Changes the setting for when the doors and the tailgate automatically unlock.	**Shift to P**[*1]**/IGN OFF/OFF**
	Walk away lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Keyless lock notification	LOCK/UNLOCK - The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push) - The beeper sounds.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Keyless remote power window control	Turns remote window control using the keyless remote on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Lock presetting	Changes the settings for the lock presetting function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Maintenance reset	—	Resets the oil monitor system information when you have performed the maintenance service.	**Cancel/Reset**
Default all	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	**Cancel/OK**

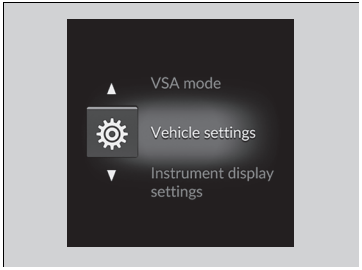
*1:Default Setting

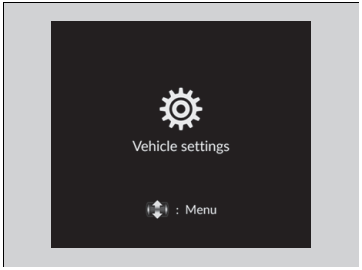
* Not available on all models

Continued

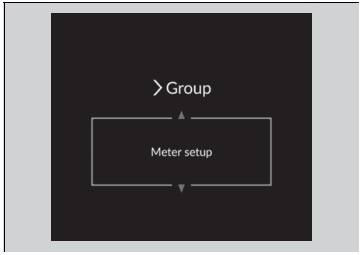
■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the **"Trip A" reset timing** setting to **When fully refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" reset timing** is **Manual reset**.

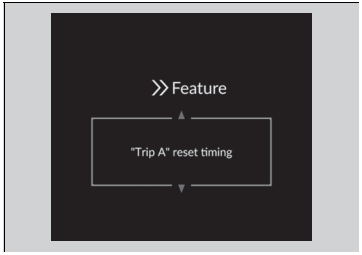




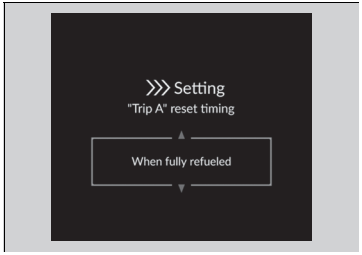
1. Press the (home) button and roll the left selector wheel to select screen, then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the left selector wheel.

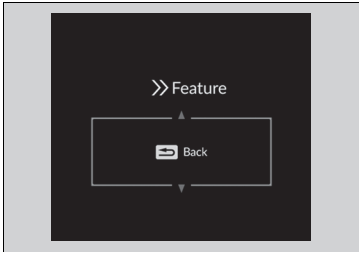


4. Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A" reset timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When fully refueled**, **When ignition is turned OFF**, **Manual reset** or **Back**.



5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When fully refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display returns to the customization menu screen.

Continued



6. Press the left selector wheel after **Back** appears on the display.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Driver Information Interface Left Side Area (B-type Meter)

Shows the current mode for audio and phone information, etc.

Audio Remote Controls P. 392

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System P. 463

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System P. 561

■ Clock

Shows the clock.

Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Clock Setup P. 402

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Clock Setup P. 499

You can choose whether the clock is displayed on the driver information interface.

Customize Display P. 192

Continued

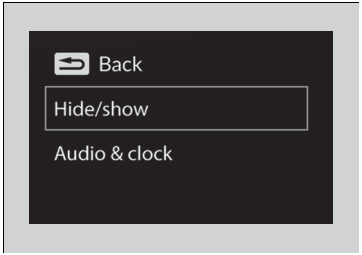
■ Customize Display

■ Arrange audio source on the left side area

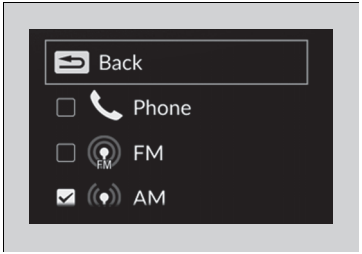
You can choose which sources to display on the audio source screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the left selector wheel.



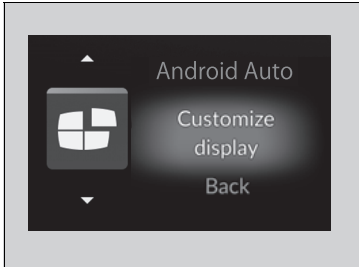
3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between audio sources, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Customize Display

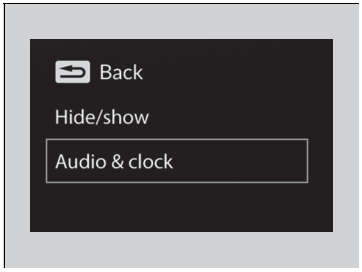
When you customize settings, shift to P.

■ Turn the displaying on the left side area on and off

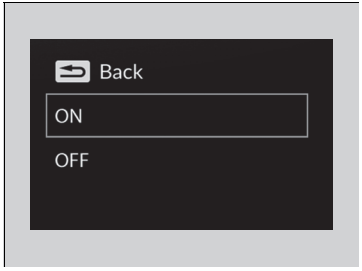
You can select whether the current audio information and clock appear on the left side area.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Audio & clock**, then press the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the left selector wheel.

Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type Meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low** or **Engine temperature too hot** message is displayed.

➡ **If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears** P. 913

➡ **Overheating** P. 911

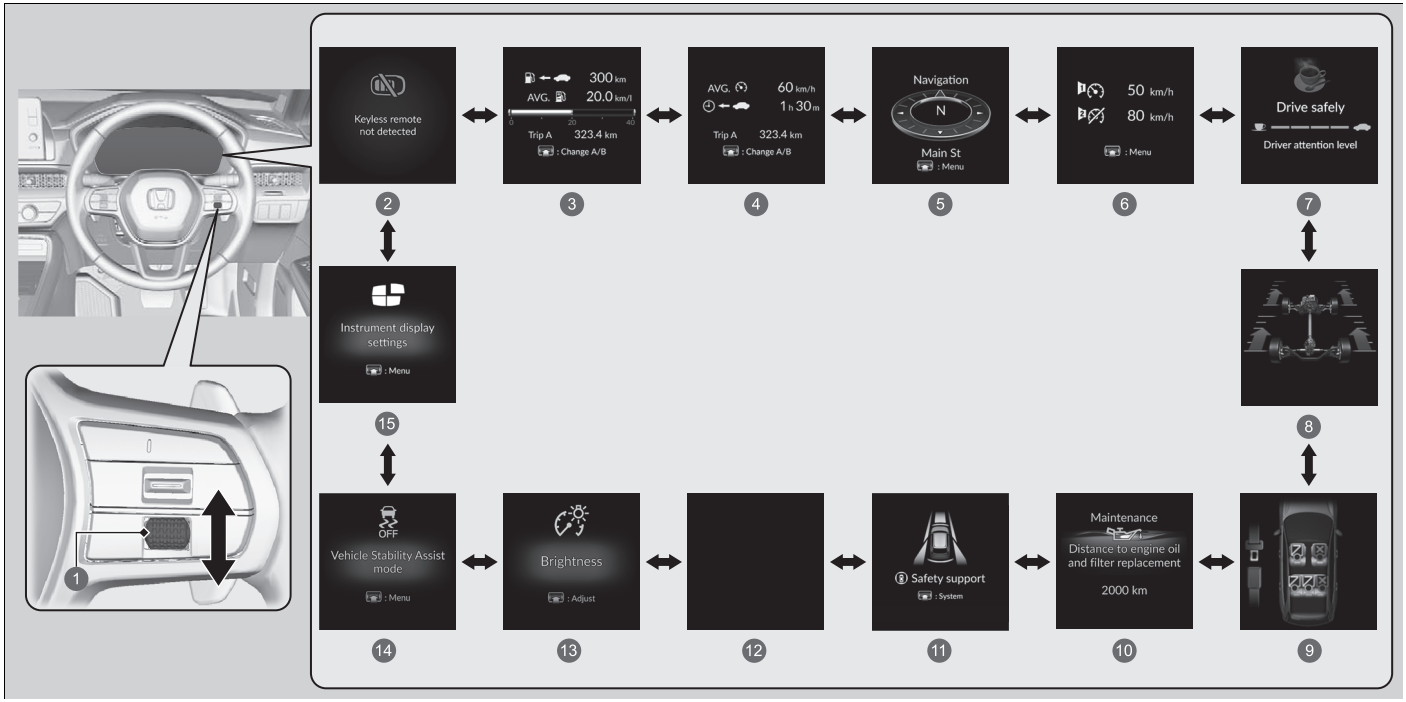
■ Switching the Display

Roll the right selector wheel to view different types of content.

Switching the Display

You can add or delete the meter contents.

➡ **Instrument Display Settings** P. 210



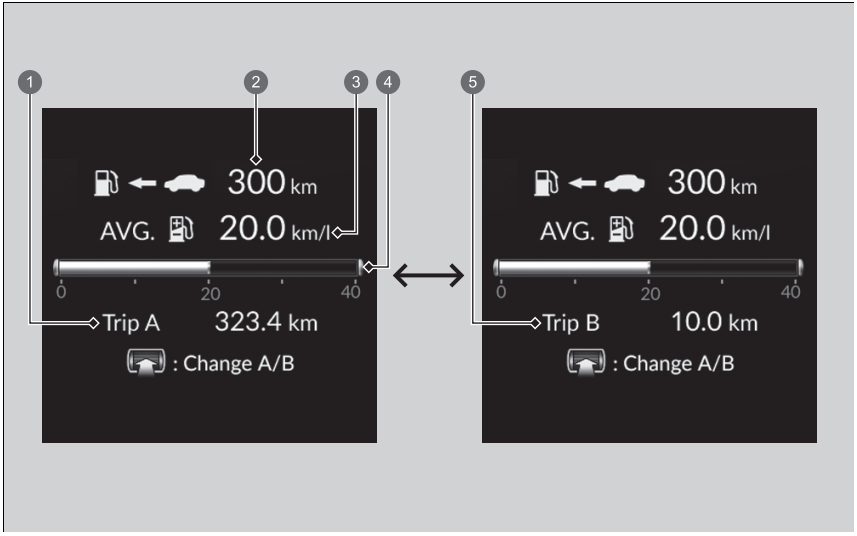
❶ Right Selector Wheel
❷ Warning Messages ➔ P. 211
❸ Range/Fuel/Trip Meter ➔ P. 196
❹ Speed/Time/Trip Meter ➔ P. 198
❺ Navigation/Compass ➔ P. 200
❻ Speed Alarm* ➔ P. 201
❼ Driver Attention Monitor ➔ P. 202
❽ AWD Torque Distribution* ➔ P. 206
❾ Seat Belts ➔ P. 206
❿ Maintenance ➔ P. 206
⓫ Safety Support ➔ P. 207
⓬ No Content
⓭ Brightness ➔ P. 209
⓮ Vehicle Stability Assist Mode ➔ P. 209
⓯ Instrument Display Settings ➔ P. 210

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



❶ Trip Meter A
❷ Range
❸ Average Fuel Economy
❹ Instant Fuel Economy
❺ Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press and hold the right selector wheel, and then select **Reset**.

▶ The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l* or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l* or l/100 km.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Except Oceanian models

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 540

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 540

Range

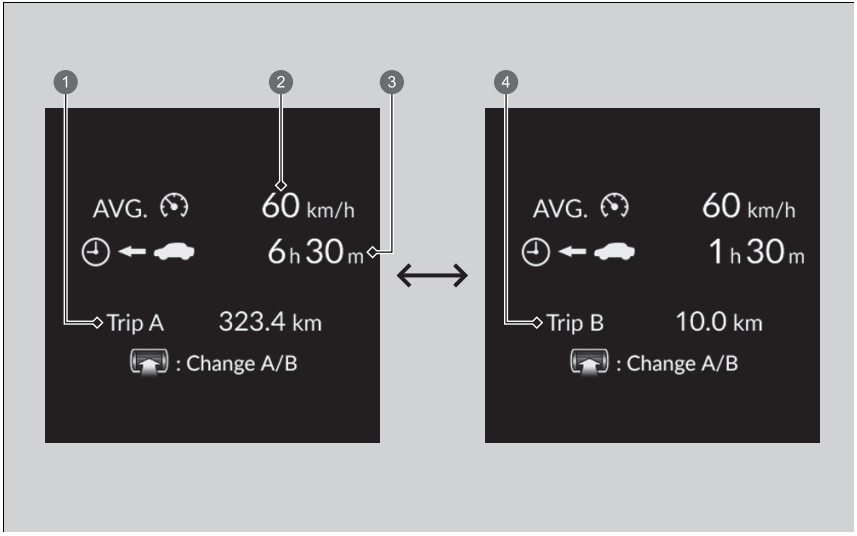
The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ to the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



❶ Trip meter A
❷ Average Speed
❸ Elapsed Time
❹ Trip meter B

■ Trip meter

Trip meter P. 197

■ Elapsed time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Customized Features P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Customized Features P. 540

■ Average speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Customized Features P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Customized Features P. 540

Continued

■ Navigation

■ Compass

Shows the compass screen.

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by Google Maps*, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto*, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➡ **Apple CarPlay** P. 433
➡ **Android Auto™*** P. 439

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➡ **Android Auto™** P. 529
➡ **Apple CarPlay** P. 525
➡ **Google built-in** P. 533

Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 540

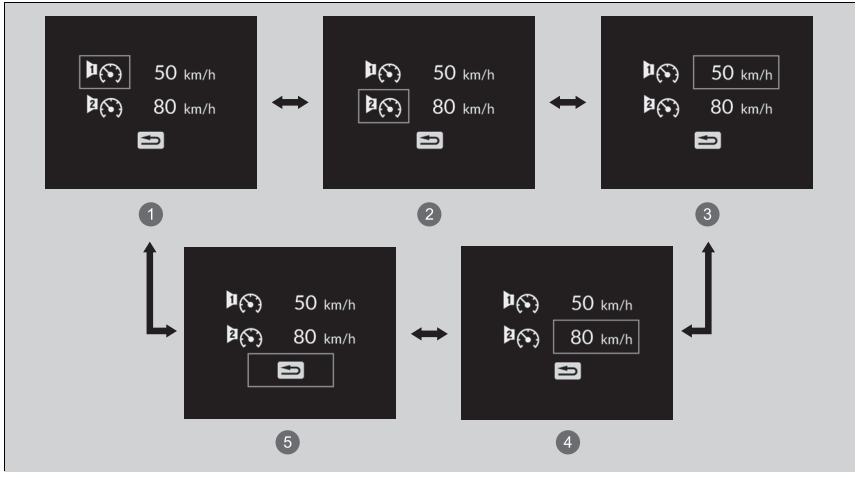
Navigation features may not be available for all apps.

* Not available on all models

Speed Alarm*

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Press the right selector wheel to display the setting screen, then roll it, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



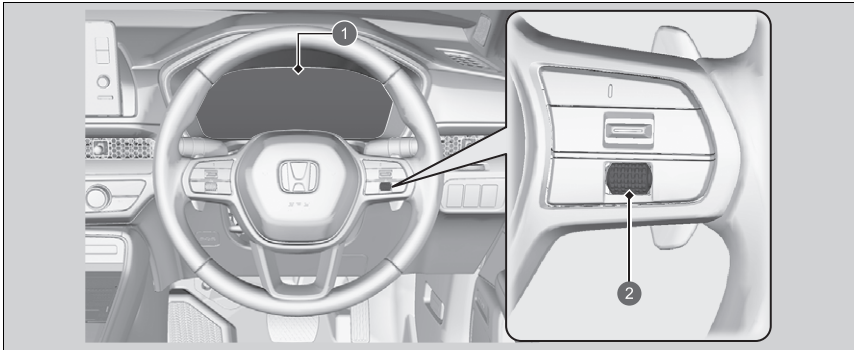
❶ Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
❷ Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
❸ Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting (50 km/h*1)
❹ Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting (80 km/h*1)
❺ Back
*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.



❶ Driver Information Interface
❷ Right Selector Wheel

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.



When you select Driver Attention Monitor on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 194

❶ Level



If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.

Continued



If one bar lights up, the **Driver attention level low. Take a rest** message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.
If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

Except Oceanian models

If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.

Oceanian models

Make sure to reset the system after you take a break.

➡ **The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:** P. 205

Driver Attention Monitor

The message does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

Except Oceanian models

The message will disappear when the right selector wheel is rolled or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.

Oceanian models

The message will disappear when the right selector wheel is rolled.

If one bar lights up, the distance at which CMBS alerts may be set to Far, and the Road Departure Mitigation system may be set to Early.

➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 677
➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 697

If the system is not reset, the Driver Attention Monitor will continue to light up only one bar.

■ **The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:**
- The engine is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:**
- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h.
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ **Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:**
- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
  ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 729
- The condition of the road is poor; e.g., the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner, such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ **Customizing**

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile and audible alert**, **Tactile alert only** or **OFF**.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➡ **Customized Features** P. 540

Oceanian models

Tactile and audible alert is selected every time you set the power mode to ON, even if you changed the Driver Attention Monitor settings the last time you drove the vehicle.

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

The bars on the driver information interface remain greyed-out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

Continued

■ AWD Torque Distribution Monitor*

The indicators on the display show the amount of torque being transferred to the right front, left front, right rear, and left rear wheels.

➡ **Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System*** P. 655

■ Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 50

■ Maintenance

Show the oil monitor system.

➡ **Oil Monitor System** P. 815

 * Not available on all models

■ Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, Low Speed Braking Control*, blind spot information system*, and parking sensor system*/ parking sensor warning*, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

Safety Support

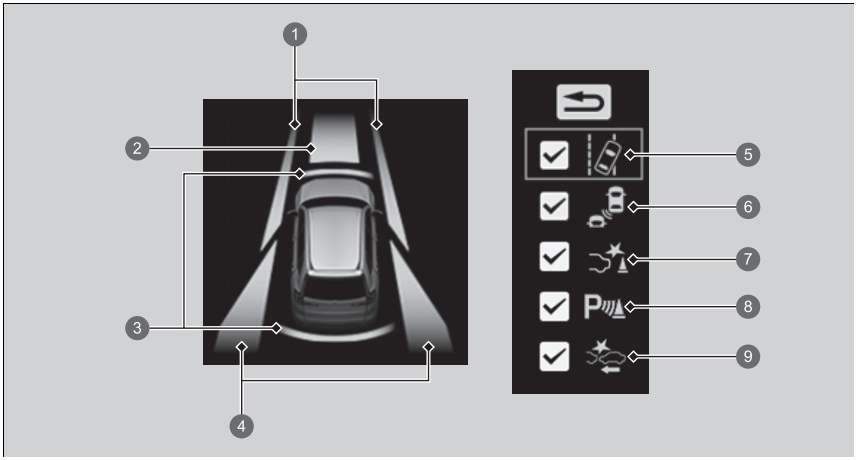
If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first press the right selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 677
- **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 697
- **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 691
- **Parking Sensor System** P. 779
- **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 665

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 156
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 159
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)** P. 154
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)** P. 154
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 155
- **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator** P. 155
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)** P. 155

* Not available on all models

Continued



1. Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
2. Area Info for CMBS
3. Area Info for Low Speed Braking Control* and Parking Sensor System*/Parking Sensor Warning*
4. Area Info for Blind Spot Information System*
5. Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
6. Blind Spot Information System Icon and Status Info*
7. Low Speed Braking Control Icon and Status Info*
8. Parking Sensor System*/Parking Sensor Warning* Icon and Status Info
9. CMBS Icon and Status Info

Safety Support

Models with Low Speed Braking Control

Even when the Low Speed Braking Control icon is green, if the **Rear sensor setting** is turned off, the brake assist will not operate when reversing.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Customized Features P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Customized Features P. 540

Models with Front Parking Sensor System

Even when the Parking Sensor System icon is green, if the **Rear Sensor Setting** is turned off, the rear parking sensor will not operate when reversing.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Customized Features P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Customized Features P. 540

 * Not available on all models

■ Brightness

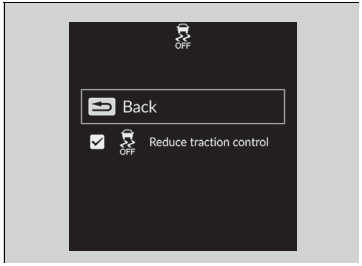
Press the right selector wheel when the **Brightness** screen is displayed.

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the right selector wheel to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Roll the right selector wheel up.
Dim: Roll the right selector wheel down.

Press the right selector wheel to exit.

■ Vehicle Stability Assist Mode

You can turn the VSA on or off.



Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Reduce traction control**, then press the right selector wheel to check or uncheck it.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System
P. 652

Brightness

The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.
- The brightness decreases when the ambient light is dark.
- The brightness increases when the ambient light is bright.

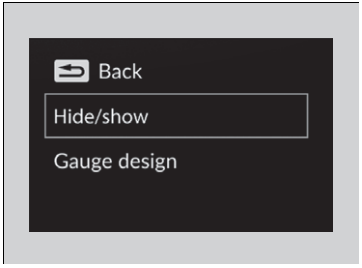
You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.

Continued

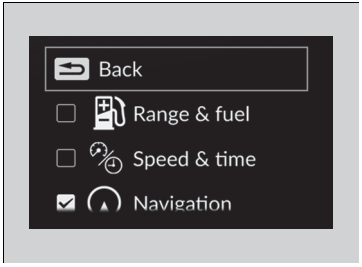
■ Instrument Display Settings

■ Arrange content on the right side area

You can choose which contents to display on the right side area.



1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Instrument display settings** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the right selector wheel.



3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll between contents, then press the right selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

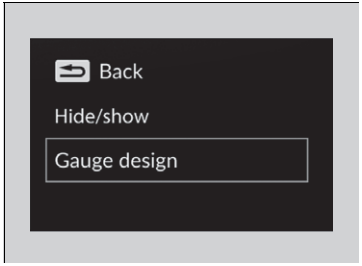
Arrange content on the right side area

Contents that are grey cannot be removed from the right side area.

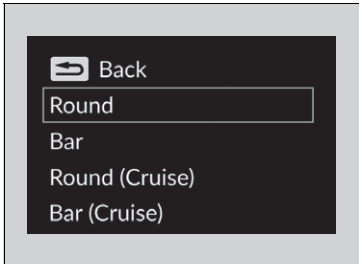
When you customize settings, shift to P.

■ Change gauge design

You can change the gauge design.



1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Instrument display settings** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Gauge design**, then press the right selector wheel.



3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the right selector wheel.

Change gauge design

When using the **Round (Cruise)** or **Bar (Cruise)** gauge design, a simplified display is used when ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation.

■ Warnings

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

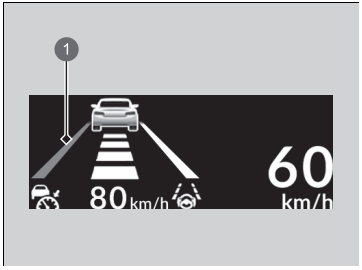
Warnings

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the right selector wheel to see other warnings.

Head-Up Display*

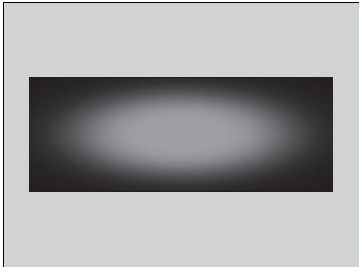
Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS; compass, or turn-by-turn directions; and the vehicle speed. You can choose which item to be displayed using the driver information interface. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

The display also shows the following messages.



1 Lane Departure Warning

- **Lane Departure Warning:** When your vehicle is too close to the traffic lane lines, the lane departure warning appears.
  - **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 697
  - **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 729



- **Head-up Warning Lights:** Flash when the message appears on the driver information interface.
  - **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 677
  - **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 707

 * Not available on all models

■ Head-Up Display Settings

Shows the display for changing the head-up display settings on the driver information interface.

Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Head-Up Display settings**, then press the left selector wheel.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 194

■ To change head-up display content

1. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **HUD content**, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select desired item, then press the left selector wheel.
   - **Speedometer**
     ➡ **Speedometer** P. 216
   - **Navigation**
     ➡ **Navigation** P. 216
   - **Driver assist**
     ➡ **Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS** P. 216
   - **OFF**

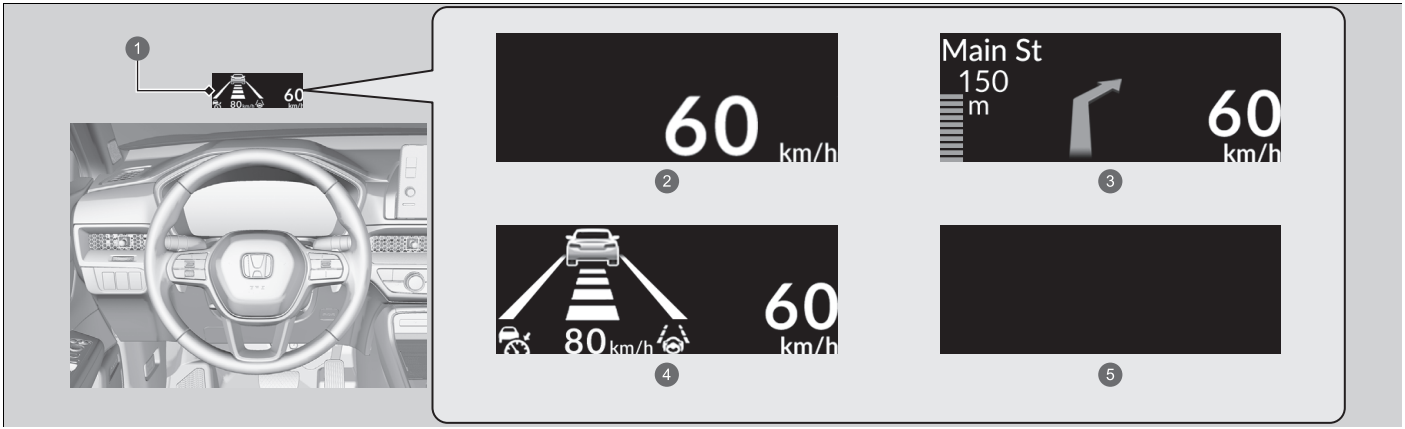
Head-Up Display Settings

HUD content
➡ **To change head-up display content** P. 213

HUD brightness
➡ **Adjusting the head-up display brightness** P. 215

HUD height
➡ **Adjusting the head-up display height** P. 215

Continued



1 Head-Up Display
2 **Speedometer**
3 **Navigation**
4 **Driver assist**
5 **OFF**

■ **Adjusting the head-up display brightness**
Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **HUD brightness**, then press the left selector wheel.

Brighten: Roll the left selector wheel up.
Dim: Roll the left selector wheel down.

Press the left selector wheel to exit.

■ **Adjusting the head-up display height**
Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **HUD height**, then press the left selector wheel.

Raise the head-up display: Roll the left selector wheel up.
Lower the head-up display: Roll the left selector wheel down.

Press the left selector wheel to exit.

Adjusting the head-up display height

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter or keyless access system, the head-up display adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

Continued

■ Speedometer

Shows your driving speed in km/h.

■ Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS.

- **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 707
- **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 729

■ Navigation

■ Compass

Shows the compass screen.

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system*, Google Maps*, Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

- **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**
- **Android Auto™*** P. 439
- **Apple CarPlay** P. 433

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

- **Android Auto™** P. 529
- **Apple CarPlay** P. 525
- **Google built-in** P. 533

Navigation

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

Customized Features P. 443

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

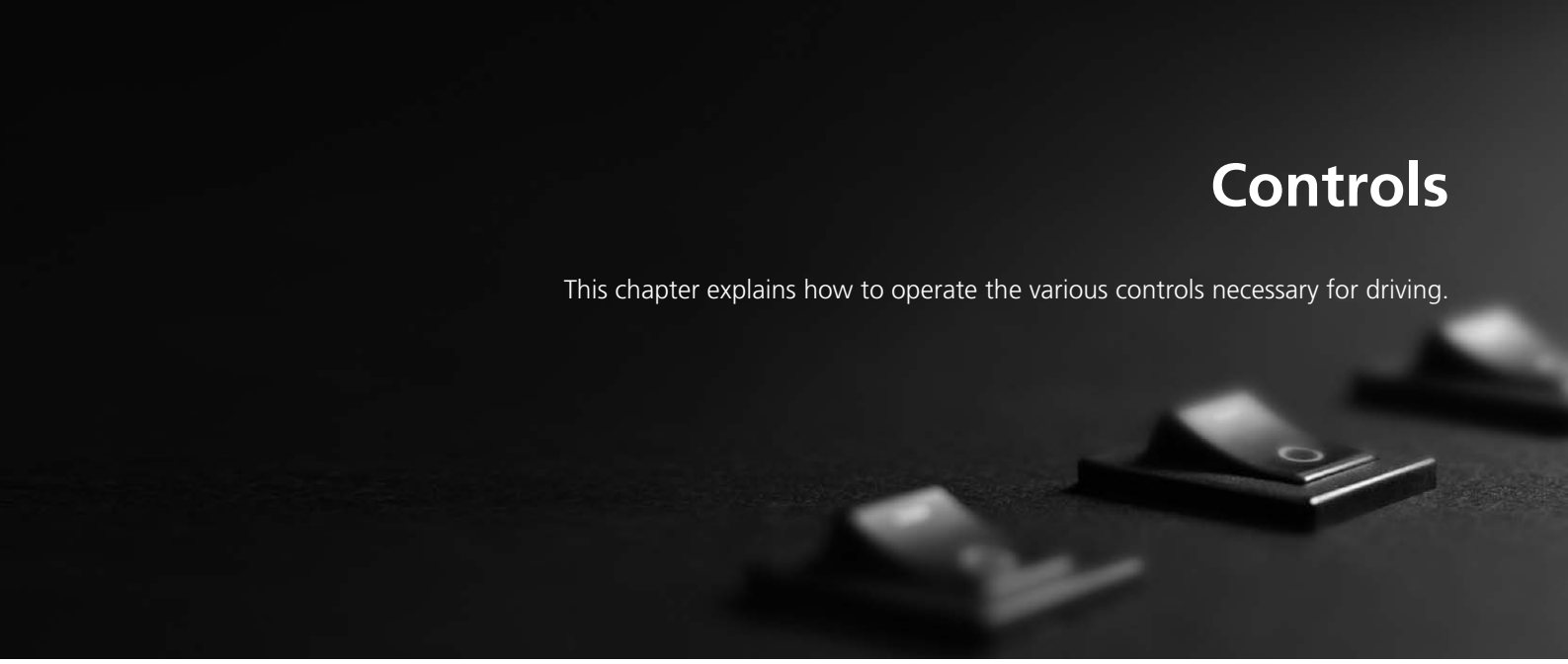
Customized Features P. 540

Navigation features may not be available for all apps.

 * Not available on all models

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



Clock 218
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key 219
Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength 222
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 223
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 232
Childproof Door Locks 234
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking* 235
Tailgate 236
Security System
Immobilizer System 247
Security System Alarm 248
Windows 249
Panoramic Roof* 253
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
ENGINE START/STOP Button 257
Turn Signals 260
Lights 261
Headlight Adjuster* 267
Auto High-Beam 269
Wipers and Washers 272
Rear Demister Button 275
Driving Position Memory System* 276
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 278
Mirrors
Interior Rearview Mirror 279
Power Door Mirrors 281
Seats 283
Interior Convenience Items 303
Climate Control System 325

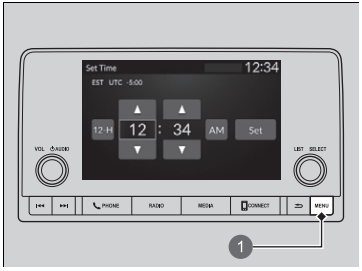
* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode in ON.

Models with colour audio system

■ Adjusting the Time



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **Clock Settings**.
3. Select **Automatic Time**, then select **OFF**.
4. Select **Set Time**.
5. Select **12H(12-H)/24H(24-H)** to change 12 or 24 hour clock.
6. Select ▲ or ▼.
7. Select **Set** to set the time.

❶ **MENU** Button

Adjusting the Clock

Models with Display Audio

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

Models without Google built-in

Clock Setup P. 402

Models with Google built-in

Clock Setup P. 499

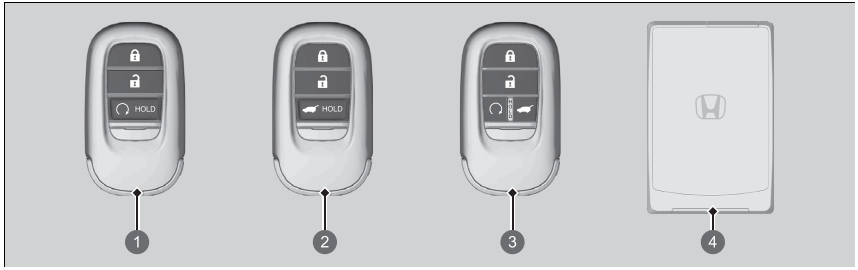
Adjusting the Time

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also select and enter with the **LIST** / **SELECT** (List / Selector) knob instead of the touch panel.

Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



❶ Keyless Remote*1
❷ Keyless Remote*2
❸ Keyless Remote*3
❹ Card Key*

Use the keys to start and stop the engine, lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door.

*1: Models with remote engine starter
*2: Models with power tailgate
*3: Models with remote engine starter and power tailgate

* Not available on all models

Continued

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 247

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust, and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

Models with remote engine starter

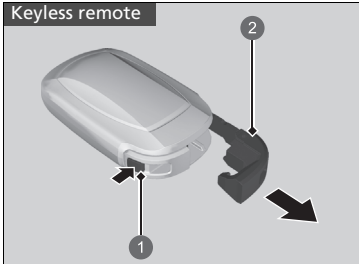
You can remotely start the engine using the remote engine start.

Remote Engine Start* P. 613

■ Built-in Key

The built-in key can be used to unlock the doors when the keyless remote or card key* battery becomes weak and the power door unlock operation is disabled.

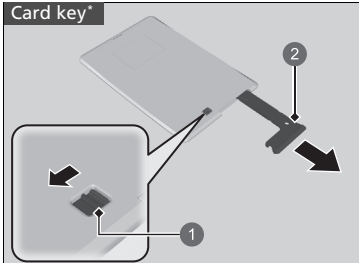
Keyless remote



To remove the built-in key, push the release button and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

1 Release Button
2 Built-in Key

Card key*

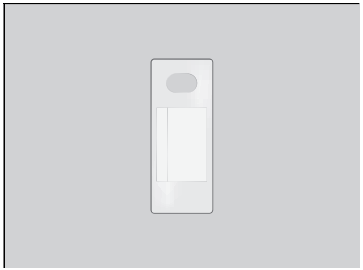


To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the card key until it clicks.

1 Release Knob
2 Built-in Key

* Not available on all models

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote or card key* to start the engine, and lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and the fuel fill door.

In the following cases, starting the engine, locking/unlocking the doors/tailgate/fuel fill door may be inhibited, or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote or card key* together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote or card key*.
- The card key* is in a cover or case that blocks radio waves.

Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote or card key* and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote or card key* battery.
Battery life is about 2*1 or 1.5*2 years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote or card key* is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

Keyless remote

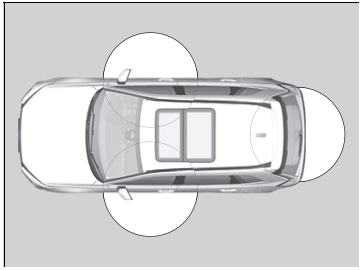
It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off.
If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

*1: Keyless remote
*2: Card key

 * Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote or card key*, you can lock/unlock the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door.
You can lock/unlock the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door within a radius of about 80 cm from the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.
No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.
Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➡ **Interior Lights** P. 303

Using the Keyless Access System

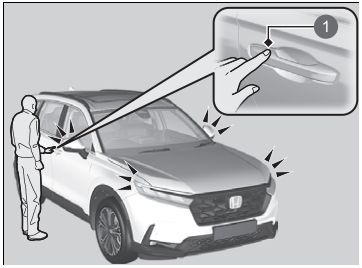
If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

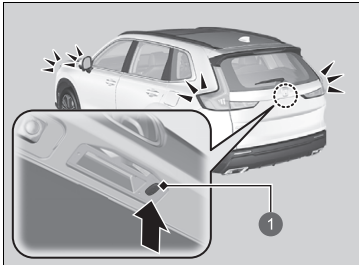
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Locking the doors and tailgate



❶ Door Lock Sensor



❶ Lock Button

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

▶ All the doors and tailgate lock and the security system sets.

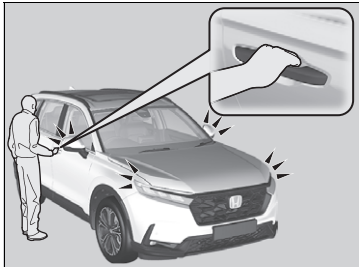
▶ Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds once.

Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the keyless remote or card key* in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote or card key*, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote or card key* is within range.
- The door may be locked or unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote or card key* is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote or card key* if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote or card key* may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass, and tailgate.

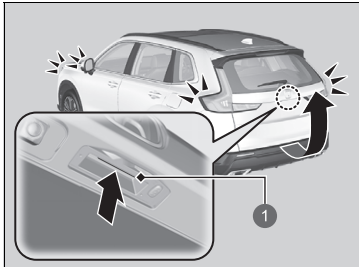
* Not available on all models

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate



Grab the front door handle:

- ▶ All doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press the outer handle:

- ▶ The tailgate and all doors unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 237

❶ Outer Handle

Using the Keyless Access System

The light flash and beep settings can be customized.

Models with colour audio system

➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 552

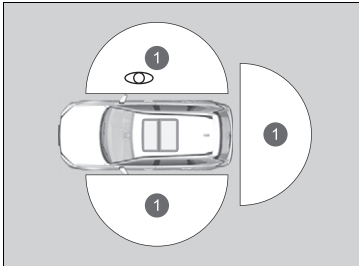
Models with power tailgate

You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

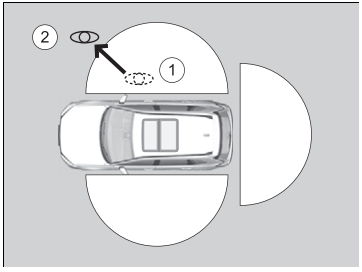
➡ **Using the Tailgate Outer Handle** P. 243

* Not available on all models

Continued



1 The activation range of the auto lock function is about 1.5 m.



■ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and tailgate closed while carrying the keyless remote or card key*, the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed, or all doors are closed and tailgate begins power close operation*, and the keyless remote or card key* is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle. Exit the vehicle while carrying keyless remote or card key* and close the door(s) and tailgate.

1. While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.
▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the keyless remote or card key* beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door will then lock.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the driver information interface or the audio/information screen.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the driver information interface or the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors and tailgate are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door or tailgate after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

 * Not available on all models

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds, and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote or card key* on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

Under the following circumstances, the auto-lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.

▶The beeper will not sound.

- The keyless remote or card key* is taken out of its operational range before all the doors and tailgate are closed.

▶The beeper will sound.

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.
- A door, tailgate, or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote or card key* is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors and tailgate.

Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

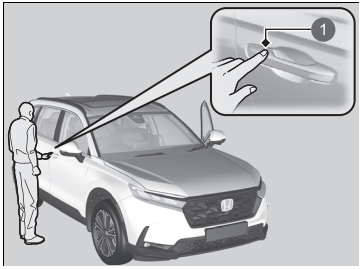
- The keyless remote or card key* is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote or card key* is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote or card key*. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

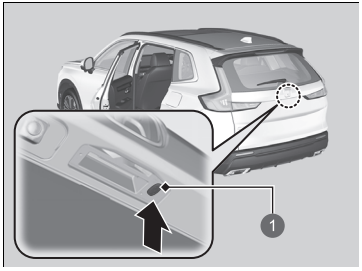
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Lock Presetting



❶ Door Lock Sensor



❶ Lock Button

The vehicle will automatically lock after you lock the doors in advance then close the doors and tailgate.
Activate lock presetting after closing the driver's door.

1. Touch the door lock sensor on the driver's door, press the lock button on the tailgate or press the lock button on the keyless remote.
▶ Alert sounds and lock presetting is activated.

2. Close all doors and the tailgate.
▶ Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds when vehicle locks.

Make sure the doors and tailgate are locked before moving away from the vehicle.

Lock Presetting

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the power tailgate* on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury. Make sure all hands and fingers, especially children's, are clear of the power tailgate*.

Lock presetting will be reset if a door or the tailgate is opened before the vehicle has locked completely.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

You can turn this function on and off.

Models with colour audio system

➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

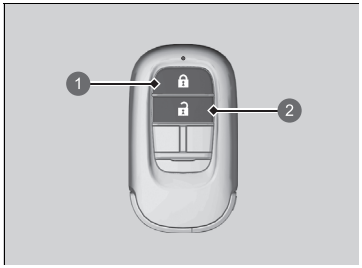
➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 552

 * Not available on all models

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



❶ Lock Button
❷ Unlock Button

■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ Some exterior lights flash, the beeper sounds, and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and all the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

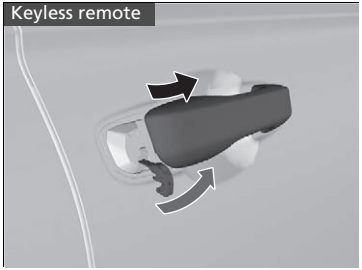
➡ **Replacing the Remote Battery** P. 859

Continued

■ Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

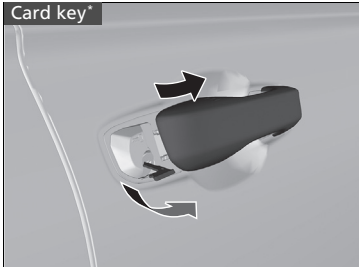
If the unlock function of the keyless remote or card key* does not work, use the built-in key instead. The keyhole is behind the door handle.

Keyless remote



Pull and hold the outer handle.
Insert the built-in key into the key cylinder from below the handle and then turn it.

Card key*



Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors unlock at the same time.

Except Latin American with AWD for five-seater models
Except African models and Middle Eastern models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

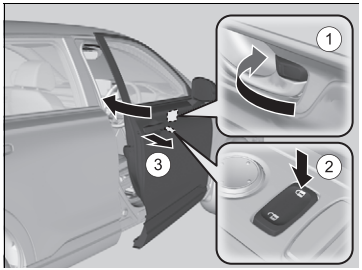
If the lock function of the keyless remote or card key* does not work, refer to the following.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key P. 231

* Not available on all models

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

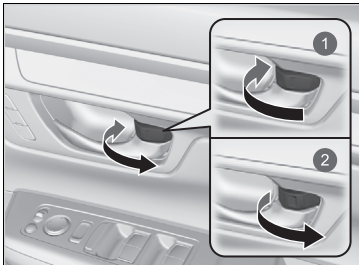
When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

* Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



❶ To Lock
❷ To Unlock

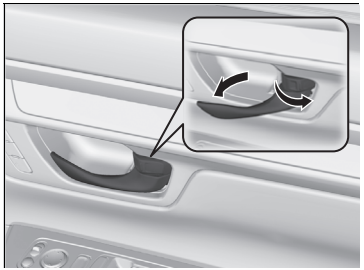
■ Locking a door
Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door
Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door lock/unlock at the same time.

■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

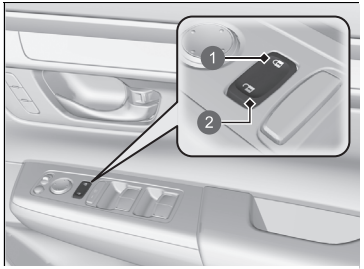


Pull the driver's door or passenger's door* inner handle.

▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

❶ To Lock
❷ To Unlock

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The driver's door or passenger's door* inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a driver's door or passenger's door* inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a second row or third row* seat where childproof door locks are provided.

➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 234

Using the Master Door Lock Switch

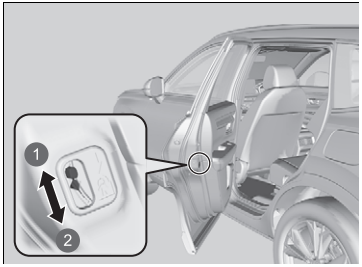
When you lock/unlock either of the front doors using the master door lock switch, all the other doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door lock/unlock at the same time.

* Not available on all models

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

1 Unlock
2 Lock

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Park unlock mode

All doors unlock when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface or audio/information screen.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

* Not available on all models

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Models without power tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

All models

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

▶ Avoid possible damage.

▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 133

⚠WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

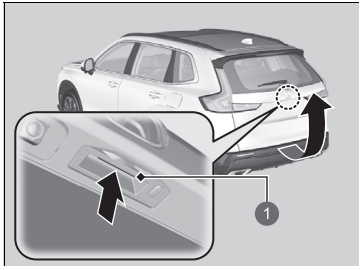
Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area or by using a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

* Not available on all models

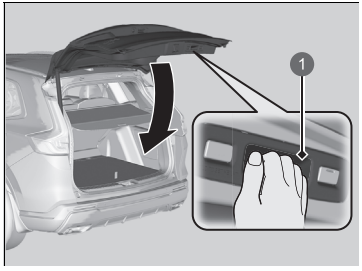
Opening/Closing the Tailgate



1 Outer Handle

When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked.
Press the outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

If you are carrying the keyless remote or card key*, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

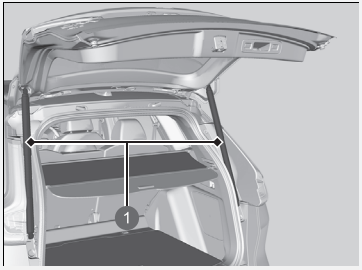


1 Inner Handle

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Make sure luggage or other items do not touch the tailgate support struts.



1 Tailgate Support Struts

Opening/Closing the Tailgate

- Do not leave the keyless remote or card key* in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote or card key*, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote or card key* is within range.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button on the driver side control panel, pressing the outer handle or inner button on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access*.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in P.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing a power tailgate while any part of a passenger is in the tailgate's operating path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers or objects are clear of the tailgate operating range before opening or closing the tailgate.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

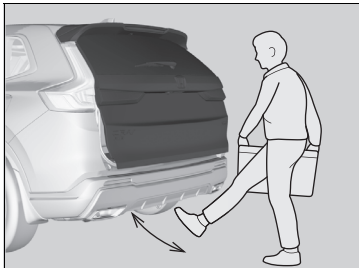
NOTICE

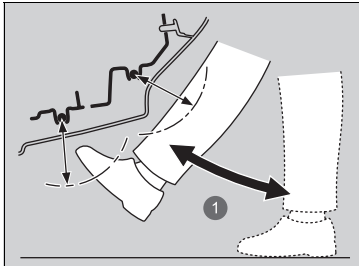
Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed.
Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

 * Not available on all models

■ Using the Hands Free Access*





❶ About 1 second

Use a forward and back kicking motion for about 1 second under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote or card key*.

▶ Some exterior lights will flash and a beeper will sound, then the tailgate begins to move.

Using the Hands Free Access*

During rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.
To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the audio/information screen and then select OFF for the feature.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 552

If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long or sweep your foot from side to side, the power tailgate does not open or close.

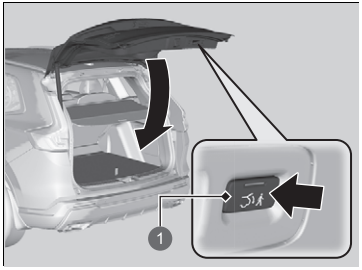
This function will not operate if you don't have the keyless remote or card key* on you. Please make sure you have the keyless remote or card key* on you.

* Not available on all models

Continued

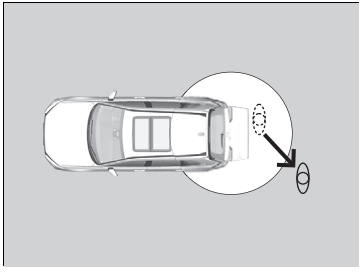
■ Power Tailgate Walk Away Close

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote or card key*, the power tailgate will automatically close.



1. Walk Away Close Button

1. Carry the keyless remote or card key*, and press the walk away close button.
▶ The indicator on the walk away close button will turn green when the walk away close is activated.



Walk at least 1.0 m away

2. Walk at least 1.0 m away from the vehicle within 30 seconds of pressing the walk away close button.
▶ Some exterior lights will flash and a beeper will sound, then the power tailgate begins to close.

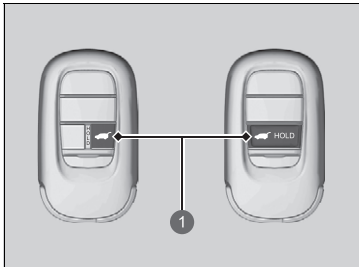
Power Tailgate Walk Away Close

When auto lock function is set to ON, the vehicle will automatically lock when all doors and the tailgate have closed.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock) P. 226

* Not available on all models

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



1 Power Tailgate Button

Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

Anytime: The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.
When Unlocked/When unlocked: The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:
- You start the engine while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

If you replace the battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

Installing aftermarket components other than Honda Genuine Accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

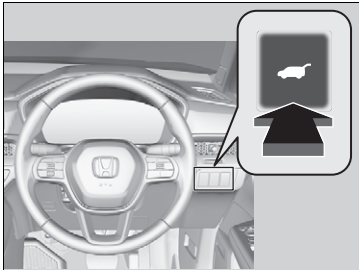
Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second.

▶ Some exterior lights will flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

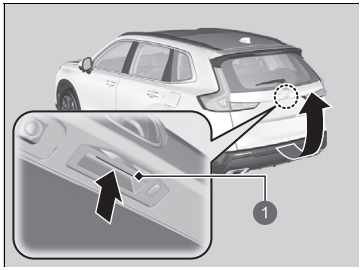
Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

 * Not available on all models

■ Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



❶ Outer Handle

If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

▶ The beeper sounds.

▶ If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the outer handle for more than one second.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 237

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle

- Do not leave the keyless remote or card key* in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote or card key*, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote or card key* is within range.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 452

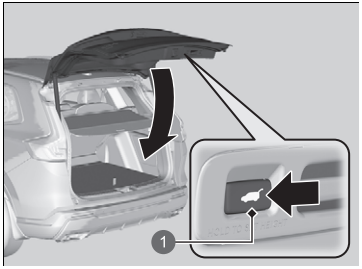
Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 552

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Tailgate Inner Button



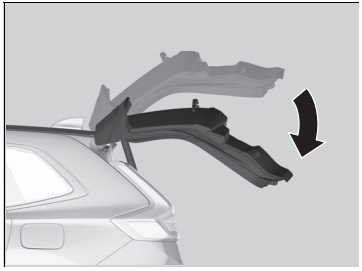
Press the tailgate inner button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

▶ The beeper sounds.

If you press the tailgate inner button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press and release the tailgate inner button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

1 Tailgate Inner Button

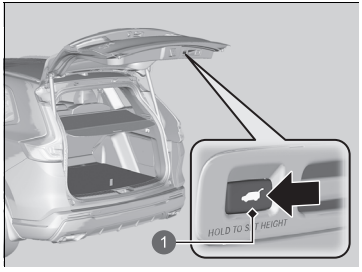
Programming Tailgate Position



The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programmed.

To program:

1. Open the tailgate to the desired position.



2. Press and hold the tailgate inner button. You will hear one long beep, followed by two short beeps.

❶ Tailgate Inner Button

Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the tailgate inner button.

If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow directions for step 2.

Continued

■ Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

Auto-Closer

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you press the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

NOTICE

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

■ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, with snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

Power Tailgate Fall Detection

If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems, emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the key*, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key*, remote transmitter, or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key*, remote transmitter, or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.
The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.
Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may sound once the battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key*, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

Except Latin American with AWD for five-seater models
Except African models and Middle Eastern models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Except Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Models with auto-open/close function on all windows

Closing driver's door cancels this function.

Models with auto-open/close function on driver's window

Opening either front door cancels this function.

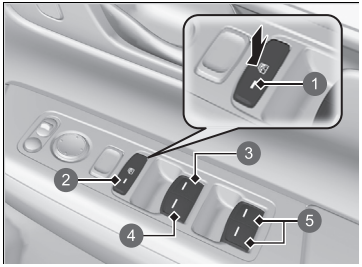
Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

Continued

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



1. Indicator
2. Power Window Lock Button
3. Driver's Window Switch
4. Front Passenger's Window Switch*
5. Rear Passenger's Window Switch*

■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse

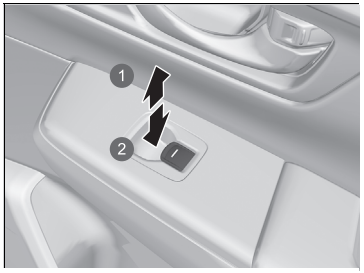
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function*

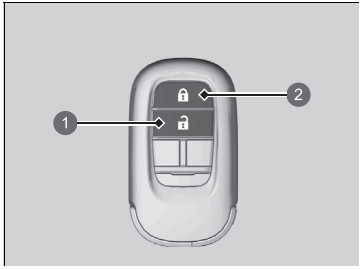


To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

1 Close
2 Open

Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To close*: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

1 Unlock Button
2 Lock Button

Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*

Models with panoramic roof

If you open/close* the windows with the remote, the panoramic roof will open/close* automatically along with them.

You can change the keyless remote's window opening setting.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

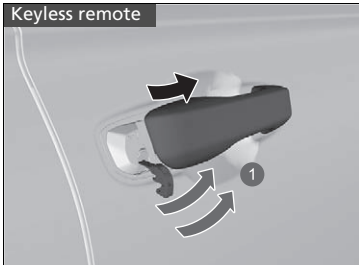
How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Opening the Windows with the Key*

Keyless remote



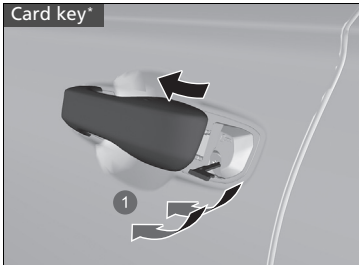
❶ Open

Pull and hold the outer handle. Insert the key into the key cylinder completely from below the handle.

Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

Card key*



❶ Open

Opening the Windows with the Key*

Models with panoramic roof

If you open the windows with the key, the panoramic roof will open automatically along with them.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can operate the panoramic roof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the panoramic roof.

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the panoramic roof or sunshade on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the panoramic roof and sunshade before opening or closing it.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

NOTICE

Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

Except Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

The panoramic roof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Models with auto-open/close function on all windows

Closing driver's door cancels this function.

Models with auto-open/close function on driver's window

Opening either front door cancels this function.

Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

The panoramic roof can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the panoramic roof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the panoramic roof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

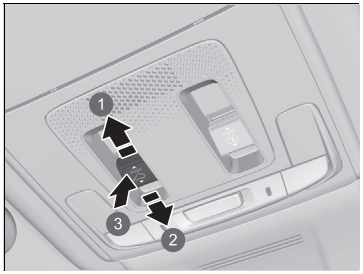
You can use the remote transmitter or the key* to operate the panoramic roof.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*** P. 251

➡ **Opening the Windows with the Key*** P. 252

 * Not available on all models

■ Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



❶ Open
❷ Close
❸ Tilt

■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The panoramic roof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the panoramic roof midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

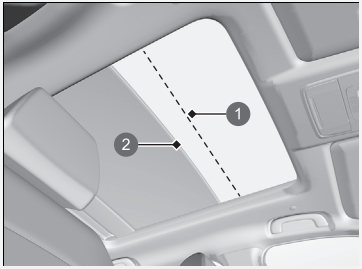
■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the panoramic roof up

To tilt: Push on the centre of the panoramic roof switch.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



❶ Comfort Position
❷ Full Open Position

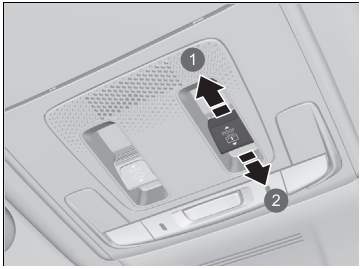
The panoramic roof cannot be fully opened in a single operation. The panoramic roof has a "comfort" position or wind noise reduction position at which the roof first stops.
To open fully, pull the switch back again after the roof has stopped at this position.

Whenever the panoramic roof is opening, the sunshade moves along with it. However, when the panoramic roof is closing, the sunshade does not move.

When you tilt open the panoramic roof, the sunshade opens slightly to let in fresh air. When you close the panoramic roof from this position, the sunshade returns to its closed position.

Continued

■ Using the Sunshade Switch



1 Open
2 Close

■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunshade automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunshade midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Using the Sunshade Switch

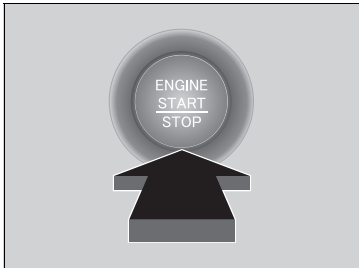
The sunshade can be opened or closed to adjust the amount of light that enters the cabin.

When you use the sunshade switch to open the sunshade, the panoramic roof does not move.

The sunshade cannot be fully closed if the panoramic roof is open. When you close the sunshade with the panoramic roof open, the sunshade stops slightly ahead of the panoramic roof glass. When you push the switch forward again, the sunshade and the panoramic roof close together.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote or card key* and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→ VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:
Vehicle power is turned OFF.
ACCESSORY:
The audio system and some accessories can be used.
ON:
All accessories can be used.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

If the keyless remote or card key* is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

When the power mode is set to ON, the power mode will change to ACCESSORY if the **ENGINE START/ STOP** button is pressed while the transmission is in a position other than P.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic Power Off

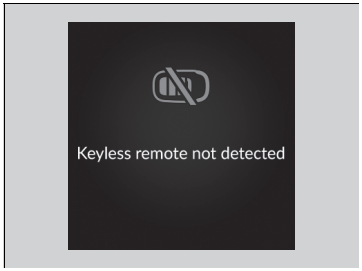
If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode: The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is in ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

■ Keyless Remote/Card Key* Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote or card key* from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote or card key* in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

Keyless Remote/Card Key* Reminder

When the keyless remote or card key* is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

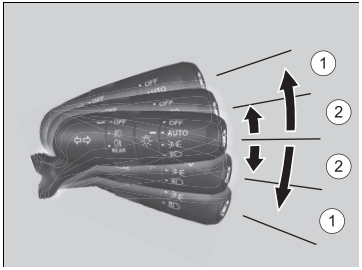
If the keyless remote or card key* is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure that the keyless remote or card key* is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote or card key* from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote or card key* on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to sound. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the keyless remote or card key*, the warning buzzer may also sound even if the keyless remote or card key* is within the system's operational range.

* Not available on all models

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ ①: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ ②: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

Turn Signals

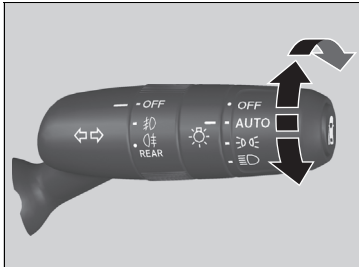
The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
P. 147

Lights

■ Headlights/Position Lights

The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.



The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

■ Manual operation

Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Headlight/position lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the shift lever is in P or the parking brake is applied.

▶ The lights will come back on automatically when:

- The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- The transmission is taken out of P and the parking brake is released.

Lights

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➡ **Lights On Indicator** P. 147

The headlights are suitable for only left-hand or only right-hand drive. When driving on roads with different traffic rules, the headlight beam must be adjusted.

➡ **Adjusting Headlight Distribution*** P. 673

Headlights/Position Lights

When the position lights are on, the tail, rear side marker, and rear licence plate lights will also switch on.

When the light switch is turned to or and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

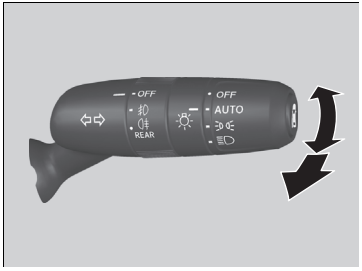
When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams.



■ Flashing the high beams

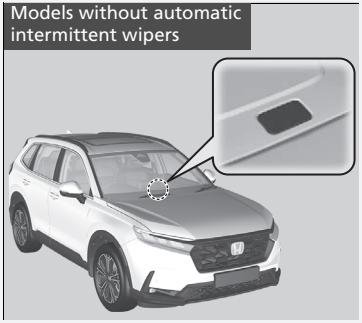
Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

▶ Release the lever to return to low beams.

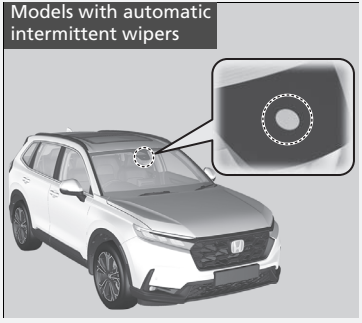
Headlights/Position Lights

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

Models without automatic intermittent wipers



Models with automatic intermittent wipers



Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the keyless remote or card key* with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Fog Lights*

The fog lights can be used when the power mode is in ON.

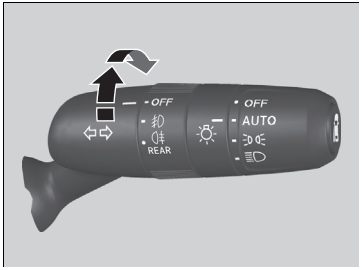
■ Front fog lights*

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

■ Rear fog light*

Can be used when the position lights*, headlights, or the front fog lights* are on.

■ Front and rear fog light switch*



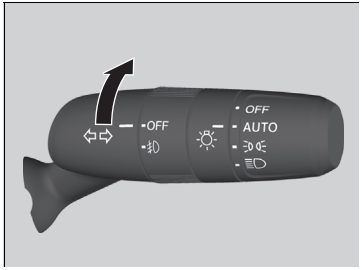
To turn the front fog lights on:
Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the position. The indicator comes on.

To turn the front and rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch one position up from the position. The and indicators come on.

To turn the rear fog light on:
Rotate the switch one position up from the position and then rotate the switch one position down from the position. The indicator stays on.
To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

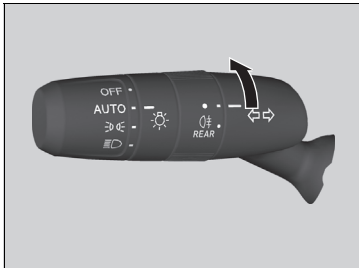
 * Not available on all models

■ Front fog light switch*



To turn the front fog lights on:
Rotate the switch to ⥣. The ⥣ indicator comes on.

■ Rear fog light switch*



To turn the rear fog light on:
Rotate the switch to ⥣. The ⥣ indicator comes on.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO** or  .
- The ambient light is bright.

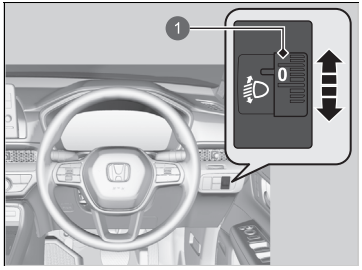
While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the transmission is taken out of P and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights and the position lights share the same light source.

Daytime running lights are brighter than the position lights.

Headlight Adjuster*



❶ Adjustment Dial

You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the position lights or headlights are on.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

Headlight Adjuster*

Models without adjustment dial

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ To select the adjustment dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	
Five persons in the front and second row seats*1	1
Four persons in the front and third row seats*2	
Seven persons in the front, second row, and third row seats*2	
Five persons in the front and second row seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight*1	2
Seven persons in the front, second row, and third row seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight*2	
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

*1: Five-seater models
*2: Seven-seater models

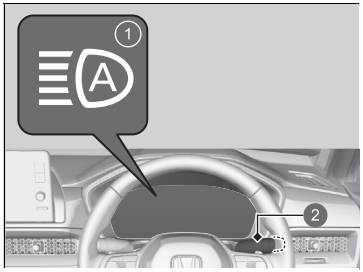
Auto High-Beam

The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

■ Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

❶ Auto High-Beam Indicator
❷ Light Switch

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to [≡D] then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

Front Sensor Camera P. 763

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

Continued

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto high-beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam	Low beam
All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more. • There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are few street lights on the road ahead.	One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less. • There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are many street lights on the road ahead.

Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from a preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards, and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams and then release it.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to AUTO and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to AUTO.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Auto High-Beam

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

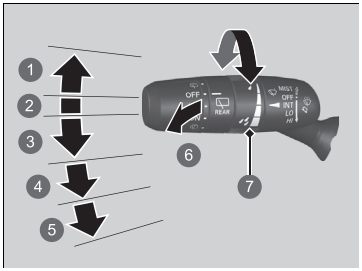
Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

* Not available on all models

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



1. **MIST**
2. **OFF**
3. **INT**[*1]**/AUTO**[*2]
4. **LO**: Low speed wipe
5. **HI**: High speed wipe
6. **Washer**
7. Intermittent Time Adjustment Ring[*]
   :Lower speed, fewer sweeps
   :Higher speed, more sweeps

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT[*1]/AUTO[*2], LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Adjusting wiper operation[*]

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, and then stop.

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

When lifting the front wiper arms, move them into the maintenance position before lifting them.

➢ **Lifting the Front Wiper Arms** P. 845

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.
When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting ( ) and the **LO** setting become the same.

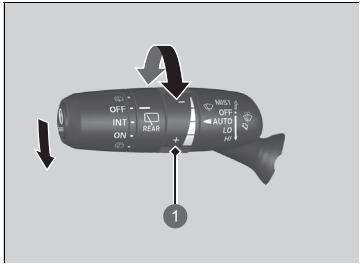
NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



❶ Adjustment Ring
−: Low Sensitivity
+: High Sensitivity

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

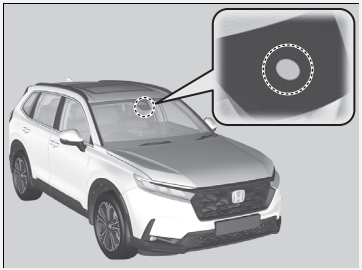
When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



NOTICE

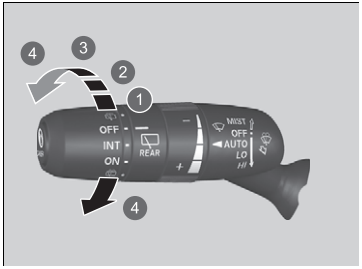
AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



❶ **OFF**
❷ **INT**: Intermittent
❸ **ON**: Continuous wipe
❹ Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

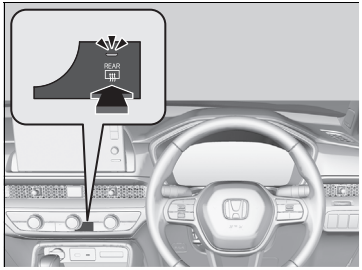
■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)
Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer ( )
Sprays on the rear window while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse
When you shift the transmission to R with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Operation	Rear Wiper Operation
Intermittent	Intermittent
Low speed wipe High speed wipe	Continuous

Rear Demister Button



Press the rear demister button to demist the rear window when the power mode is in ON.

The rear demister automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

Rear Demister Button

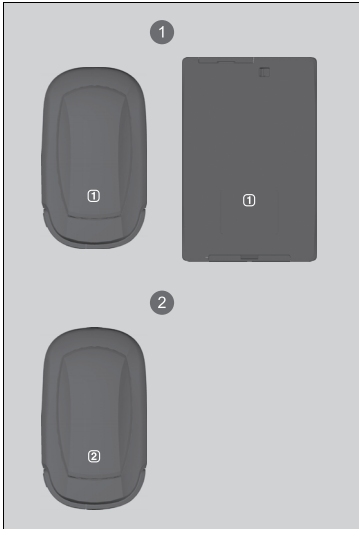
This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver's seat positions (except for power lumbar) with the driving position memory system.

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a keyless remote or keyless access system, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



1 DRIVER 1
2 DRIVER 2

The driver's seat moves rearward depending on the set seating position once you

- Stop the vehicle.
- Put the transmission in P.
- Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- Open the driver's door.

Once the power mode is in the ACCESSORY position, the driver's seat moves forward to the **DRIVER 1** or **2** preset position.

Driving Position Memory System*

Using the audio/information screen, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

The driver's seat easy exit feature can be turned ON/OFF.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

System Operation

The system will not operate if:

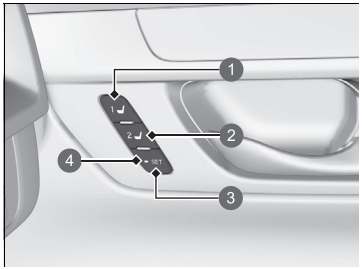
- The transmission is out of the P position.
- Either memory button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- The seat position is adjusted while in operation.
- Either of the memorized positions is set fully to the rear.

The system may not recognise a key if:

- The key is in close proximity to a mobile phone or other wireless device.
- Both keys are in the vehicle at the same time.
- The Driving Position Memory System is disabled in customized features.
- Opening driver's door without fully grabbing the door handle.

* Not available on all models

■ Storing a Position in Memory



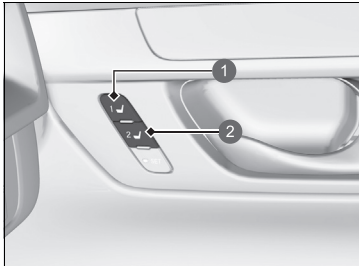
❶ Memory Button 1
❷ Memory Button 2
❸ **SET** Button
❹ Indicator Light

1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
▶ The **SET** button indicator light will come on.
3. Press memory button [1] or [2] within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
▶ You will hear the beeper, and the **SET** button indicator light goes off.

Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be cancelled when:
- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

■ Recalling the Stored Position



❶ Memory Button 1
❷ Memory Button 2

1. Put the transmission into [P].
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button ([1] or [2]).

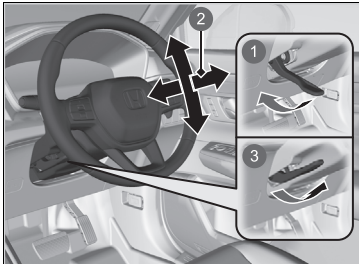
The seat will automatically move to the memorized position.

Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if you:
- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button ([1] or [2]).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Put the transmission to a position other than [P].

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



❶ Release
❷ Adjust
❸ Lock

1. While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

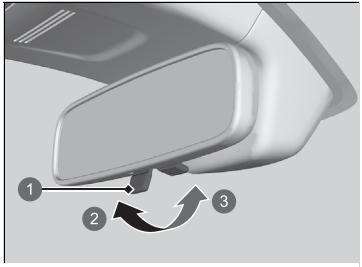
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

❶ Tab
❷ Night Position
❸ Daytime Position

Mirrors

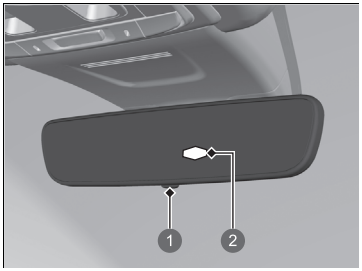
Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
➡ **Front Seats** P. 283

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the AUTO button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the AUTO indicator comes on.

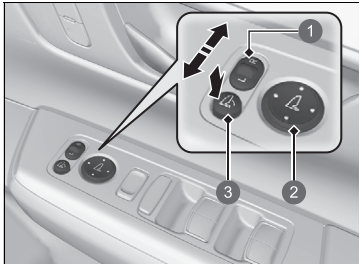
❶ Auto Button
❷ Sensor

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in R.

 * Not available on all models

Power Door Mirrors



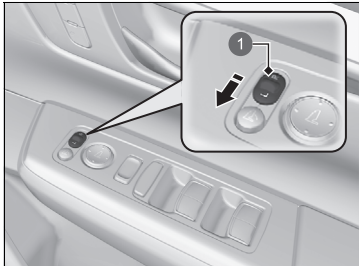
❶ Selector Switch
❷ Adjustment Switch
❸ Folding Button

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ **Mirror position adjustment**
L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.
Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ **Folding door mirrors**
Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

■ Reverse Tilt Door Mirror*



❶ Selector Switch

If activated, the passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into [R]: this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of [R].

To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON and slide the selector switch to the passenger's side.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the keyless remote or the tailgate, or touch the door lock sensor on the either front door.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Press the unlock button on the keyless remote, or grab the door handle on the either front door.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

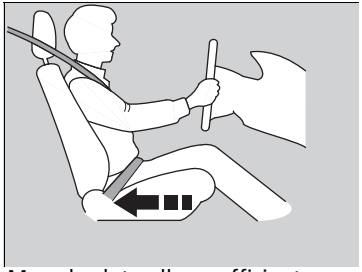
Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

* Not available on all models

Front Seats



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Front Seats

⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

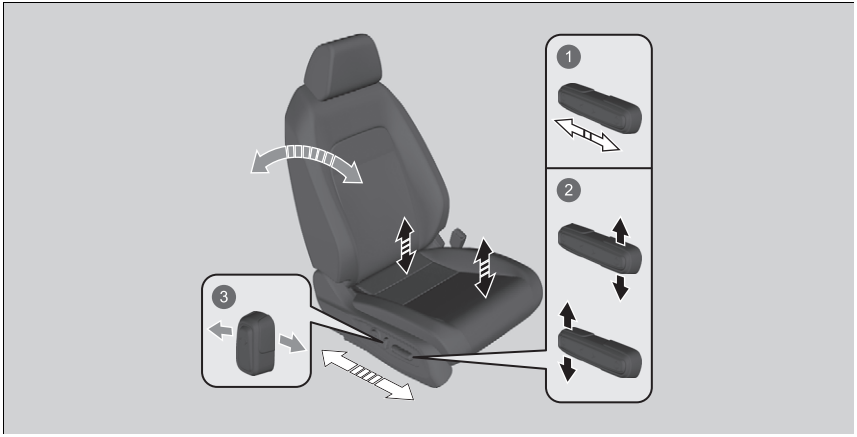
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Continued

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the front power seat(s)*

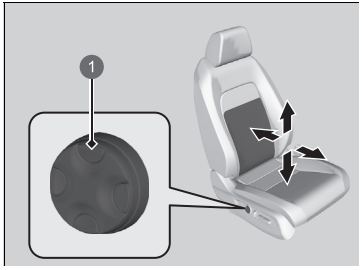


❶ **Horizontal Position Adjustment**
Slide the lever to move the seat.

❷ **Height Adjustment (Driver side only)**
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

❸ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Push forward or pull backward the lever to change the angle.

 * Not available on all models



❶ Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch

■ **Lumbar support adjustment switch*** **(Driver's seat only)**

Press the top: To move the lumbar support up.

Press the bottom: To move the lumbar support down.

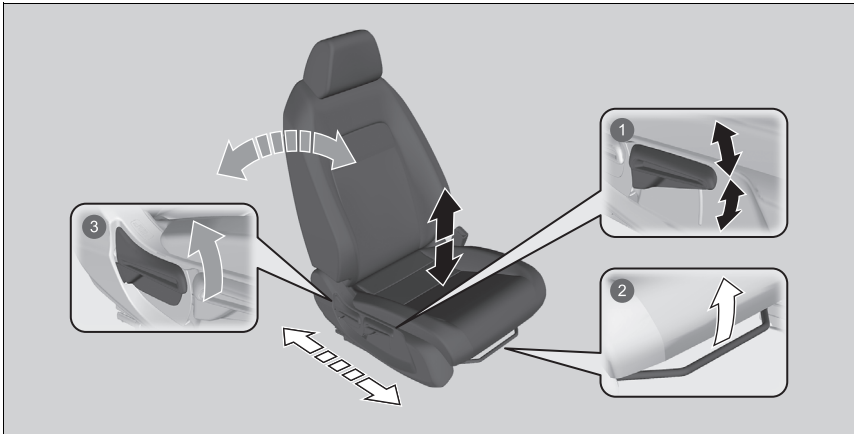
Press the front: To increase the entire lumbar support.

Press the rear: To decrease the entire lumbar support.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*



❶ Height Adjustment (Driver side only)
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

❷ Horizontal Position Adjustment
Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

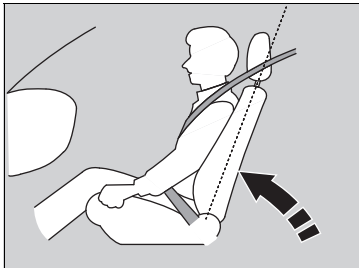
❸ Seat-back Angle Adjustment
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

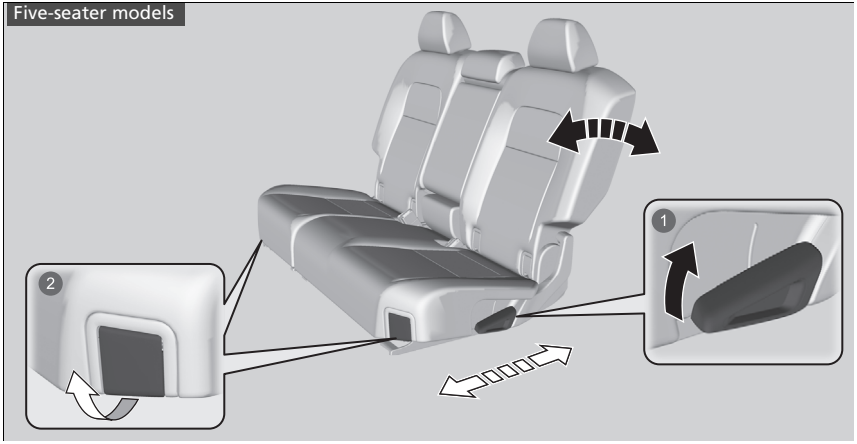
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Second Row Seats

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions



❶ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

❷ **Horizontal Position Adjustment**
Pull up on the lever to move the seat, then release the lever.

Second Row Seats

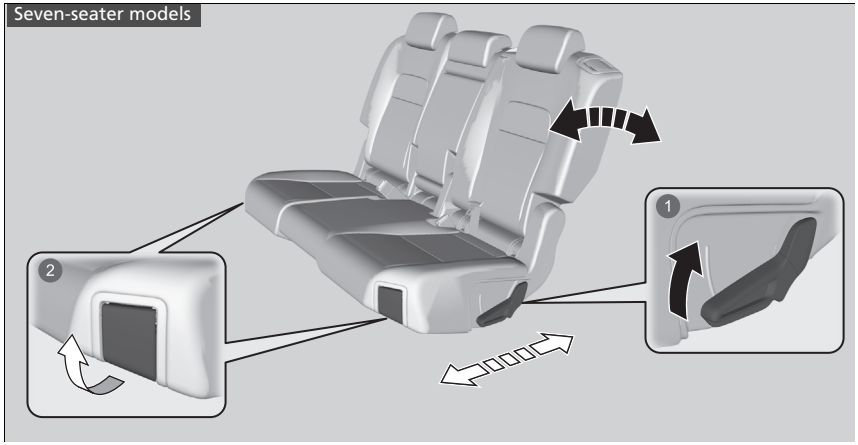
⚠WARNING

An unsecured seat or seat-back can move out of position or collapse without warning if there is sudden acceleration or stop or in a crash.

A seat or seat-back that suddenly moves or collapses can result in severe injury or death.

Always make sure all seats and seat-backs are securely locked into position before driving.

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.



❶ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

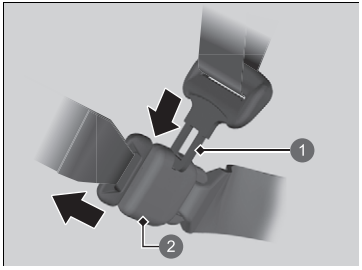
❷ **Horizontal Position Adjustment**
Pull up on the lever to move the seat, then release the lever.

Continued

Five-seater models

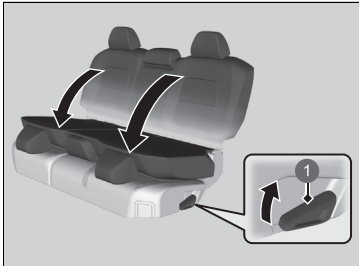
■ Folding Down the Second Row Seats

The second row seats can be folded down separately to allow for additional storage space.



❶ Latch Plate
❷ Anchorage Buckle

1. Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
   ➡ **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*** P. 56
3. Lower the second row seat head restraint to its lowest position. Put the armrest back into the seat-back.



❶ Release Lever

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.
Make sure the seat-back, head restraints, and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving.

Folding Down the Second Row Seats

⚠WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

The seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

Remove any items from the second row seat cushion and floor before you fold down the second row seat.

The front seats must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the second row seats as they fold down.

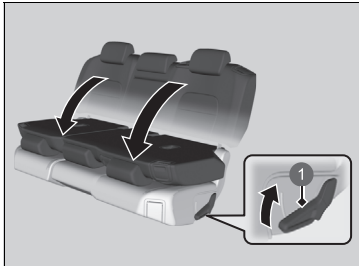
Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the second row seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

 * Not available on all models

Seven-seater models

■ Folding Down the Second Row Seat

The second row seats can be folded down separately to allow for additional storage space.



❶ Release Lever

1. Lower the second row seat head restraint to its lowest position. Put the armrest back into the seat-back.
2. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.
Make sure the seat-back, head restraints, and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving.

Folding Down the Second Row Seat

⚠WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

Remove any items from the second row seat cushion and floor before you fold down the second row seat.

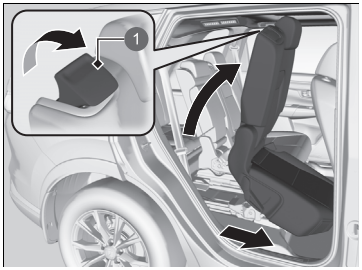
The front seats must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the second row seats as they fold down.

To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

Continued

Seven-seater models

■ Third Row Seat Access



❶ Lever

1. Lower the second row seat head restraint to its lowest position.
2. Pulling forward on the walk-in lever slides the second row seat forward.
▶ The whole seat tilts forward.

Make sure the second row seats are securely latched back into place before driving. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre seat belt is repositioned on the seat.

Third Row Seat Access

When you enter the third row seat, be careful not to trip over the second row seat or seat belt.

Do not leave the second row seat tilted up.

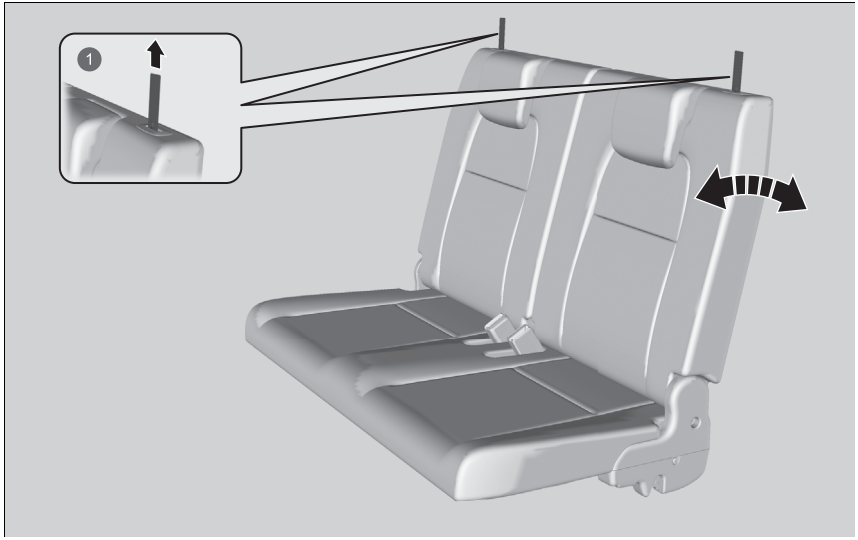
The front seats must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the second row seats as they tilt up.

Remove any items from the second row seat cushion and floor before you tilt the second row seat.

Please be careful the second row seat may have fallen onto your feet.

Third Row Seats*

Adjusting the Seat-back Positions



1 Seat-back Angle Adjustment
Pull the strap to change the angle.

Third Row Seats*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

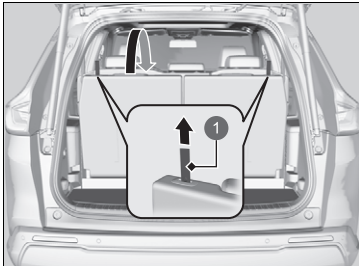
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Folding Down the Third Row Seat

The third row seats can be folded down separately to allow for additional storage space.

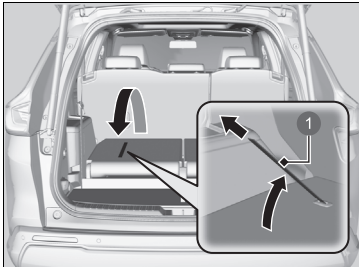
■ To fold down the seat



❶ Strap

1. Lower the third row seat head restraint to its lowest position.
2. Pull the strap on the seat-back fully.
3. Push the seat-back forward while pulling the strap.
   ▶ If you want to use the luggage area flatly, put the floor lid in the raise position.
   ➡ **Luggage Storage Area*** P. 313

■ To return the seat to the original position



❶ Strap

1. Pull the seat-back up with the strap pulled.
2. Pull the head restraint up to its original position.

Folding Down the Third Row Seat

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the third row seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Remove any items from the third row seat cushion and floor before you fold down the third row seat.

The second row seats must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the third row seats as they fold down.

To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

Make sure the seat-backs are securely latched back into place before driving. Also, make sure both rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seatback.

* Not available on all models

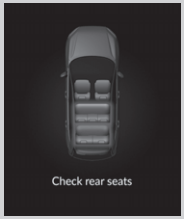
Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you of the possible presence of passengers or items in the second row or third row* seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the power mode was set to ON.

Five-seater models



Seven-seater models



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the second row or third row* seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the second row or third row* seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

* Not available on all models

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

⚠WARNING

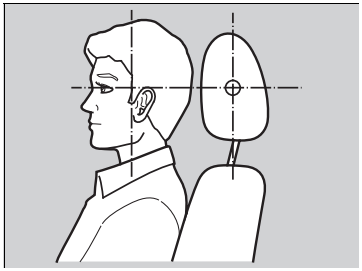
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

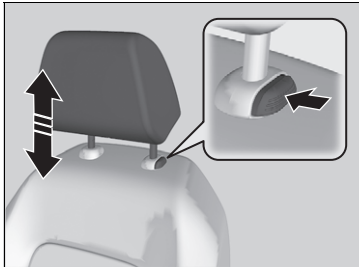
Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.



To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

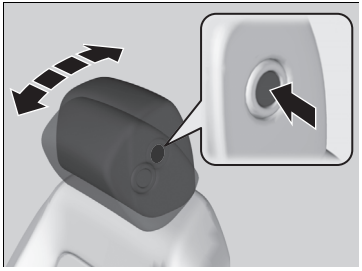
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:
- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

The front seat head restraints cannot be removed.

Continued



Australian, Fijian, New Zealand, and Taiwanese models

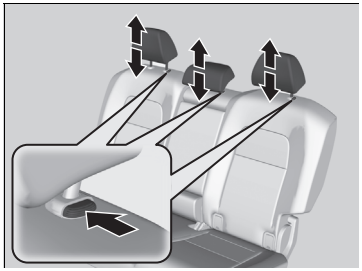
The front head restraint tilt can be adjusted according to you and a front passenger's head positions.

To tilt forward: Push the head restraint forward.

To return to the original position: Press the release button.

Five-seater models

Changing the Second Row Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the rear seat should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

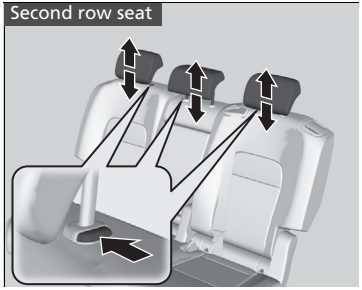
To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Seven-seater models

Changing the Second Row and Third Row Seat Head Restraint Positions

Second row seat



A passenger sitting in the second row and third row seat should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Changing the Second Row Seat Head Restraint Positions

When you use the head restraint in the rear centre seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.

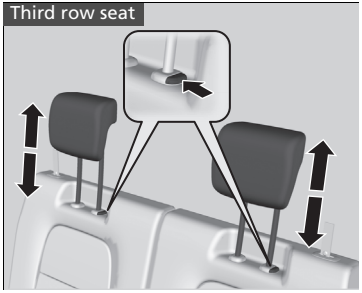


Changing the Second Row and Third Row Seat Head Restraint Positions

When you use the head restraint in the second row and third row seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.



Continued



■ Removing and Reinstalling the Second Row and Third Row* Seat Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Second Row and Third Row* Seat Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

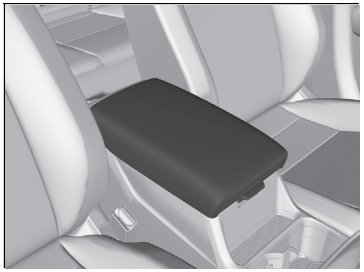
Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

* Not available on all models

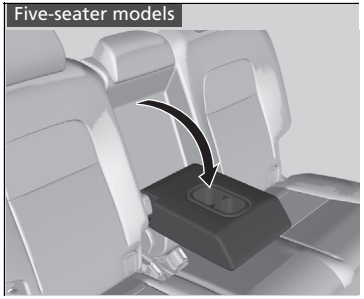
Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console compartment can be used as an armrest.

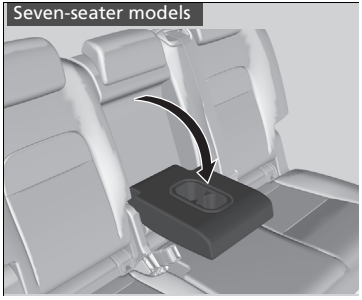
■ Using the Second Row Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

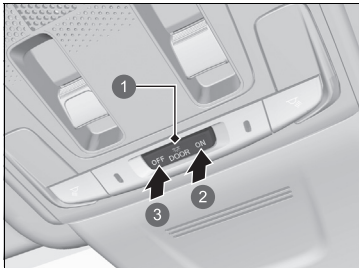
Continued

Seven-seater models



Interior Lights

■ Interior Light Switches



❶ Door Activated Position
❷ **ON**
❸ **OFF**

■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- When the driver's door is unlocked.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and turn off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights turn off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

Models with colour audio system

Vehicle Settings* P. 183

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 452

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 552

The interior lights turn off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

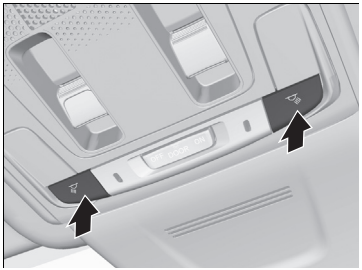
To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights turn off after about 15 minutes.

* Not available on all models

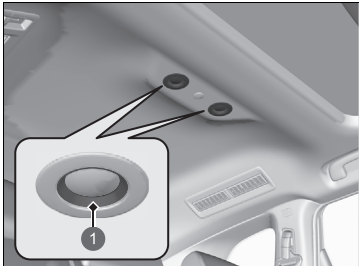
Continued

■ Map Light Switches



■ Front seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the switches.



■ Second row seat

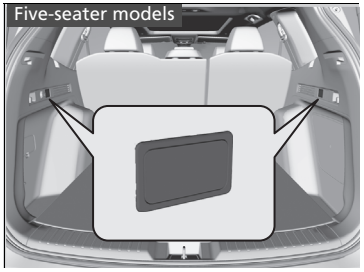
The map lights can be turned on and off by touching the map lights.

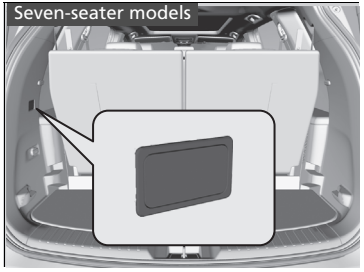
❶ Touch

Map Light Switches

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not turn off when you press the switches or touch the rear map lights.

■ Luggage Area Light(s)

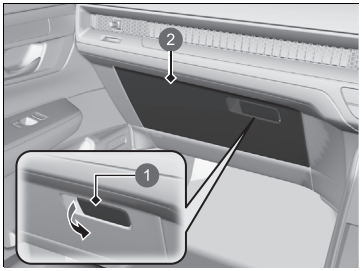




The luggage area lights come on when you open the tailgate.

Storage Items

■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

❶ Handle
❷ Glove Box

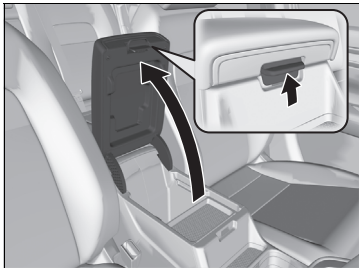
Glove Box

⚠WARNING

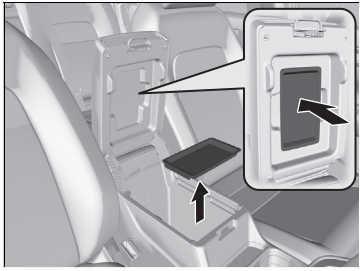
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

■ Console Compartment



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

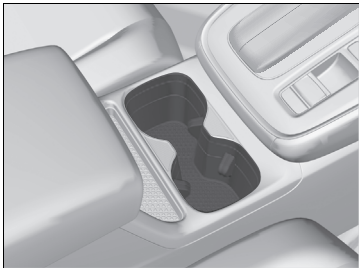


■ Removable tray

The tray can be removed and stored on the bottom surface of the armrest.

Continued

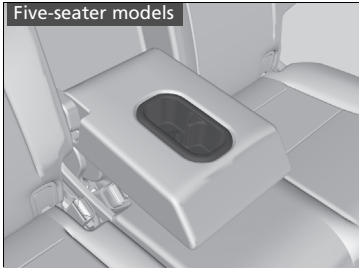
■ Beverage Holders



■ Front seat beverage holders

Located in the console between the front seats.

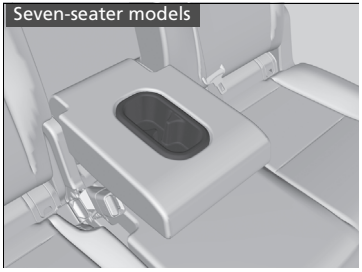
Five-seater models



■ Second row seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the second row seat beverage holders.

Seven-seater models

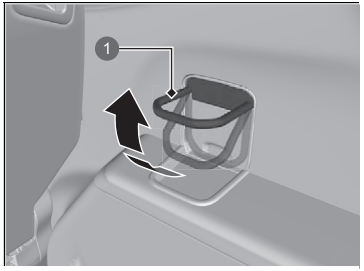


Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

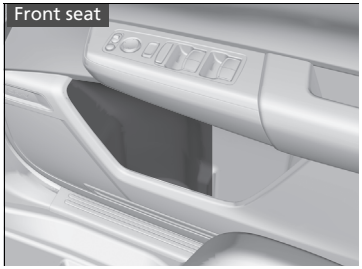


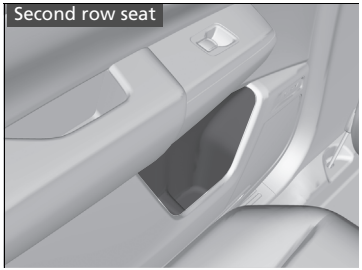
❶ Beverage Holder

Seven-seater models

■ **Third row seat beverage holders**

Pull up the beverage holder to use it. You can adjust the beverage holder angle depending on size the beverage.



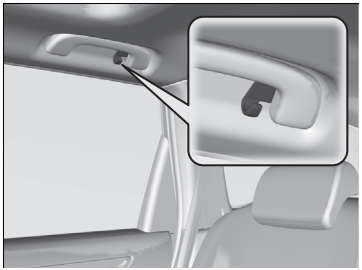


■ **Door beverage holders**

Located on both of the front and rear door side pockets.

Continued

■ Coat Hook

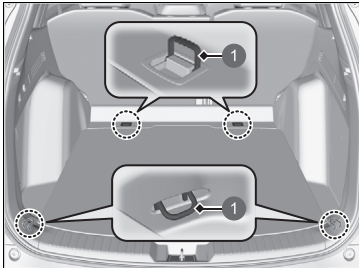


There is a coat hook on the driver side rear grab handle.

Coat Hook

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

■ Tie-down Anchorages*



The tie-down anchorages on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

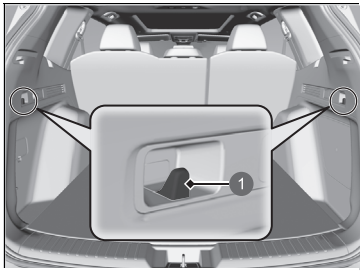
❶ Anchorages

Tie-down Anchorages*

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

* Not available on all models

■ Luggage Hooks*



❶ Hook

The luggage hooks on the both sides of the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

Luggage Hooks*

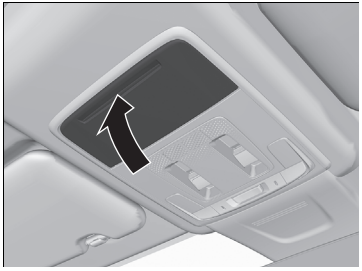
NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg on the side luggage hooks. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hooks.

* Not available on all models

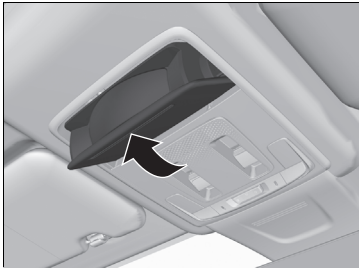
Continued

■ Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, press and release the indent. To close, press it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.



■ Conversation mirror*

The sunglasses holder comes with a mirror. Open the sunglasses holder fully, then push it back to the first detent.

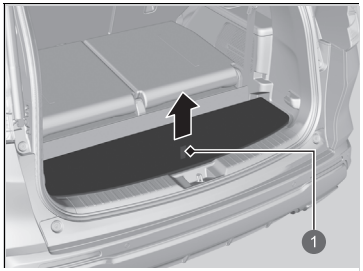
You can use the mirror to view the second row and third row* seats.

Sunglasses Holder

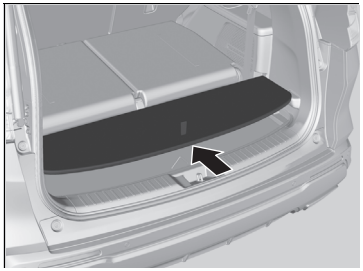
Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

* Not available on all models

■ Luggage Storage Area*



1 Strap



■ Storing items on the lid (raise position)

By pushing the third row seat forward and putting the floor lid in the raise position, you can store bulkier items in the luggage area.

1. Folding down the third row seat.

➡ **Folding Down the Third Row Seat** P. 294

2. Pull the strap to open the luggage floor lid (upper).

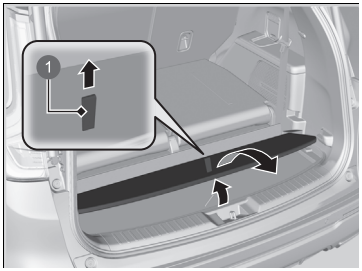
3. Pull the floor lid towards you until it disengages from the support rods.

4. Put the floor lid in the raise position, then slide it to the end.

* Not available on all models

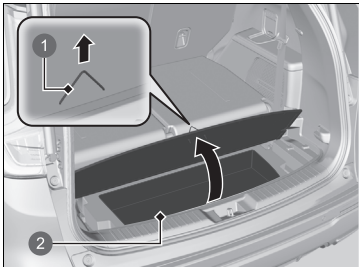
Continued

■ Luggage Floor Box*



1. Pull the strap to remove the luggage floor lid (upper).

❶ Strap

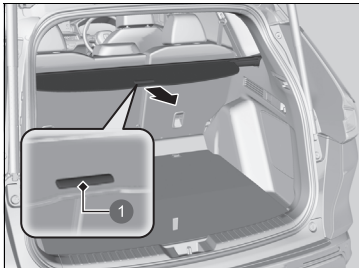


2. Pull the strap to open the luggage floor lid (lower).

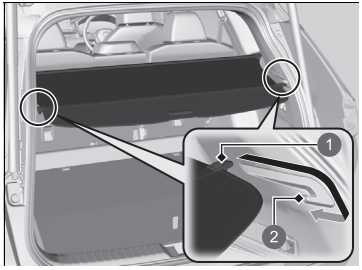
❶ Strap
❷ Luggage Floor Box

 * Not available on all models

■ Luggage Area Cover*



❶ Handle



❶ Mounting Rod
❷ Hook

The luggage area cover can be used to conceal items in the luggage area and protect them from direct sunlight.

■ To extend:
Slightly lift up on the handle at the centre edge of the cover to unhook each end, then pull the cover rearward and clip the mounting rods in the hooks at both sides of the tailgate opening.

■ To retract:
Slip the rods out of the hooks, then slowly roll it back until it is completely retracted.

Luggage Area Cover*

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

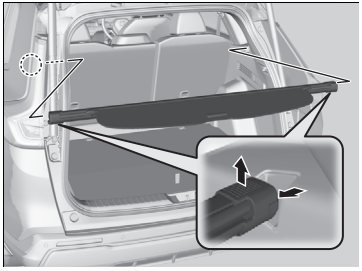
Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the luggage area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent luggage area cover damage:
- Do not place items on the luggage area cover.
- Do not put weight on the luggage area cover.

Be sure that each mounting rod sets in its respective retention groove when you retract the rear luggage cover. If they are not set in the grooves, the rods may rattle as they contact the surrounding surfaces.

* Not available on all models

Continued



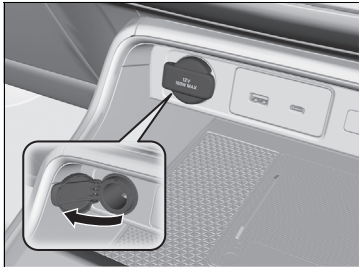
■ **To remove:**

Push either end of the housing inward, then lift it out of its position.

Other Interior Convenience Items

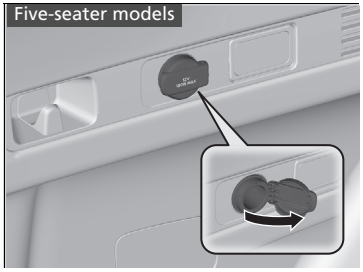
■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.



■ Luggage area

Open the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Sockets

NOTICE

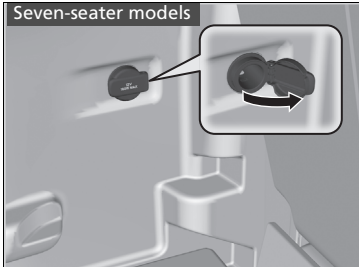
Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the engine is running.

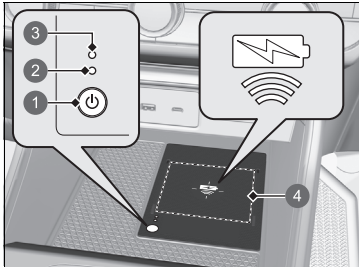
When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

Continued


Seven-seater models

■ Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:



❶ (Power) Button
❷ Green Indicator
❸ Amber Indicator
❹ Charging Area

1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (power) button.
▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
▶ The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger*

⚠CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (e.g., water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine, or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

In order to use safely:

- Remove any metal objects from the charge pad before charging a device.
- Do not open the charger case.
- Do not use the charger if it malfunctions. Contact your dealer.

Models with Display Audio

appears on the audio/information screen when the device is being charged by the wireless charger.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simulta-neously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where is located.
		The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases.	Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

Wireless Charger*

If the charger interferes with radio communications, attempt to correct the interference:

- Press and hold the switch on the charger for a few seconds to turn off the charger.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

* Not available on all models

Wireless Charger*

The wireless charger can support up to 15 W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging.
The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

"Qi" and marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:
- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as a TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.
- The device has a cover, case, or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Wireless Charger*

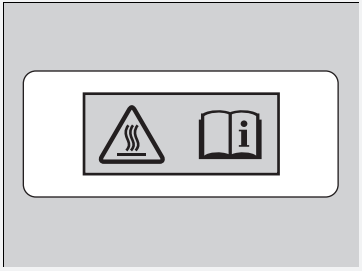
During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:
- All the doors and the tailgate are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

Models with colour audio system

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in



Burn risk:
Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

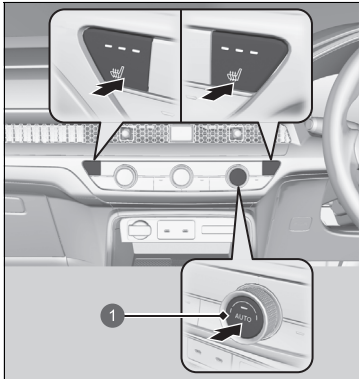
If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge.
The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.

 * Not available on all models

Front Seat Heaters*



The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.



1 **AUTO** Button

Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Press the **AUTO** button:
Both the air conditioner and seat temperature will automatically change to the setting most suitable to the ambient environment.

▶ When any seat heater button is pressed, settings will switch to manual mode.

Front Seat Heaters*

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the front seat heaters will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the front seat heaters shut off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

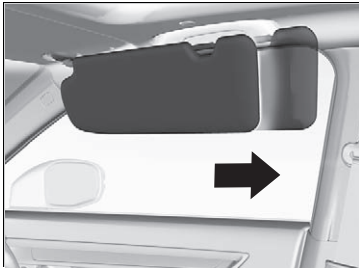
As time passes, the set temperature will fall, and eventually the seat heater will shut off.

The seat heater may turn on if sensors detect weight on the passenger seat due to luggage, etc.

* Not available on all models

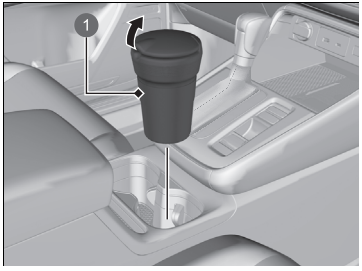
Continued

■ Sun Visor



The sun visor can be extended horizontally.

■ Ashtray*



The ashtray that fits in the front beverage holders is removable. Pull up on the lid to open.

❶ Ashtray

* Not available on all models

Front Seat Heaters*

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

To prevent automatic activation, you can turn off automatic climate control for the front seat.

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 552

Ashtray*

To prevent a possible fire and damage to your vehicle, use the ashtray only for discarding cigarettes and cigars.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.
The auto button indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

Models without MAX COOL button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

Models with MAX COOL button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, press the **MAX COOL** button.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

For directions on the proper handling of the front seat heaters*, refer to the following page.

Front Seat Heaters* P. 323

* Not available on all models

Continued

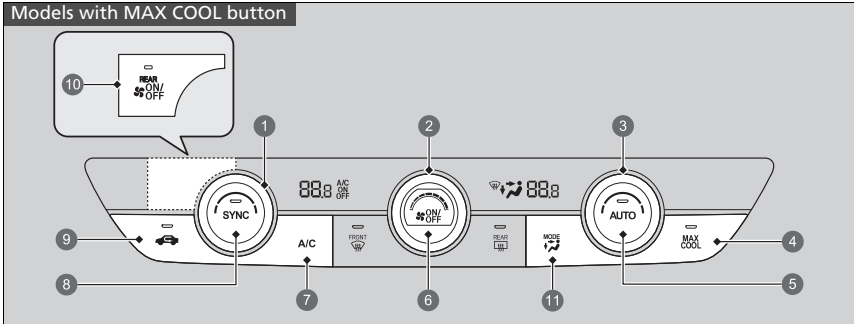
Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control dial.

3. Press the ON/OFF (on/off) button to cancel.

Models with MAX COOL button



❶ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial*1

❷ Fan Control Dial

❸ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial*1

❹ **MAX COOL** Button*1

❺ **AUTO** Button*1

❻ **ON/OFF** Button

❼ **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button*1

❽ **SYNC** Button*1

❾ Recirculation Button*1

❿ **REAR** ON/OFF (Rear On/Off) Button*2

⓫ **MODE** Button*1

- Air flows from dashboard and back of the centre console vents
- Air flows from dashboard, floor, and back of the centre console vents
- Air flows from floor vents
- Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

*1:Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.

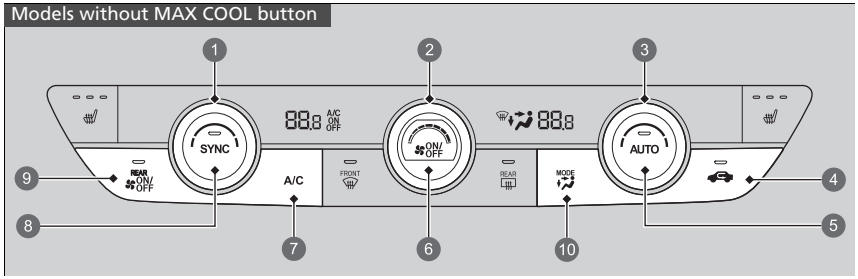
*2:Left-hand Drive Type

Using Automatic Climate Control

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

Models without MAX COOL button



❶ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial*1
❷ Fan Control Dial
❸ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial*1
❹ Recirculation Button*1
❺ **AUTO** Button*1
❻ **ON/OFF** Button
❼ **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button*1
❽ **SYNC** Button*1
❾ **REAR** (Rear On/Off) Button*1
❿ **MODE** Button*1

- Air flows from dashboard and back of the centre console vents
- Air flows from dashboard, floor, and back of the centre console vents
- Air flows from floor vents
- Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

*1:Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.
Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

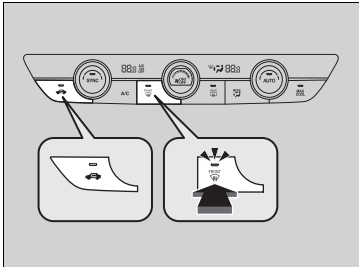
Continued

Using Automatic Climate Control

Models with Auto Idle Stop

During idle-stops, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active.
If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button to cancel idle-stop.

■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



African, Middle Eastern, Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

Pressing the FRONT (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

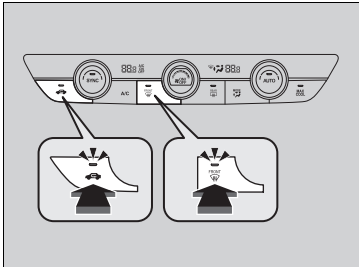
Except African, Middle Eastern, Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

Pressing the FRONT (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on.
Press the button (indicator off) to switch the fresh air mode.

All models

Press the FRONT button again to turn off. The system returns to the previous settings.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the FRONT button (indicator on).
2. Press the button (indicator on).

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

If you press the FRONT button during Auto Idle Stop, the engine restarts automatically.

To rapidly defrost the windows

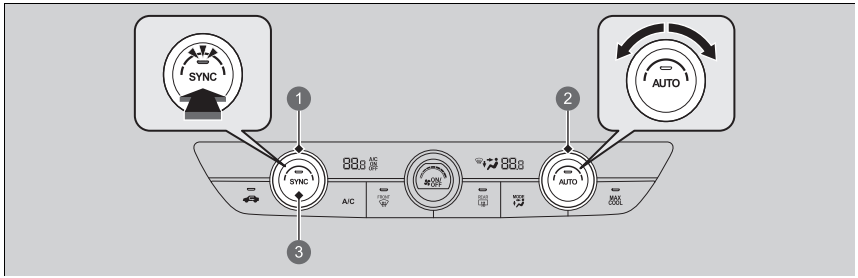
After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

■ Synchronization Mode

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

Press the **SYNC** button or adjust the interior temperature using the passenger's side temperature control dial to return to dual mode.



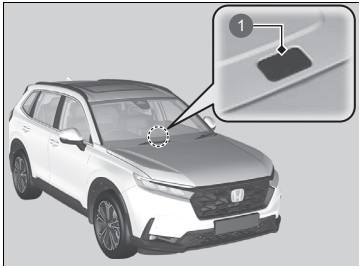
❶ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
❷ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
❸ **SYNC** Button

Synchronization Mode

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

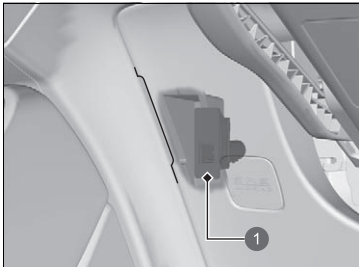
When you press the FRONT button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with a sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

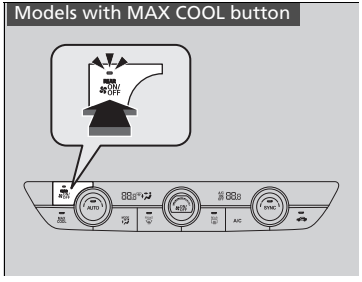
1 Sensor



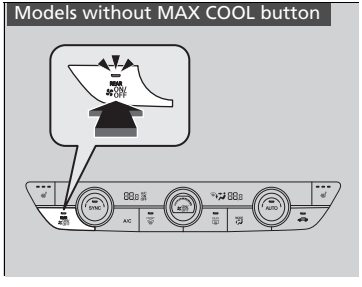
1 Sensor

Rear Cooling*

Models with MAX COOL button



Models without MAX COOL button



Use the system when the engine is running.

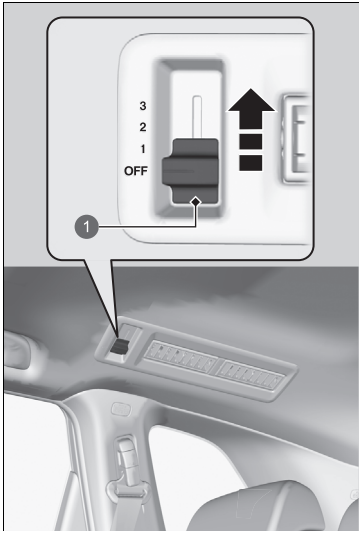
1. Press the **REAR** ON/OFF (Rear On/Off) Button.

Rear Cooling*

The rear cooling can not be used when the **REAR** ON/OFF (Rear On/Off) button on the front control panel is off.

* Not available on all models

Continued



1 Fan Control Lever

2. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control lever.
3. Slide the fan control lever to **OFF** or press the **REAR** ON/OFF (Rear On/Off) button on the front control panel to cancel.

Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System..... 334
Colour Audio..... 336
Display Audio 388
Display Audio with Google built-in ... 484
Audio Error Messages* 578
General Information on the Audio System..... 580

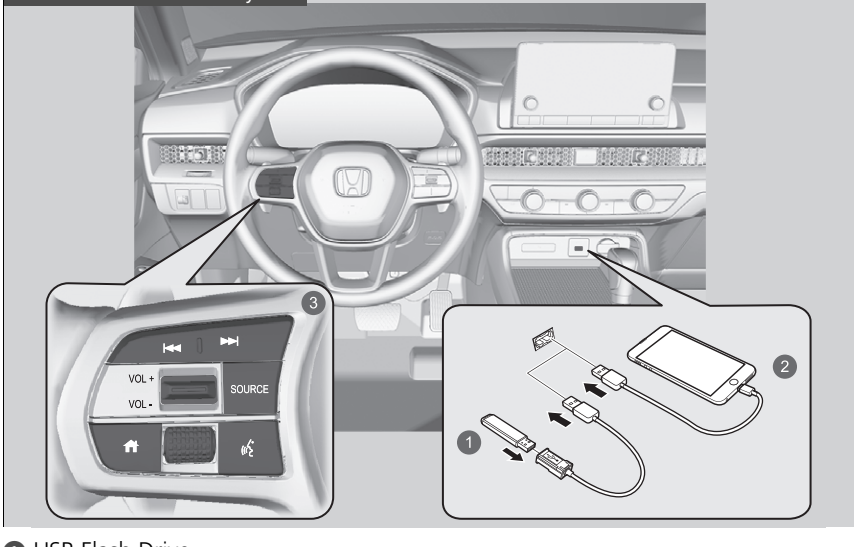
* Not available on all models

About Your Audio System

The audio system features FM/AM radio and Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) service*. It can also play USB flash drives*, iPod*, iPhone*, *Bluetooth*® devices, and smartphones*.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel or the icons on the touchscreen interface.

Models with colour audio system



1. USB Flash Drive
2. iPod
3. Remote Controls

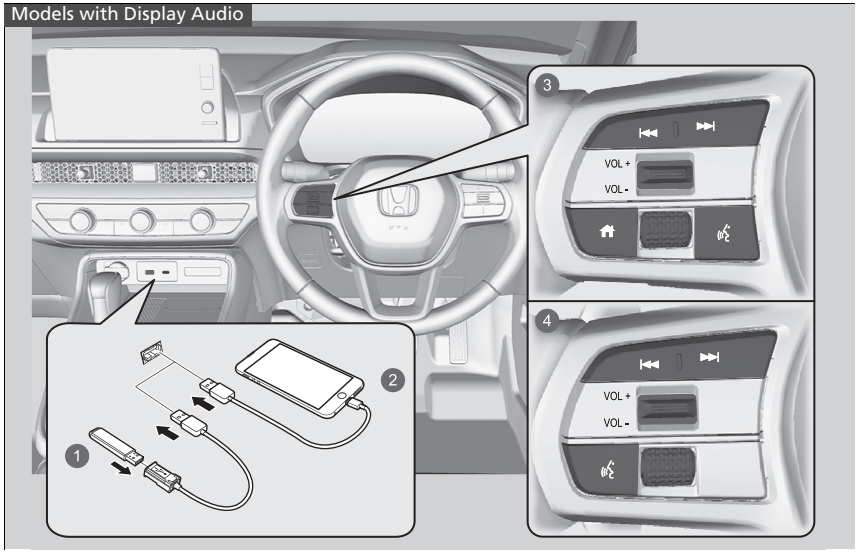
About Your Audio System

Taiwanese models

Use of this feature is limited while driving. When using video playback, make sure that your vehicle is stopped with the parking brake applied. According to the "Operational guidelines concerning recommended warning displays for 3C devices" from the Ministry of Health and Welfare's National Health Bureau, it is possible that blue light emitted from the screens of 3C devices may cause dry eye, cataracts, retinopathy, optic neuropathy, or other types of eye damage.
The ministry of health and welfare recommends the following precautions when using 3C devices:
1) Take a 10 minute break after every 30 minutes of use;
2) Children under the age of 2 should not look at screens, and children age 2 and older should not look at screens for more than 1 hour per day.

* Not available on all models

Models with Display Audio



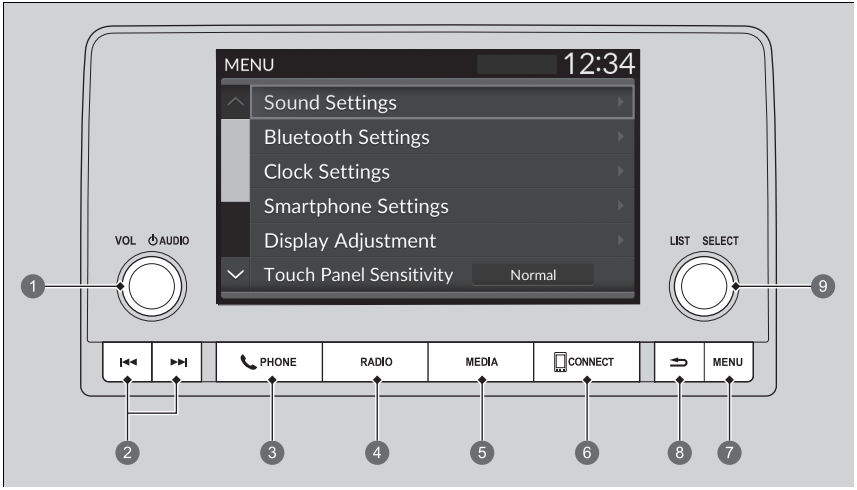
1. USB Flash Drive
2. iPod
3. Remote Controls*1
4. Remote Controls*2

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

Basic Operation

Audio System Function

To use the audio system, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



1. **VOL/ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
2. / (Seek/Track) Buttons
3. **PHONE** Button
4. **RADIO** Button
5. **MEDIA** Button
6. **CONNECT** Button
7. **MENU** Button
8. (Back) Button
9. Selector Knob

Colour Audio

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

Menu Items

Adjust Clock P. 218
Adjusting the Sound P. 340
Display Setup P. 341
Customized Features P. 362

Press the buttons on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

Audio Remote Controls P. 339

Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed-out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

Customized Features P. 362

Use the selector knob or **MENU** button to access some audio functions.

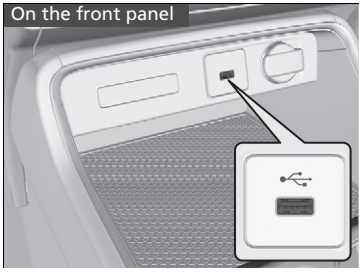
Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob: Press to turn the audio system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.
/ (Seek/Track) Buttons: Press or to change station, song or file.
PHONE button: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen.
RADIO button: Press to select a band.
MEDIA button: Press to select iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio (if connected).
CONNECT button: Press to display Apple CarPlay, or Android Auto screen.
MENU button: Press to display the menu screen.
(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous display.
Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

Continued

■ USB Ports

On the front panel

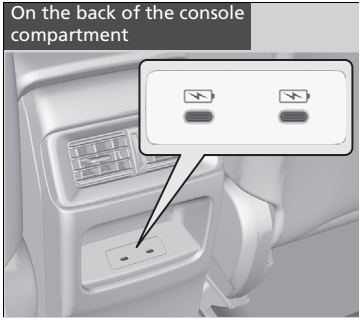


■ USB Charging/Connector Port ( )

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay. For Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

On the back of the console compartment



■ USB Charging Port ( )

The USB ports (3.0A) are only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

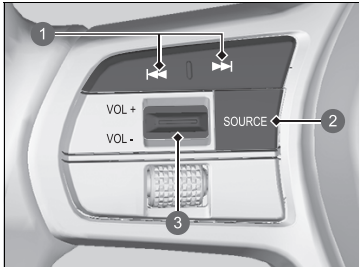
USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A/3.0A of power. It does not output 2.5A/3.0A unless requested by the device.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

■ Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.



SOURCE Button
Cycles through the audio modes.

VOL+/VOL− (Volume) Switch
Press Up: To increase the volume.
Press Down: To decrease the volume.

❶ |◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❷ **SOURCE** Button
❸ **VOL+/VOL−** (Volume) Switch

|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press |▶▶|: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press |◀◀|: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold |◀◀|: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  Press |▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press |◀◀|: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To skip to the next folder/group.
  Press and hold |◀◀|: To go back to the previous folder/group.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Adjusting the Sound

1. Select an audio source.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Select **Sound Settings**.

Select an item from the following choices:
- **Bass / Treble:** Bass, Midrange, Treble
- **Balance / Fader:** Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation:** Sets the amount of volume increase.

Adjusting the Sound

The Speed Volume Compensation (SVC) adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness separately for Day and Night modes.

■ Changing the Screen Brightness

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **Display Adjustment**.
3. Select **Day** or **Night**.
4. Select the setting you want.

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

You can adjust the settings by sliding or tapping on the bar.

Playing AM/FM Radio



1. **VOL/⏻ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
2. Seek Buttons
3. **RADIO** Button
4. Preset Icons
5. **MENU** Button
6. ⮌ (Back) Button
7. Selector Knob

■ Preset Icons

Tune the radio frequency for preset memory.
Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
Select [>] to display beyond preset 5.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Press ⌯ while listening to a radio.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Press ⌯ while listening to a radio.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
1. Select **Scan**.

To turn off scan, select **Stop** or press the [↩] button.

■ Seek

Press [|◀◀] or [▶▶|] to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

Playing AM/FM Radio

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

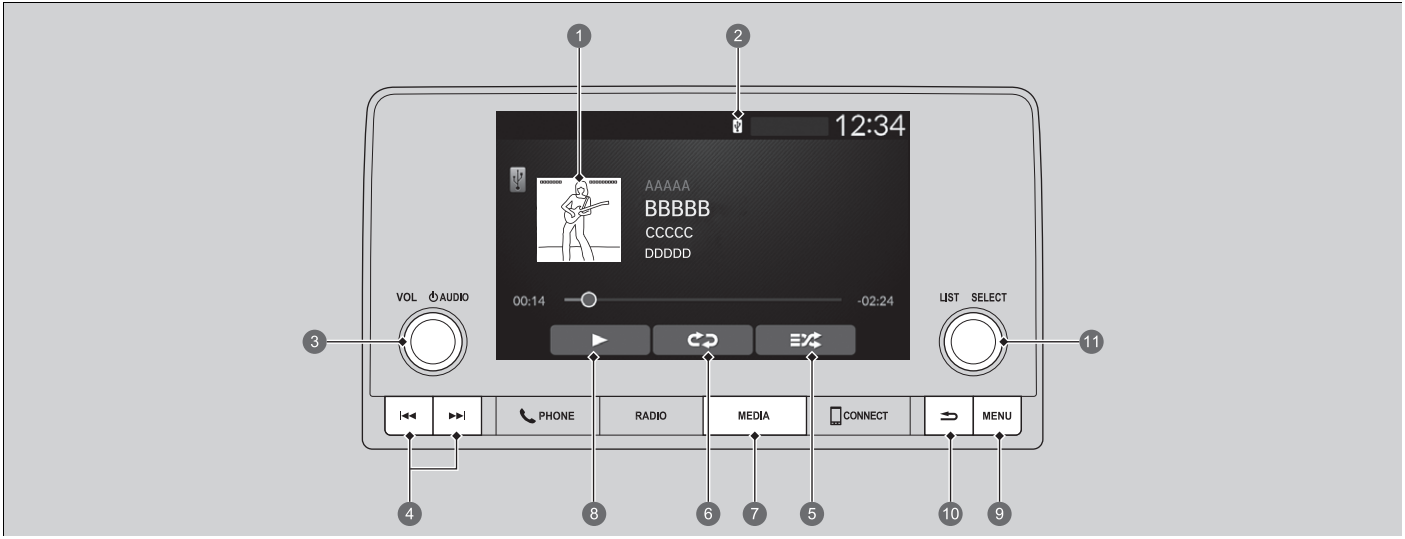
You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the audio source selecting button on the steering wheel.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 339

Music Playback via Wired Connection

Using your USB connector, connect the device to the USB charging/connector port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

USB Ports P. 338



1. Album Art
2. USB Indicator
3. **VOL**/⏻ **AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
4. Track Buttons
5. Shuffle Icon
6. Repeat Icon
7. **MEDIA** Button
8. Play/Pause Icon
9. **MENU** Button
10. ⮌ (Back) Button
11. Selector Knob

How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List

1. Press ⦾ to display the iPod music list.
2. Select a category.
3. Select an item.
▶ Select an item repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen to is displayed.

Music Playback via Wired Connection

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.

■ Shuffle/Repeat
Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.
Shuffle Icon
Select to play all files in the current category in random order.
Repeat Icon
Select to repeat the current file.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items
Shuffle
Shuffle off: Shuffle mode to off.
Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat
Repeat off: Repeat mode to off.
Repeat all: Repeats all songs.
Repeat Song: Repeats the current song.

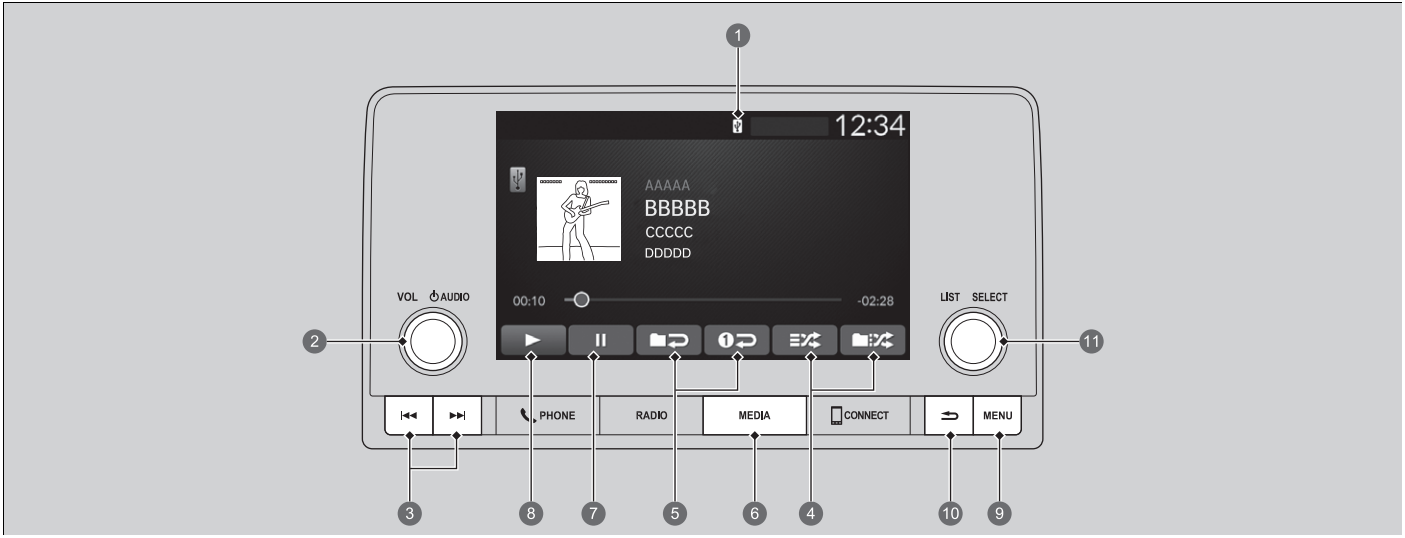
How to Change a Song

Press |◀◀| or |▶▶| to change songs. Press and hold to move rapidly within a song.

Media Playback via USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, or WAV format.
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

USB Ports P. 338



1. USB Indicator
2. **VOL**/⏻ **AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
3. Track Buttons
4. Random Icons
5. Repeat Icons
6. **MEDIA** Button
7. Pause Icon
8. Play Icon
9. **MENU** Button
10. ⮌ (Back) Button
11. Selector Knob

How to Select a File from a Folder

1. Press ⌯ to display a folder list.
2. Select a folder.
3. Select a file.

Media Playback via USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.
➔ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 580

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
➔ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 578

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

■ Random/Repeat
Select random or repeat icon.
Random Icons
Select to play all files in the current category in random order.
Repeat Icons
Select to repeat the current file.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items
Random
Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.
Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat
Repeat track: Repeats the current file.
Repeat folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

How to Change a File

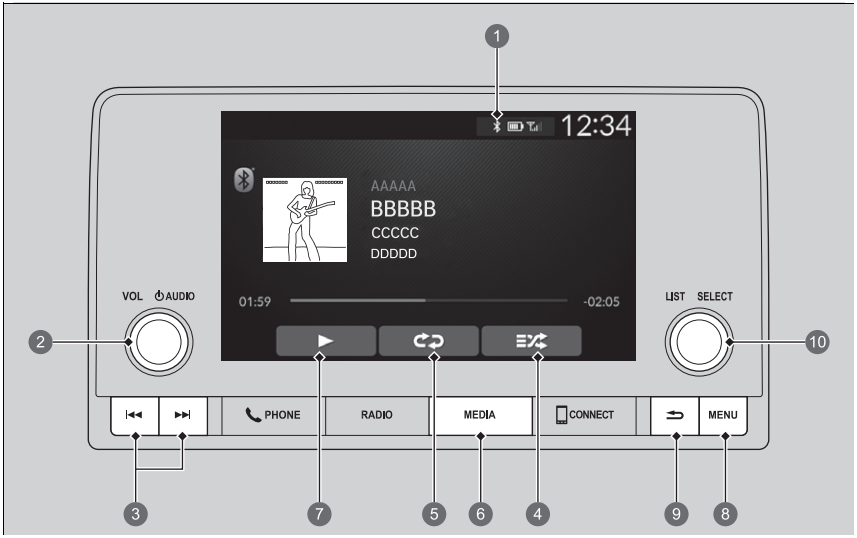
Press |◀◀| or |▶▶| to change files. Press and hold to move rapidly within a track.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 373



1. *Bluetooth*® Indicator
2. **VOL/⏻ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
3. Track Buttons
4. Shuffle Icon
5. Repeat Icon
6. **MEDIA** Button
7. Play/Pause Icon
8. **MENU** Button
9. ⮌ (Back) Button
10. Selector Knob

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there is more than one paired phone in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the **Bluetooth Settings** menu.

HFT Menus P. 371

To change the searched phone manually, select **Go to Device List**.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Audio** from the *Bluetooth*® device list.

Phone Setup P. 373

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFT.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button until the *Bluetooth*® Audio Source is selected.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone manufacturer's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the USB port, you may need to press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

Check the volume setting of your phone if the audio volume is too loud or soft.

Continued

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

1. Press ♨ to display the music search list.
2. Select a category.
3. Select an item.
▶ Select an item repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen to is displayed.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Shuffle Icon

Select to play all files in the current category in random order.

Repeat Icon

Select to repeat the current file.

■ How to Change a File

Press |◀◀| or |▶▶| to change files.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle

Shuffle off: Shuffle mode to off.

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list in random order.

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

Repeat off: Repeat mode to off.

Repeat all: Repeats all songs.

Repeat Song: Repeats the current song.

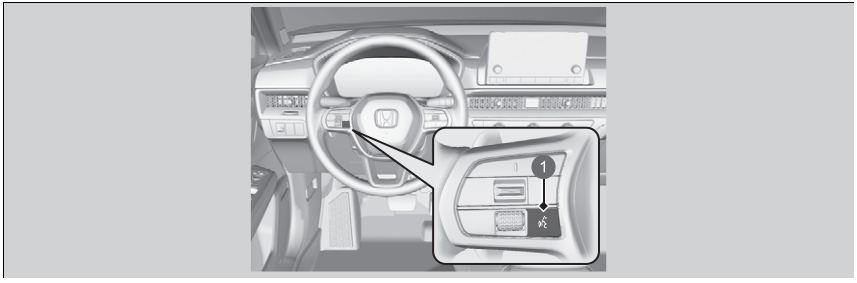
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the functions may not be displayed.

Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

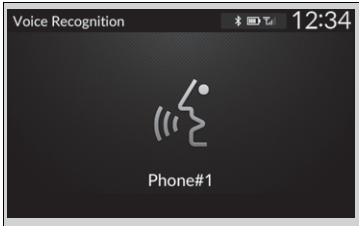
Phone Setup P. 373

■ Using Siri Eyes Free



❶ (Talk) Button

Press until the display changes as shown.
Press and hold to deactivate Siri Eyes Free.
While in Siri Eyes Free: The display remains the same.
No feedback or commands appear.



Appears when Siri is activated in Siri Eyes Free.

Siri Eyes Free

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free mode while operating a vehicle.

Using Siri Eyes Free

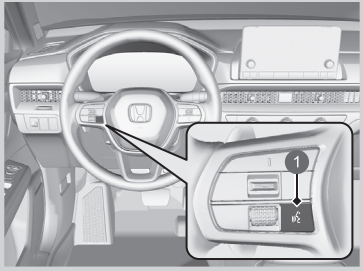
Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Smartphone Voice Recognition

You can use Smartphone Voice Recognition using the (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your Android phone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

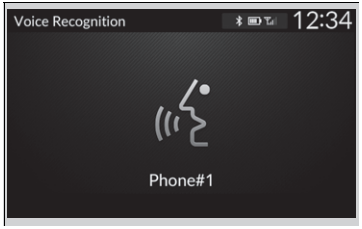
Phone Setup P. 373

■ Using Smartphone Voice Recognition



❶ (Talk) Button

Press to activate Smartphone Voice Recognition.
Press and hold to deactivate Smartphone Voice Recognition.
While in Smartphone Voice Recognition: The display remains the same.
No feedback or commands appear.



Appears when Smartphone Voice Recognition is activated.

Using Smartphone Voice Recognition

Depending on your Android phone, you may need to operate your phone.

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the front USB, you can use Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

USB Ports P. 338

■ Apple CarPlay Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Apple CarPlay website. Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your iPhone.

Select the **Honda** icon on the Apple CarPlay menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Apple CarPlay

We recommend that you update iOS to the latest version when using Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or Hands-Free Telephone (HFT). You can only make calls or listen to music through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT), turn Apple CarPlay OFF. Other previously paired phones can use the *Bluetooth*® Audio.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple website.

Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple website for information on compatible apps.

To adjust the ringtone volume, the guidance volume of the navigation or Siri, or the audio volume, turn the **VOL/⏻ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob while the sound you want to adjust is playing.

Continued

■ Connect Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB charging/connector port.
USB Ports P. 338
▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
2. Select **Yes**.
▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Settings** menu.

Apple CarPlay

Only initialize Apple CarPlay when you are safely parked.
When Apple CarPlay first detects your iPhone, you will need to set up your iPhone. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your iPhone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Apple CarPlay:
Press the **MENU** button→
Select Smartphone Settings→Apple CarPlay
→Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press the (talk) button to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

To adjust the guidance volume of Siri, turn the **VOL/ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob while Siri is activated.

Android Auto™

When you connect an Android™ phone to the audio system via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated, and you can use Android Auto on the audio/information screen.

USB Ports P. 338

NOTE:
Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

Android Auto™

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto.
Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

Phone Setup P. 373

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

Android Auto Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Android Auto website. Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your smartphone.
Select the **Honda** icon on the Android Auto menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto website.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto website for information on compatible apps.

To adjust the ringtone volume, the guidance volume of the navigation or voice recognition, or the audio volume, turn the **VOL/⏻ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob while the sound you want to adjust is playing.

Continued

■ Connect Android Auto Using the USB Cable

To enable Android Auto after connecting an Android phone to the USB charging/ connector port, select **Yes** on the screen.

USB Ports P. 338

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Settings** menu.

Connect Android Auto Using the USB Cable

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Android Auto after you have completed the initial setup:
Press the **MENU** button →
Select Smartphone Settings → Android Auto →
Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press the [talk] (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press again to deactivate voice recognition.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto website.

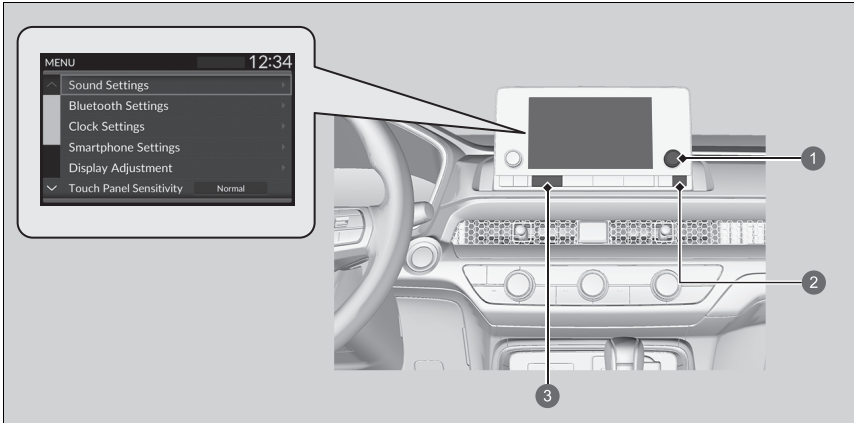
To adjust the guidance volume of voice recognition, turn the **VOL/[power] AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob while the guidance is playing.

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to Customize the Settings

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, press the **MENU** button. To customize the phone settings, press the **PHONE** button, then select **Settings**.



1. Selector Knob
2. **MENU** Button
3. **PHONE** Button

Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

To customize features detail, refer to the following.

➔ **List of customizable options** P. 363

■ **List of customizable options**

Press the **MENU** button.

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Sound Settings	**Bass / Treble** **Balance / Fader** **Speed Volume Compensation**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 340	—
Bluetooth Settings	**Connect New Device**	Pairs a new phone to HFT. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 373	—
	Change Device	Connects a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 373	—
	Priority Device	Sets a device as the priority device.	**ON/OFF**
	Disconnect All Devices (**Disconnect All Device**)	Disconnects a paired phone from HFT.	—
	Delete Device	Deletes a paired phone.	—
Clock Settings	**Automatic Time**	Selects **ON** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select **OFF** to cancel this function.	**ON/OFF**
	Daylight Saving Time	Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time.	**ON/OFF**
	Set Time	Adjusts time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 218	—
	Time Zone	Changes the time zone manually.	
Smartphone Settings	**Apple CarPlay**	Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.	—
	Android Auto	Sets up the Android Auto connection.	

Continued

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Display Adjustment	**Brightness**	Changes the brightness of the audio/ information screen.	—
	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/ information screen.	
	Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/ information screen.	
	Day	Changes between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and display off mode.	
	Night		
	Display OFF		
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**Normal/High**
Rear Camera Settings (**Rear Camera Setting**)	**Fixed Guideline**	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➔ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 789	**ON/OFF**
	Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➔ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 789	**ON/OFF**

 * Not available on all models

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Language	Changes the display language.	**English** (United States)*1, or Arabic*1 Some languages may not be available in all regions. Check the audio/information screen for available options.
Licence (**License**)	Shows the legal information.	—
Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 367	—

*1:The default setting varies depending on the model.

Press the **PHONE** button and select **Settings**.

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bluetooth Settings	**Connect New Device**	Pairs a new phone to HFT. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 373	—
	Change Device	Connects a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 373	—
	Priority Device	Sets a device as the priority device.	**ON/OFF**
	Disconnect All Devices (**Disconnect All Device**)	Disconnects a paired phone from HFT.	—
	Delete Device	Deletes a paired phone.	—
Ringtone		Selects the ringtone.	**Phone/Vehicle**
Auto Phone Call Transfer		Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.	**ON/OFF**
System Clear (**Hands-Free System Clear**)		Resets all customized items in the Phone Settings group as default.	—

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
3. Select **Yes**.
4. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
   ▶ The system will reboot.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

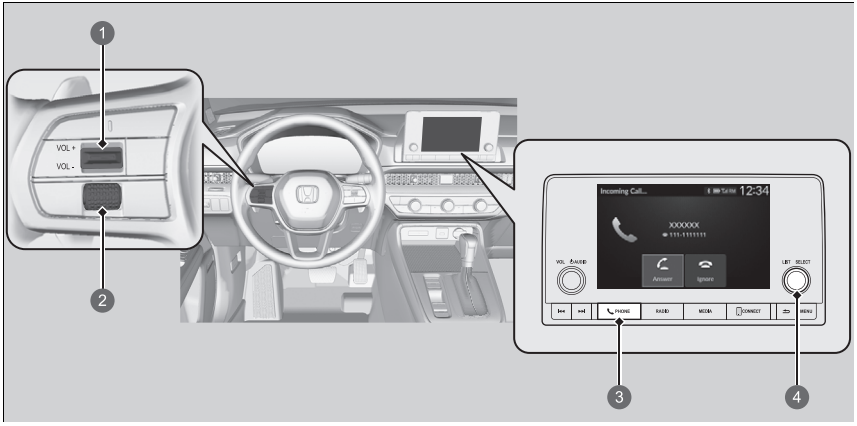
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Using HFT

■ HFT Buttons



❶ **VOL**+/**VOL**− (Volume) Switch
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ **PHONE** Button
❹ Selector Knob

Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

Voice control tips
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.

Up to 20 favorite contacts can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

Favorite Contacts P. 381

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Left Selector Wheel: While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call P. 386

PHONE button: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen.

Selector knob: Rotate ⟲ to select an item on the screen, then press ⏺.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

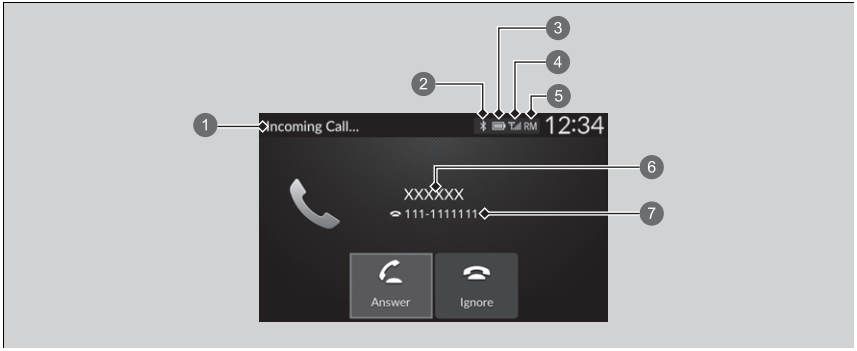
HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Continued

■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



1. HFT Mode
2. *Bluetooth*® Indicator
   Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
3. Battery Level Status
4. Signal Strength
5. Roam Status
6. Caller's Name
7. Caller's Number

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

HFT Menus

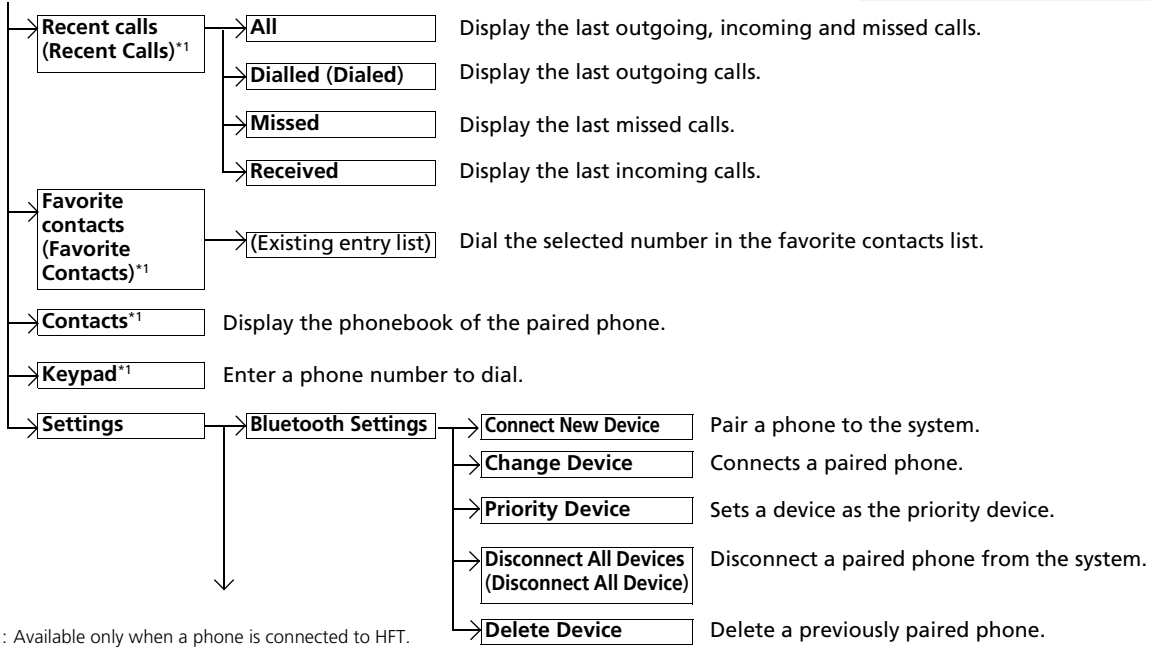
The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

HFT Menus

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

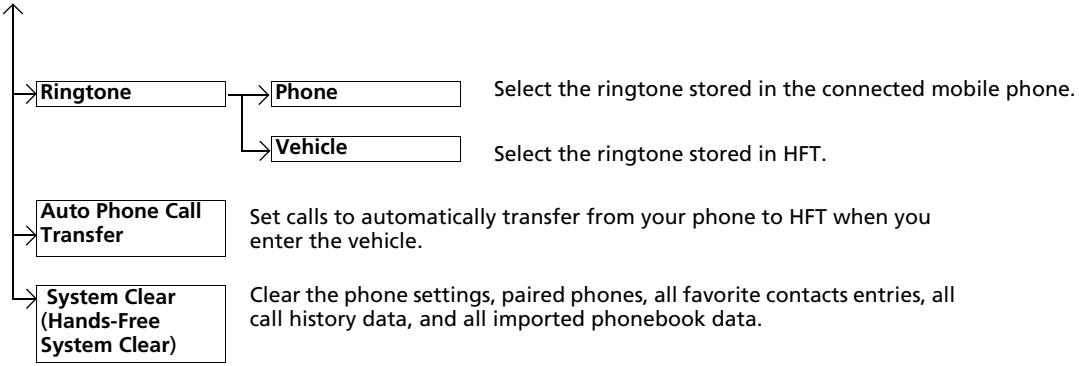
Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is cancelled.

PHONE button

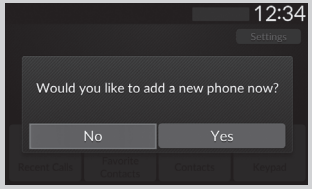


*1: Available only when a phone is connected to HFT.

Continued


Ringtone
Phone
Select the ringtone stored in the connected mobile phone.
Vehicle
Select the ringtone stored in HFT.
Auto Phone Call Transfer
Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.
System Clear (Hands-Free System Clear)
Clear the phone settings, paired phones, all favorite contacts entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data.

Phone Setup







To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
3. Select **Yes**.
   ▶ The audio system will enter a waiting mode for pairing.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search from car** and follow the prompts.
   When your phone appears on the list, select it.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone matches.
   This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

Continued

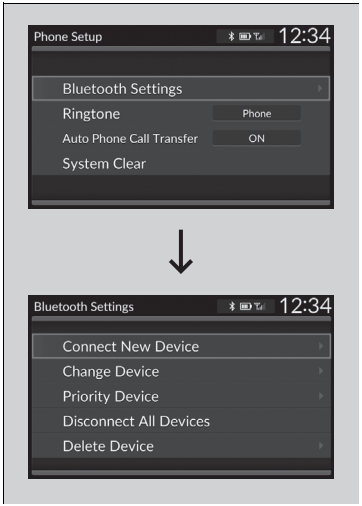
Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFT before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to the **Bluetooth Settings** screen.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.
: The phone can be used with HFT.

When pairing a phone from this audio system:
If your phone doesn't appear on the audio/information screen, select **Search from phone** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone.
From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.



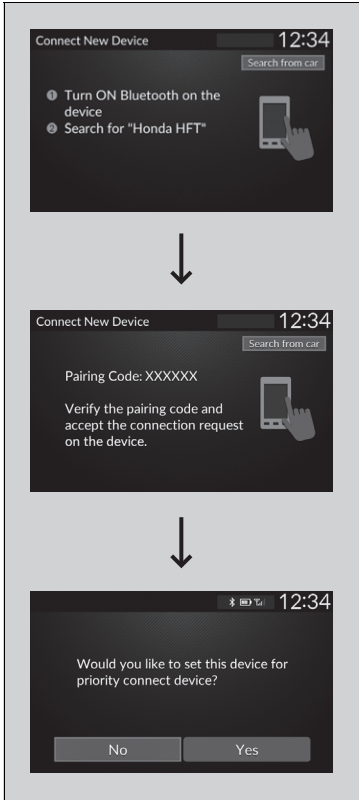
■ **To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
▶ If a prompt appears asking to connect to a phone, select **No** and proceed with step 2.

2. Select **Settings**.

3. Select **Bluetooth Settings**.

4. Select **Connect New Device**.
▶ The audio system will enter a waiting mode for pairing.



5. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.

6. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.

▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search from car** and follow the prompts.
When your phone appears on the list, select it.

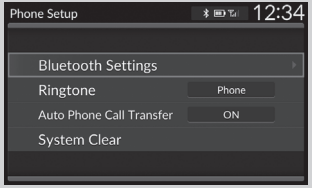
7. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.

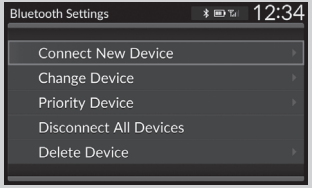
▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone matches.
This may vary by phone.

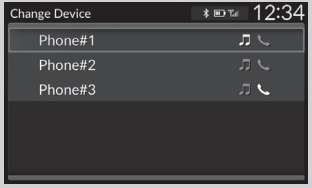
8. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

▶ You can prioritize a *Bluetooth*® device at the same time. Select **Yes** if you want to prioritize the device.

Continued







■ **To change the currently paired phone**

1. Press the **PHONE** button.

2. Select **Settings**.

3. Select **Bluetooth Settings**.

4. Select **Change Device**.

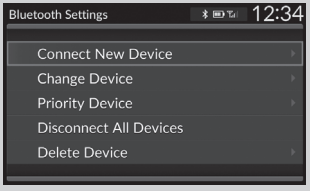
▶ The screen changes to a device list.

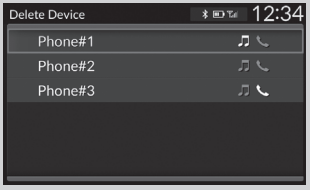
5. Select a desired device name.

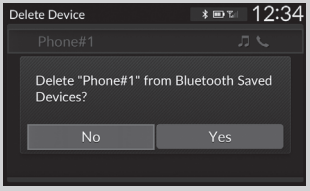
6. Select **Both**, **Audio**, or **Phone**.

▶ When another device is connected to Android Auto and you select **Both** or **Phone**, a confirmation message appears. Select **Continue**.

▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.







■ To delete a paired phone

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth Settings**.

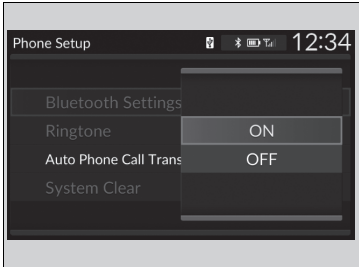
4. Select **Delete Device**.
▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Select a phone you want to delete.

6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.
▶ When the device is connected to Android Auto, a confirmation message appears. Select **Yes**.

Continued

■ Automatic Transferring

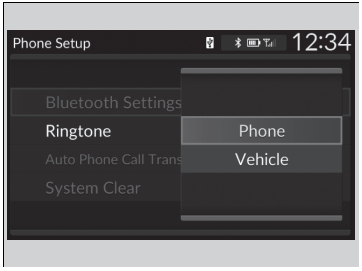
If paring between your phone and the system is executed while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.



1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

■ Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.



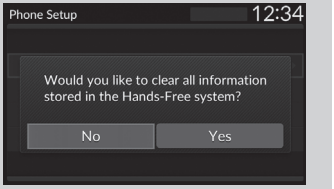
1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Ringtone**.
4. Select **Phone** or **Vehicle**.

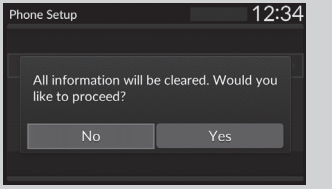
Ringtone

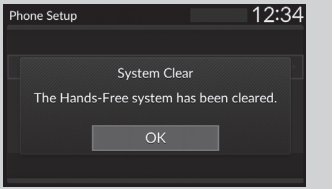
Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.
Vehicle: The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.

To Clear the System

Phone settings, paired phones, all favorite contacts entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.







1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System Clear** (**Hands-Free System Clear**).
4. Select **Yes**.

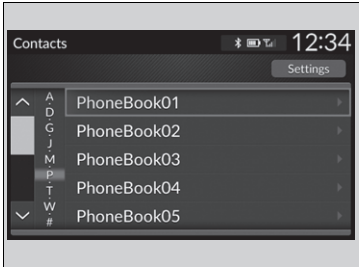
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

6. A notification appears on the screen. Select **OK**.

Continued

■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFT.



Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to five category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

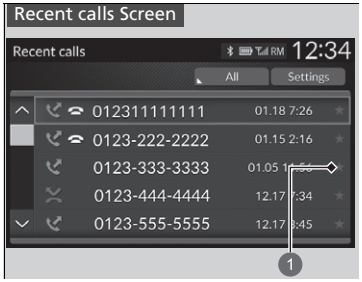
Pref	Fax
Home	Car
Mobile	Voice
Work	Other
Pager	

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFT.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

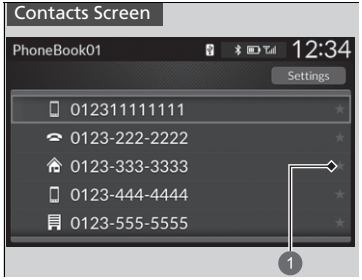
■ Favorite Contacts

Recent calls Screen



1 Star Icon

Contacts Screen



1 Star Icon

■ To add a favorite contacts

1. Press the **PHONE** button.

2. Select **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**), **Contacts**, or **Keypad**.

On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

3. Select the star icon.

Continued

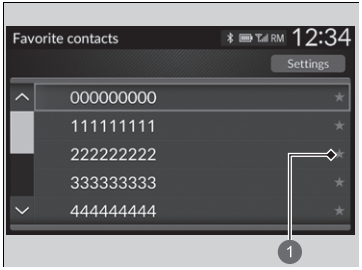
Keypad Screen



1 **Favorite contacts (Add to Favorites)**

On the Keypad screen

3. Select **Favorite contacts** (**Add to Favorites**).
- ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the favorite contact is successfully stored.
- ▶ To remove the favorite contact, select the star icon again.



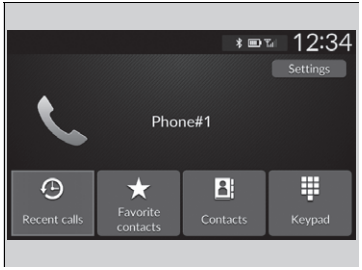
1 Star Icon

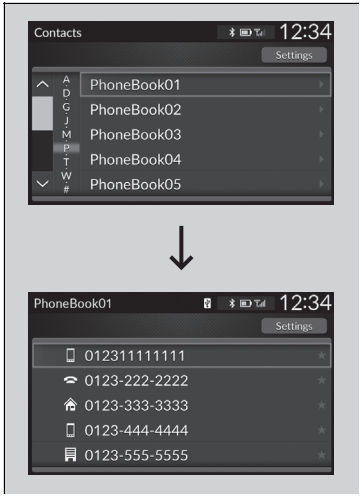
■ **To delete a favorite contact**

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Favorite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).
3. Select the star icon.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**), **Favorite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**), and **Contacts** entries.





■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

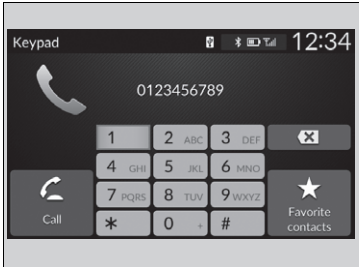
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFT.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Select a name.
4. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

Continued

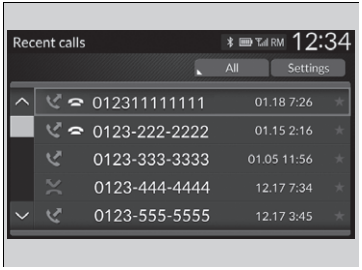
Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
4. Select **Call**.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



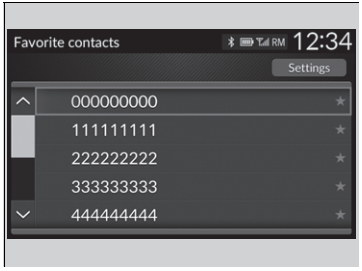
■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialled** (**Dialed**), **Missed**, or **Received**.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**).
   ▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled** (**Dialed**), **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
3. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFT, and displays the last 20 dialled, received, or missed calls.



■ **To make a call using a favorite contact**

1. Press the **PHONE** button.

2. Select **Favorite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).

3. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

Continued

■ Receiving a Call



1 HFT Mode
2 Caller's Name

When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.
To pick up the call, roll up or down to select **Answer** on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select **Ignore** on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting
Select **Answer** using the left selector wheel to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Select **Swap calls** using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.
Select **Ignore** using the left selector wheel to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Select **Hang up** using the left selector wheel if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the icons on the driver information interface.

■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
Swap Calls: Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Use Handheld: Transfer a call from HFT to your phone.
Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



1 Mute Icon

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

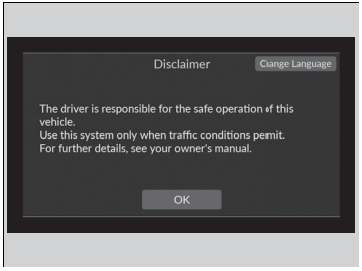
Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

Keypad: Available on some phones.

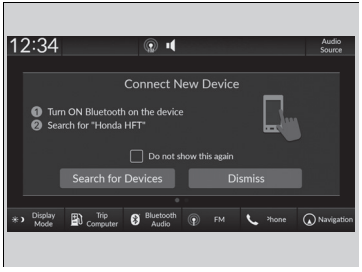
Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the disclaimer screen will be displayed.



Select **OK**.

▶ If there is no registered device, select **OK** and the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.



■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.

2. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.

▶ If you want to pair a phone from this Display Audio, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.

▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

Basic Operation

Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



❶ **All Apps**
❷ Status Icons
❸ App Shortcut Icons
❹ Arrow
❺ HOME (Home) Button
❻ BACK (Back) Button
❼ **VOL/** ⏻ **AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
❽ ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Track) Buttons
❾ Mode Change Switch Icons
❿ ☀ **Display Mode** Icon

Audio System Function

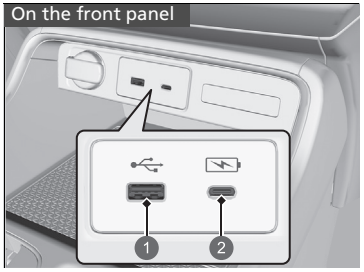
This screen is shown for the right-hand drive models. For the left-hand drive models, these are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

Continued

All Apps: Displays all apps.
Status Icons: Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area.
App Shortcut Icons: Display the app shortcut icons.
Arrow: Displays the next pages on the audio/information screen.
(Home) Button: Presses to go to the home screen.
(Back) Button: Presses to go back to the previous screen.
VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob: Turns the audio system on and off and turns to adjust the volume.
/ (Seek/Track) **Buttons**: Press to change station, song or file.
Mode Change Switch Icons: Display icons to change the mode directly.
Display Mode Icon: Changes the audio/information screen brightness. Select once and select or to make an adjustment.

■ USB Ports

On the front panel



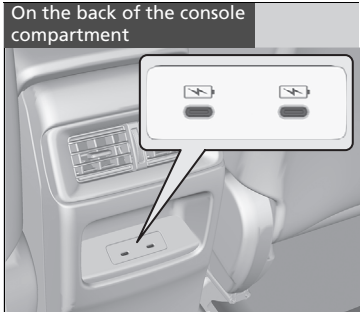
❶ Playing audio files and connecting compatible phones*
❷ Only for charging devices

■ USB Charging/Connector Port ( )*

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay. For Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

On the back of the console compartment



■ USB Charging Port ( )

These USB ports (3.0A) are only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.
- Some devices may not work even if they are connected to the USB ports.

USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A/3.0A of power. It does not output 2.5A/3.0A unless requested by the device.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

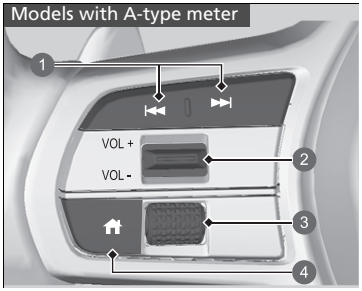
Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Audio Remote Controls

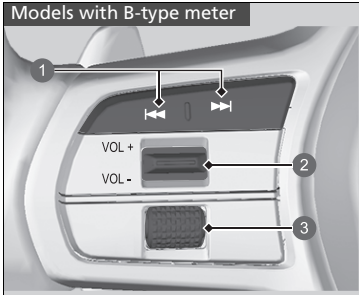
Models with A-type meter



Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

❶ |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❷ **VOL** + **/VOL** − (Volume) Switch
❸ Left Selector Wheel
❹ ⌂ (Home) Button

Models with B-type meter



❶ |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❷ **VOL** + **/VOL** − (Volume) Switch
❸ Left Selector Wheel

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Models with A-type meter

Press the ⌂ (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

VOL +/VOL − (Volume) Switch
Press Up: To increase the volume.
Press Down: To decrease the volume.

Models with A-type meter

Left Selector Wheel

- When selecting the audio mode

Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Roll up or down:
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel.

Models with B-type meter

Left Selector Wheel
Roll up or down:
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel.

Continued

|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press ▶▶|: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press |◀◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ▶▶|: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  ▶ Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
  Press ▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press |◀◀: To go back to the previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold ▶▶|: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To go back to the previous folder.

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and clock. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.



Audio/Information Screen

Touchscreen Operation

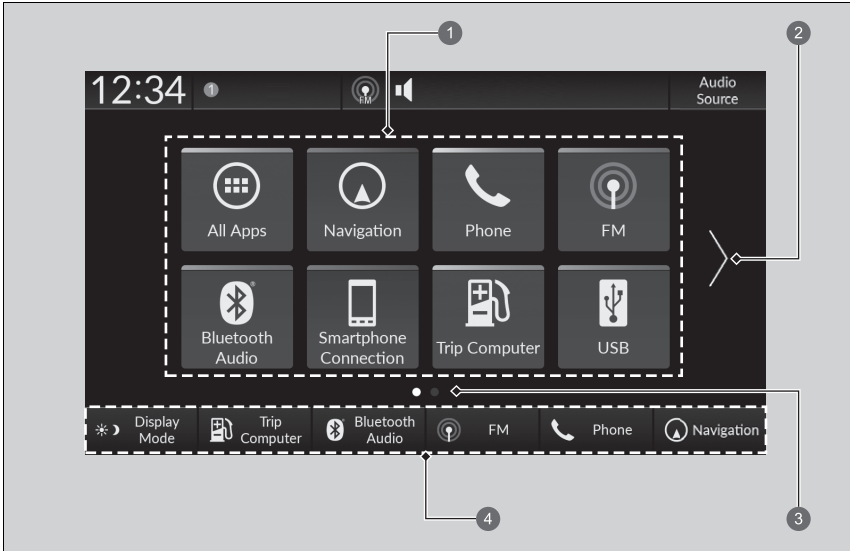
- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed-out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

Customized Features P. 443

Continued

■ App Shortcut Function



❶ App Shortcut Icons
❷ Arrow
❸ Page Indicator
❹ Mode Change Switches

■ To move to the next screen

Selecting < or >, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

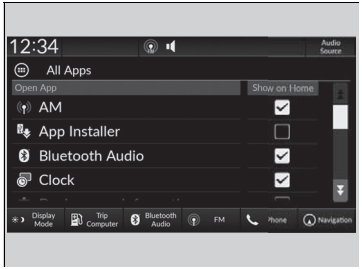
App Shortcut Function

The home screen can be added up to 6 pages.

Press the HOME button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select an app to check or uncheck it.

Continued

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change icon locations on the home screen.



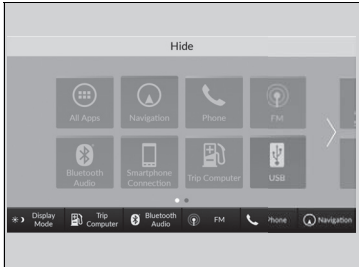
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
   ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to five icons on the bottom of the home screen.



1 Mode Change Switches

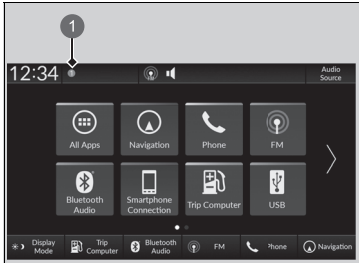
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the bottom of the home screen.
   ▶ The icon is stored on the mode change switch area.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ Status Area

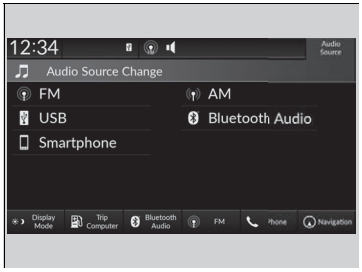
Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.



1. Select the system status icon.
   ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the BACK button or select the system status icon to close the area.

1 System Status Icon

■ Selecting an Audio Source

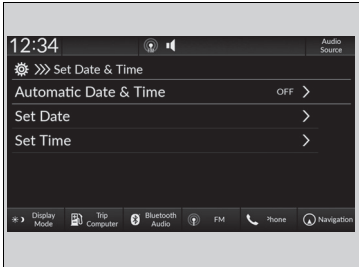


Select **Audio Source** in the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

Clock Setup

■ Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Date & Time**.
5. Select **Set Date & Time**.
6. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:
7. Select **Set Date**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the date.

To adjust time:
7. Select **Set Time**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the time.

Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

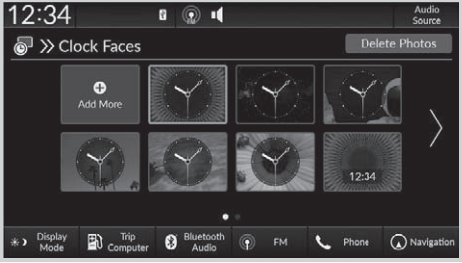
You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or **All Apps**.

1. Touch the clock on the screen.
   The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.
System P. 444

Features

■ Clock Wallpaper Setup



■ Import clock wallpaper*

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   USB Ports P. 391
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Clock**.
   ▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Clock Faces**.
6. Select **Add More**.
   ▶ The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive are displayed on the list.
7. Select a desired picture to import.
   ▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
8. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
9. Select **Transfer**.
   ▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Clock Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 720, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Select clock wallpaper**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select a desired picture to set.
▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
6. Select **Save**.
▶ The clock screen which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

■ **Delete clock wallpaper***

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Delete Photos**.
6. Select a desired picture to delete.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
7. Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
8. Select **Delete**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

 * Not available on all models

Adjusting the Sound

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select an audio source icon.
3. Select **Sound**.

Select an item from the following choices:
- **Bass / Treble:** Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*1]**:** Driver Only, Front Only, Rear Only, Full Vehicle, Balance, Fader
- **Bose Centerpoint**[*1]**:** Turns the Bose Centerpoint ON and OFF.
- **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*1]**:** Sets the amount of volume increase.
- **Balance / Fader**[*2]**:** Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation**[*2]**:** Sets the amount of volume increase.

*1: Models with BOSE AMP
*2: Models with Normal AMP

Adjusting the Sound

The **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*1]**/Speed Volume Compensation**[*2] (SVC) adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

Audio Zones & Balance / Fader[*1]
You can change where the sound comes from by selecting one of the speaker options below:
- **Full Vehicle:** All the speakers emit sound.
- **Driver Only:** Only the speaker by the driver's seat emits sound.
- **Front Only:** Only the front speakers emit sound.
- **Rear Only:** Only the rear speakers emit sound.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*1], **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*1], **Balance / Fader**[*2], and **Speed Volume Compensation**[*2], select **Default** on each setting screen.

Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness.

■ Switching Display Mode Manually

Select **Display Mode**.

▶ The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.

▶ Select or to adjust the brightness.

▶ Select **Display OFF** to turn off the screen. To turn on the screen, press the HOME or BACK button.

Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by sliding or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.

System Updates

The audio system's firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection, or with a USB device, or the telematics control unit (TCU)* through the subscription-based service.

■ How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

▶ The system will check for updates.

▶ If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon.

Status Area P. 401

3. Select **Download**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.

4. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that requires login or agreement to the terms of use on the browser.

Your download will be cancelled if:
- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You stop the engine when the battery is low on power.

Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established.

For the battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ System Updates Settings

You can change or confirm system update settings.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select the option you want to change or confirm.

The following settings can be set.

- **Automatic Download**
- **Version Status**
- **Connection Setup**
- **Update History**

How to Update Wirelessly

Wireless connection mode setup

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
8. Select **Connect**.

How to update

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **via Wireless**.
4. Select **Download**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
5. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

Continued

■ How to Update with a USB Device*

■ Download the update files from the server

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
▶ The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
➡ **USB Ports** P. 391
6. Remove the USB device from the USB port.
7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
▶ Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to *https://usb.honda.com* for instructions.

■ Update the audio system

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
▶ A notification appears on the screen.
➡ **USB Ports** P. 391
6. Select **Install Now**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device*

A USB device with a minimum of 8 GB of free space or more is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.

 * Not available on all models

Voice Control Operation*

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.
The voice control system uses the (Talk) button on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling.

Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
  The system recognises only certain commands.
  Available voice commands:
  Voice Portal Screen P. 412
- Close the windows and panoramic roof.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

Voice Control Operation*

When you press the button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

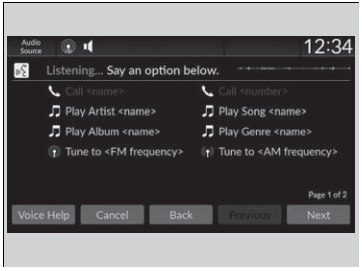
Voice Recognition

The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Voice Portal Screen



When the (talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.
For a complete list of commands, say "*Help*" after the beep.

Depending on the selected mode, the displayed commands are different on the voice portal screen. The commands recognised are the same regardless of which screen is selected.
Normal Mode: A list of example commands is displayed to quickly complete your desired function.
Assist Mode: A list of basic commands is displayed to guide you step by step through the voice menu.

You can change the mode on the **General Settings** screen.
Voice Control* P. 451

The system only recognises the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free-form voice commands are not recognised.

■ General Commands

When the voice portal screen is displayed, it will change to the top screen of each function by using the global commands.
- *Music Search*
- *AM*
- *FM*
- *Phone*
- *Navigation**

■ Phone Commands

When the system recognises a phone command, the screen will change to the dedicated phone voice recognition screen. These commands can only be used when a phone is connected.

■ Phone Commands
- *Call <name>*
- *Call <number>*

The system only recognises contact names stored in the phonebook of your phone. If a full name is registered in the first name field, the system will recognise the first name and last name as one contact name.

Phone commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

■ Audio Commands

When the system recognises an audio command, the screen will change to the dedicated audio voice recognition screen.

■ FM Commands
- *Tune to <FM frequency>*

■ AM Commands
- *Tune to <AM frequency>*

* Not available on all models

■ **iPod Commands**
- *List Album <name>*
- *List Artist <name>*
- *List Genre <name>*
- *List Playlist <name>*
- *Play <artist> <album>*
- *Play*
- *Play Album <name>*
- *Play Artist <name>*
- *Play Genre <name>*
- *Play Music <text:media_combo>*
- *Play Playlist <name>*
- *Play Song <name>*

■ **USB Commands**
- *List Album <name>*
- *List Artist <name>*
- *List Playlist <name>*
- *Play <artist> <album>*
- *Play*
- *Play Album <name>*
- *Play Artist <name>*
- *Play Music <text:media_combo>*
- *Play Playlist <name>*
- *Play Song <name>*

■ Navigation Commands*

The screen will change to the navigation screen when a navigation voice command is received.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

■ Standard Commands

- *Voice Help*
- *Cancel*
- *Back*

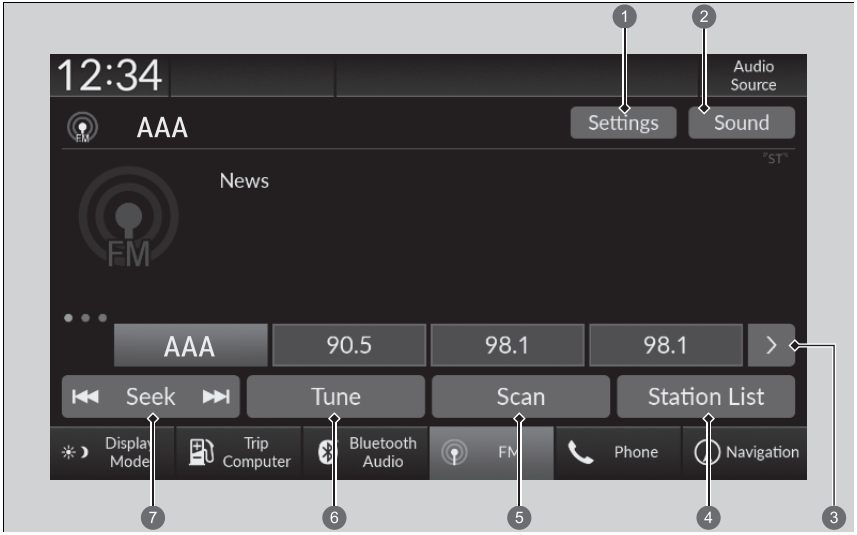
Voice Help provides guidance for the current screen.

■ List Commands

- *Previous*
- *Next*
- *Yes*
- *No*

* Not available on all models

Playing FM/AM Radio



❶ **Settings Icon***
❷ **Sound Icon**
❸ **Preset Icons**
❹ **Station List Icon**
❺ **Scan Icon**
❻ **Tune Icon**
❼ **Seek Icon**

* Not available on all models

■ Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can set a new preset station.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Stop** or press the BACK button.

■ Seek

Selects |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll the left selector wheel or select **Audio Source** on the screen.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 392

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

Continued

■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

Adjusting the Sound P. 405

■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Selects to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.



1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
3. Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

1 On-screen Keyboard

Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

◀/▶ icons:
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Traffic announcement (TA)

The TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode while the function is on. The last tuned station must be an RDS-capable traffic program station.

To turn the function on: Select **TA**. When a traffic announcement begins, the information screen appears on the audio/information screen. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

▶ If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, select **Stop**.

To turn the function off: Select **TA** again.

Radio Data System (RDS)*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Traffic announcement (TA)

The **TA** indicator appears on the header area while the TA standby function is on.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Selecting **TA** while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Settings*

Changes the RDS settings.

1. Select **Settings**.

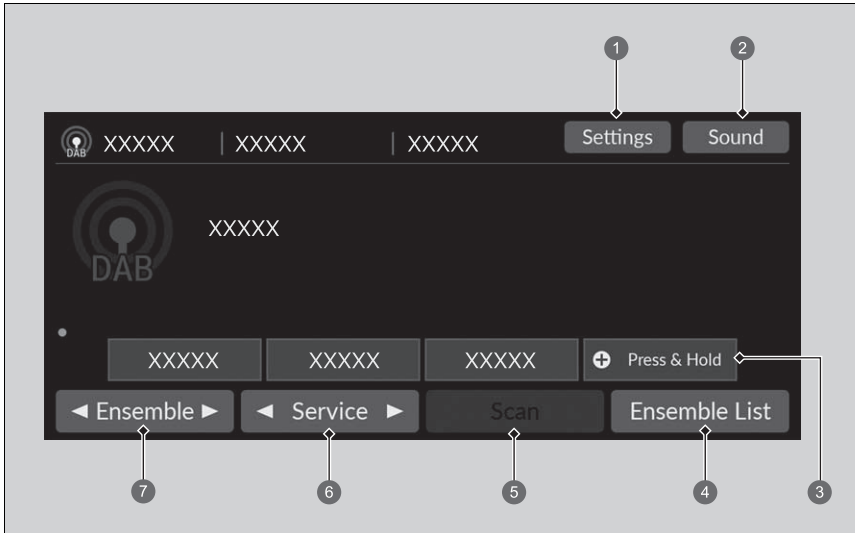
2. Select an option.

- **TA-Information:** Turns on and off the traffic information. (**ON**/**OFF**[*1])
- **AF:** Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same program you enter different regions. (**ON**/**OFF**[*1])
- **REG:** Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak. (**ON**[*1]/**OFF**)
- **NEWS:** Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news program. (**ON**/**OFF**[*1])

*1 : Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*



1. **Settings Icon**
2. **Sound Icon**
3. **Preset Icons**
4. **Ensemble List Icon**
5. **Scan Icon**
6. **Service Icons**
7. **Ensemble Icons**

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Preset Memory

Tunes the preset frequency.
To store a service:
1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can set a new preset station.

■ Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select the ensemble.

■ Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Ensemble

Tunes the ensemble.
1. Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the ensemble.
2. Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until a receivable ensemble is found.

■ Service

Tunes the service component.
To tune it, select ◀ or ▶.

Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll the left selector wheel or select **Audio Source** on the screen.
Audio Remote Controls P. 339

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Stop** or press the BACK button.

■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.
➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 340

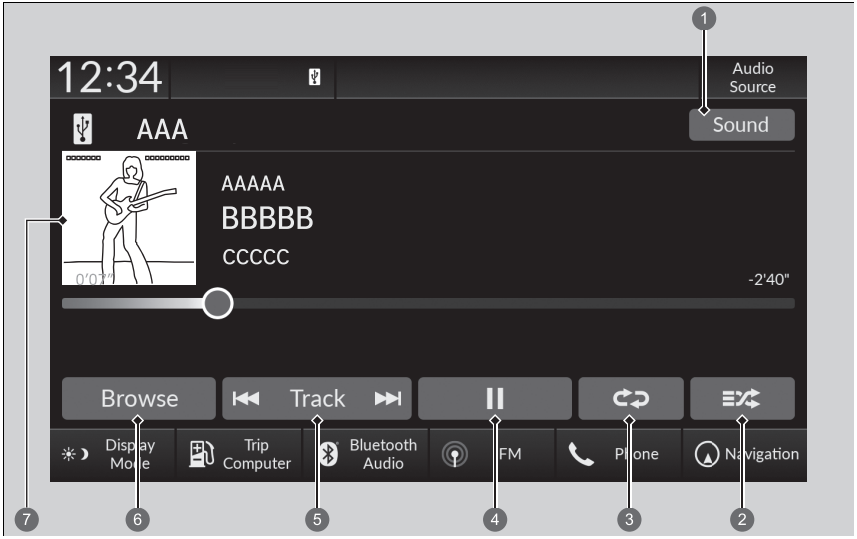
■ Settings

Changes the DAB settings.
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select the option you want to change.

Music Playback via Wired Connection*

Using your USB connector, connect the device to the USB charging/connector port, then select the USB icon.

USB Ports P. 391



1 Sound Icon
2 Shuffle Icon
3 Repeat Icon
4 Play/Pause Icon
5 Track Icons
6 Browse Icon
7 Cover Art

Music Playback via Wired Connection*

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

* Not available on all models

■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select a search category.

3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats all songs.

Continued

■ How to Change a Song

You can select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 405

Media Playback via USB Flash Drive*

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video* files on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port, then select the USB icon.

USB Ports P. 391



❶ **Settings Icon** (Playing a video)*
❷ **Sound Icon**
❸ **Random Icon**
❹ **Repeat Icon**
❺ **Play/Pause Icon**
❻ **Stop Icon** (Playing a video)*
❼ **Track/Video* Icons**
❽ **Browse Icon**
❾ **Cover Art** (Playing a music)/ **Mini Player** (Playing a video)*

Media Playback via USB Flash Drive*

You can use the following formats to play sound or video files on a USB flash drive.
When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC*1, FLAC, PCM/WAVE
When playing a video file*: MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select **Current Playlist**, **Music**, or **Video**.

3. Continue making selections until you find the file or video of your choice.

Media Playback via USB Flash Drive*

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➔ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 580

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

 * Not available on all models

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

■ Random/Repeat

Repeatedly select the random or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Random

(random off): Random mode to off.

(random all files): Plays all files in random order.

(random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat file): Repeats the current file.

(repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

■ When playing a video file*

/ : Select to shrink a video screen. Select to expand a video screen.

■ How to Change a File

Track/Video* Icons

You can select to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

Adjusting the Sound P. 405

■ Settings*

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

1. Select **Settings**.

2. Select an option.

- **Image Settings:** Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select **Default**. (**Brightness**/**Contrast**/**Black Level**/**Colour** (**Color**)/**Tint**).
- **Aspect Ratio:** Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original**/**Normal***1/**Full/Zoom**)
- **Overlay Clock Location:** Changes the clock display layout. (**Upper right** (**Upper Right**)*1/**Upper left** (**Upper Left**)/**Lower right** (**Lower Right**)/**Lower left** (**Lower Left**)/**OFF**)

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 470



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there is more than one paired phone in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the *Bluetooth*® device list.

Phone Setup P. 470

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto*, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone will be unavailable. However, if the other phone is connected to the system, it can be used as *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting the audio mode.

Phone Setup P. 470

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 470

2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat group): Repeats the current group.

(repeat all): Repeats all songs.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone manufacturer's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 470

■ Searching for Music

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Select an item.
▶ The selection begins playing.

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.
➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 405

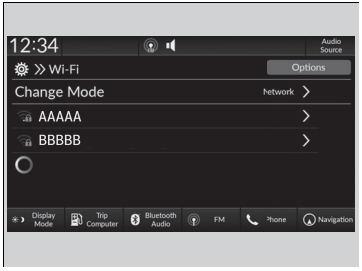
Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

■ Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
➡ **System Updates** P. 407
8. Select **Connect**.

■ Turning off the Wi-Fi connection

1. Select **Change Mode**.
2. Select **OFF**.

Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.
➡ **Status Area** P. 401

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB charging/connector port or wirelessly, you can use Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

USB Ports P. 391



1 Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay

We recommend that you update iOS to the latest version when using Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or Hands-Free Telephone (HFT). You can only make calls or listen to music through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT), turn Apple CarPlay OFF. Other previously paired phones can use the *Bluetooth*® Audio.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple website.

Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Apple CarPlay Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Apple CarPlay website. Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your iPhone.
Select the **Honda** icon on the Apple CarPlay menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations
Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple website for information on compatible apps.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable*

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB charging/connector port using the USB cable.
➡ **USB Ports** P. 391
▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
2. Select **Yes**.
▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the home screen

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Smartphone Connection**.
3. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
4. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 470
5. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

Apple CarPlay

Only initialize Apple CarPlay when you are safely parked.
When Apple CarPlay first detects your iPhone, you will need to set up your iPhone. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your iPhone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Apple CarPlay:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Apple CarPlay → Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the Apple CarPlay device list**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Smartphone Connection**.
4. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 470
7. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the *Bluetooth*® device list**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 470
7. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
8. Select **Connect**.
9. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly with the steering wheel**

1. Press and hold the (talk) button on the steering wheel.

2. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 470

3. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.

▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.

4. Select **Connect**.

5. Select **Yes**.

▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly at start-up (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.

2. Select **OK**.

▶ If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.

▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

3. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 470

4. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.

▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.

5. Select **Connect**.

6. Select **Yes**.

▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect.

Continued

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the (talk) button to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.
Press and release to activate voice tag dial*/standard voice recognition system*.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

 * Not available on all models

Android Auto™*

When you connect an Android™ phone to the audio system via the USB charging/ connector port, Android Auto is automatically initiated, and you can use Android Auto on the audio/information screen.

USB Ports P. 391

NOTE:

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.



❶ **Android Auto**

Android Auto™*

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto.

Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

Phone Setup P. 470

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

To use each of Android Auto's features: say a wake-up word while the Android Auto screen is displayed, or press and hold the (talk) button to activate Google Assistant.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition P. 442

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Android Auto Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Android Auto website. Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your smartphone.
Select the **Honda** icon on the Android Auto menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Android Auto™*

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto website.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto website for information on compatible apps.

 * Not available on all models

Enabling Android Auto

To enable Android Auto after connecting an Android phone to the USB charging/ connector port, select **Yes** on the screen.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Android Auto™*

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Android Auto after you have completed the initial setup:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Android Auto → Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press and release to activate voice tag dial*/standard voice recognition system*.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto website.

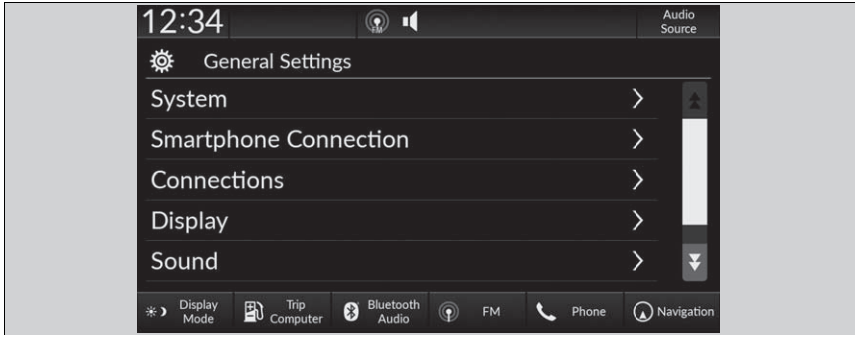
 * Not available on all models

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, and select a setting item.



- **System** ➡ P. 444
- **Smartphone Connection** ➡ P. 446
- **Connections** ➡ P. 447
- **Display** ➡ P. 448
- **Sound** ➡ P. 449
- **Camera** ➡ P. 450
- **Voice Control*** ➡ P. 451

Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **System**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Date & Time	**Set Date & Time**	**Automatic Date & Time**	Select **ON** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select **OFF** to cancel this function.	**ON/OFF**
		Set Date	Adjusts date. **Adjusting the Clock** P. 402	**Day/Month/Year**
		Set Time	Adjusts time. **Adjusting the Clock** P. 402	**Hour/Minute AM/PM**
	Time Zone*	**Automatic Time Zone***	Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	**ON/OFF**
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
	Auto Daylight Saving Time*		Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time.	**ON/OFF**
	Date Format		Select a date format.	**MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY/ YYYY/MM/DD**
	Time Format		Select a time format.	**12-H/24-H** (**12H/24H**)

 * Not available on all models

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Language		Changes the driver information interface and audio/information screen language separately.	**English** (United Kingdom)*1, **English** (United States)*1, or Arabic*1 Some languages may not be available in all regions. Check the audio/information screen for available options.
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**High/Normal**
System Volumes	**System Sounds**	Sets the system sound volume level.	—
	Text-to-Speech	Sets the text-to-speech volume level.	—
	Navigation Guidance	Sets the navigation guidance volume level.	—
	Phone Calls	Sets the phone call volume level.	—
	Default	Resets all **System Volumes** settings to default values.	
Refuel Recommend*		Turns the refuel recommend function on and off. **Refuel Recommend*** P. 483	**ON/OFF**

*1:The default setting varies depending on the model.

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
About	**Status**	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	Legal Information		
	Model Number		
	Android Version		
	Kernel Version		
	Build Number		
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 462	**Continue/Cancel**
Detail Information	**App Manager**	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	—

■ **Smartphone Connection**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Apple CarPlay	**+ Connect New Device**	Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 470	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 470	—
Android Auto	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 470	—

■ **Connections**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Wi-Fi	**Change Mode**		Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	**Network/ Smartphone**[*1]**/OFF**
	(Available Networks/Connected Devices)		Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	—
	Options	**Add Network**	Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi.	—
		Saved Networks	Saves the connected network.	—
Bluetooth	**Options**	**Bluetooth**	Turns *Bluetooth*® on and off.	**ON/OFF**
		Priority Device	Displays the priority device.	—
	+ Connect New Device		Pairs a new phone to HFT. **Phone Setup** P. 470	—
	(Saved Devices)		Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. **Phone Setup** P. 470	—

*1:Appears only when Apple CarPlay is connected wirelessly.

■ **Display**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—

■ **Sound**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bass / Treble	**Treble**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 405	—
	Midrange		
	Bass		
Audio Zones & Balance / Fader[*1]			
Bose Centerpoint[*1]			
Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation[*1]			
Balance / Fader[*2]			
Speed Volume Compensation[*2]			

*1:Models with BOSE AMP
*2:Models with Normal AMP

■ **Camera**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Rear Camera*	**Fixed Guideline**	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 789	**ON/OFF**
	Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 789	**ON/OFF**
LaneWatch*	**Show with indicator** (**Show with turn signal**)	Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a left*1/right*2 turn. ➡ **LaneWatch*** P. 669	**ON/OFF**
	Display Time after Indicator Off (**Display Time after Turn Signal Off**)	Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the centre. ➡ **LaneWatch*** P. 669	**0 seconds/2 seconds**
	Show Reference Line	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor. ➡ **LaneWatch*** P. 669	**ON/OFF**

*1:Right-hand Drive Type
*2:Left-hand Drive Type

 * Not available on all models

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Multi View Camera*	**Guidelines**	**Fixed Guideline**	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Camera*** P. 791	**ON/OFF**
		Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Camera*** P. 791	**ON/OFF**
	Customise	**Show after shifting from Reverse**	Selects whether to display the forward camera image after shifting from R to D.	**ON/OFF**
		Auto display when obstacle is detected*1	Displays the forward camera image when a parking sensor detects an obstacle.	**ON/OFF**
Cross Traffic Monitor*			Shows arrows on the rear camera image to indicate vehicles approaching from the sides. ➡ **Cross Traffic Monitor*** P. 785	**ON/OFF**

*1:This customizable feature is effective for vehicles equipped with the Multi-View Camera, the front corner and front centre sensors.

■ **Voice Control***

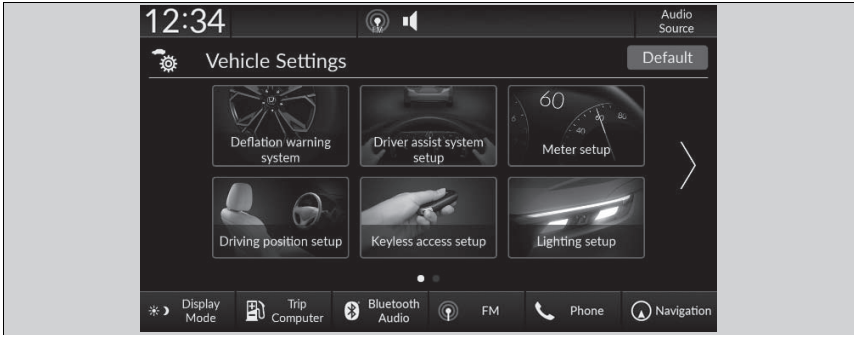
Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Voice Control Mode	Selects a mode of the voice portal screen. ➡ **Voice Control Operation*** P. 411	**Assist/Normal**

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Vehicle Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **Deflation warning system** (**TPMS Calibration**)* ➡ P. 453
- **Driver assist system setup** (**Driver Assist System Setup**) ➡ P. 453
- **Meter setup** (**Meter Setup**) ➡ P. 455
- **Driving position setup*** ➡ P. 457
- **Keyless access setup** (**Keyless Access Setup**) ➡ P. 458
- **Lighting setup** (**Lighting Setup**) ➡ P. 459
- **Door/window setup** (**Door/Window Setup**) ➡ P. 460
- **Power tailgate setup*** ➡ P. 461
- **Maintenance info.** (**Maintenance Info.**) ➡ P. 461

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

If **Vehicle Settings** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**. You can change the displayed icons on the home screen.

➡ **App Shortcut Function** P. 396

* Not available on all models

■ **Deflation warning system (TPMS Calibration)***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation warning system (**TPMS Calibration**)	Cancels/Calibrates Deflation Warning System. ➡ **Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)** P. 656 ➡ **Deflation Warning System*** P. 659	**Calibrate/Cancel**

■ **Driver assist system setup (Driver Assist System Setup)**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance (**Forward Collision Warning Distance**)	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 677	**Far/Normal*1/Near** (**Long/Normal*1/Short**)
Head-up warning*	Turn On/Off warning light for head-up flash alert.	**ON*1/OFF**
ACC vehicle ahead detected beep (**ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep**)	Turns audible notification On/Off when vehicle has moved in/out of Adaptive Cruise Control with Low Speed Follow range. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 707	**ON/OFF*1**
Lead car departure notification system (**Lead Car Departure Notification System**)*	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system. ➡ **Lead Car Departure Notification System*** P. 751	**Normal*1/Early/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Road departure mitigation setting (**Road Departure Mitigation Setting**)	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 697	Oceanian models **Early/Normal/Delayed**[*1] Except Oceanian models **Early/Normal**[*1]**/Delayed/ Warning only** (**Narrow/Normal**[*1]**/Wide/ Warning Only**)
Lane keep assist beep (**Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep**)	Switches the LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist* suspend alert beeps on and off. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 729 ➡ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 742	**ON/OFF**[*1]
Blind spot information (**Blind Spot Info**)*	Selects On/Off the blind spot information system audible alert. ➡ **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 665	**Audible and visual alert**[*1]**/ Visual alert only** (**Audible And Visual Alert**[*1]**/Visual Alert**)
Traffic sign recognition system display*	Displays the traffic sign recognition system on the instrument panel. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 756	**Display**[*1]**/None**
Traffic sign recognition system over speed warning*	Enables over speed limit warning when speed limit is exceeded. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 756	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Driver attention monitor (**Driver Attention Monitor**)	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor. ➡ **Driver Attention Monitor** P. 173, 202	**OFF/Tactile alert only/ Tactile and audible alert**[*1] (**OFF/Tactile Alert/Tactile And Audible Alert**[*1])

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Rear sensor setting (**Rear Sensor Setting**)*	Turns the rear parking sensor ON or OFF. This selection will also affect the rear Low Speed Braking Control if equipped. ➡ **Parking Sensor System** P. 779 ➡ **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 691	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Meter setup (Meter Setup)**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust outside temp. display (**Adjust Outside Temp. Display**)	Selects to adjust outside temperature reading by a few degrees. ➡ **Outside Temperature** P. 162	**-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C**
Trip A reset timing (**"Trip A" Reset Timing**)	Selects the timing to reset Trip A. ➡ **Range/Fuel/Trip Meter** P. 167, 196 ➡ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 169, 198	**When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1] (**When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually Reset**[*1])
Trip B reset timing (**"Trip B" Reset Timing**)	Selects the timing to reset Trip B. ➡ **Range/Fuel/Trip Meter** P. 167, 196 ➡ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 169, 198	**When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1] (**When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually Reset**[*1])

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Alarm volume control (**Adjust Alarm Volume**)	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning and indicator.	**Max**/**Mid**[*1]/**Min** (**High**/**Mid**[*1]/**Low**)
Fuel efficiency backlight (**Fuel Efficiency Backlight**)	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**
Turn by turn display (**Turn By Turn Auto Display**)	Turns the pop-up warning ON/OFF in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface or head-up display*. ➡ **Turn-by-Turn Directions** P. 171, 200	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**
Fuel economy unit (**Fuel Economy Unit**)*	Selects the fuel consumption units.	Except Vietnamese models **km/l**[*1]/**l/100km** Vietnamese models **km/l**/**l/100km**[*1]
Tachometer*	Selects whether the tachometer come on the driver information interface.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**
Rear seat reminder (**Rear Seat Reminder**)	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

■ **Driving position setup***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Memory position link	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	**ON***1**/OFF**
Seat Position Movement At Entry/Exit	Moves the seat rearward when you get in/get out of the vehicle. Changes the setting for this feature.	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

■ **Keyless access setup (Keyless Access Setup)**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless access beep volume (**Keyless Access Beep Volume**)	Changes the beep volume of unlocking /locking the doors.	**Max**[*1]/**Min** (**High**[*1]/**Low**)
Keyless access light flash (**Keyless Access Light Flash**)	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**
Keyless access beep (**Keyless Access Beep**)	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**
Remote start system ON/OFF (**Remote Start System ON/OFF**)*	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

■ **Lighting setup (Lighting Setup)**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High Beam	Turns on/off auto high beam function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Interior light dimmer duration (**Interior Light Dimming Time**)	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. ➡ **Interior Lights** P. 303	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
Headlight auto OFF timer (**Headlight Auto OFF Timer**)	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. ➡ **Automatic Lighting Off Feature** P. 263	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**
Headlight integration with wipers (**Auto Headlight On with Wiper On**)	Selects On/Off headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in **AUTO** setting. ➡ **Headlight Integration with Wipers** P. 263	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Door/window setup (Door/Window Setup)**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto door lock (**Auto Door Lock**)*	Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature.	**OFF/With vehicle speed***1/**Shift from P** (**OFF/With Vehicle Speed***1/**Shift From P**)
Auto door unlock (**Auto Door Unlock**)*	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	**OFF/Shift to P***1/**When ignition is turned OFF** (**OFF/Shift To P***1/**IGN OFF**)
Walk away lock (**Walk Away Auto Lock**)	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	**ON/OFF***1
Lock presetting	Turns on/off the lock presetting function.	**ON***1/**OFF**
Keyless lock notification (**Keyless Lock Answer Back**)	Turns on/off flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/unlocked by keyless remote. ➡ **Using the Remote Transmitter** P. 229	**ON***1/**OFF**
Auto folding door mirror (**Auto Folding Door Mirror**)*	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	**ON***1/**OFF**
Remote Window Control*	Turns the remote window control on and off.	**ON***1/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

■ **Power tailgate setup***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless open mode	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	**Anytime**[*1]**/When unlocked**
Power open by outer handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	**ON (Power/Manual)**[*1]**/OFF (Manual only)**
Hands free access*	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Maintenance info. (Maintenance Info.)**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Maintenance info. (**Maintenance Info.**)	Resets the maintenance information. ➡ **Oil Monitor System** P. 815	**Reset**

* Not available on all models

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

■ Defaulting General Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue**.
6. Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
▶ The system will reboot.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Default**.
4. Select **Yes**.

Defaulting All the Settings

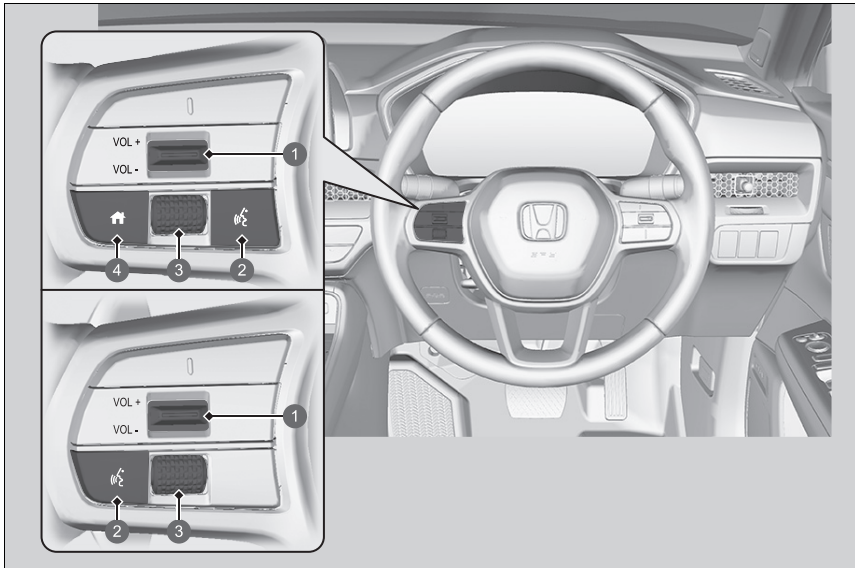
When you transfer the vehicle to a third-party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

HFT Buttons



❶ **VOL** ＋/**VOL** － (Volume) Switch
❷ (Talk) Button
❸ Left Selector Wheel
❹ (Home) Button*1

*1: Models with A-type meter

* Not available on all models

Continued

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**.

Phone Setup P. 470

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag*, a phonebook name* or a number*. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

If there is no Favourite contacts entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

Favourite Contacts P. 475

(Talk) button: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag* or to access Voice Portal*.

(Home) button*1: Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Left Selector Wheel: Press the (Home) button*1. Roll up or down to select (phone) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel. While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call P. 481

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

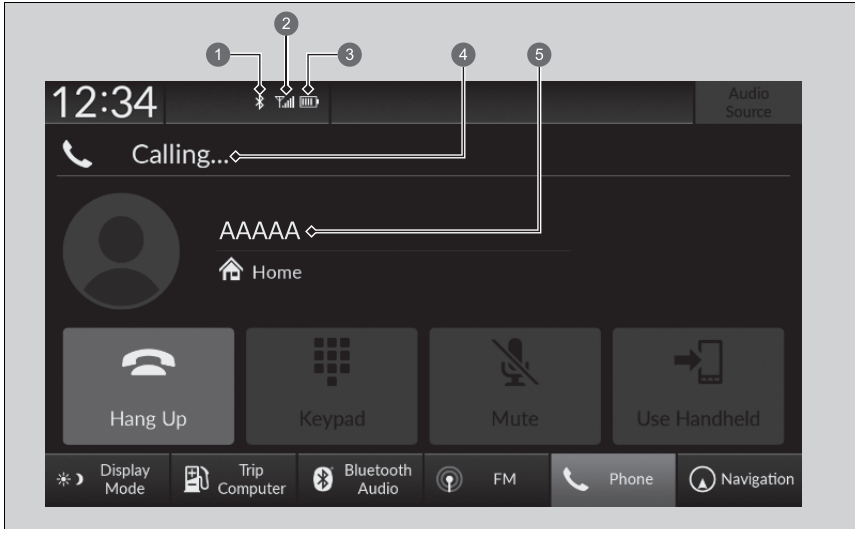
An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

*1: Models with A-type meter

* Not available on all models

■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



❶ *Bluetooth*® Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
❷ Signal Strength
❸ Battery Level Status
❹ HFT Mode
❺ Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

Continued

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored Favourite contacts entries with voice tags*, phonebook names*, or numbers* can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➲ **Favourite Contacts** P. 475

 * Not available on all models

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.



❶ Settings
❷ Recent calls (**Recent Calls**)
❸ Favourite contacts (**Favorite Contacts**)
❹ Contacts
❺ Keypad

HFT Menus

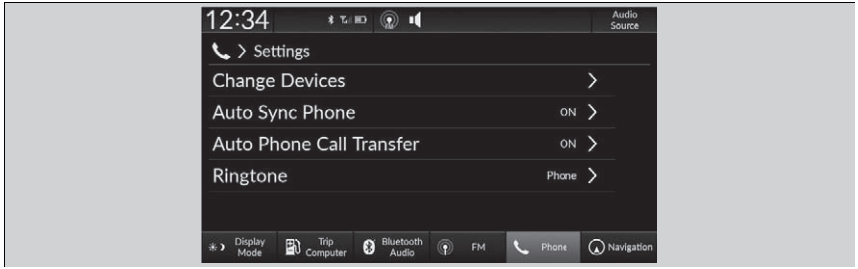
Some functions are limited while driving.

Continued

Settings: Changes the phone settings.
➡ **Phone Settings Screen** P. 469
Recent calls (Recent Calls): Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
➡ **To make a call using the recent calls** P. 479
Favourite contacts (Favorite Contacts): Dials the selected number in the Favourite contacts entry.
➡ **To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry** P. 479
Contacts: Displays the phonebook of the paired phone.
➡ **To make a call using the imported phonebook** P. 480
Keypad: Enters a phone number to dial.
➡ **To make a call using a phone number** P. 480

Phone Settings Screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.



Change Devices: Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

Phone Setup P. 470

Auto Sync Phone: Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls P. 473

Auto Phone Call Transfer: Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

Automatic Transferring P. 474

Ringtone: Selects the ringtone.

Ringtone P. 474

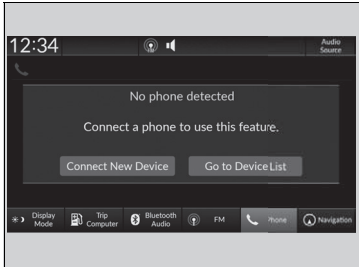
Continued

■ Phone Setup

■ *Bluetooth*® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.



■ **To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Connect New Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone matches.
   This may vary by a phone.
6. Select desired functions and then select **Connect**.
7. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
8. Select **OK**.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with the following icons.

: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

: The phone can be used with HFT.

: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto*, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*® compatible devices is unavailable.

* Not available on all models

Continued



■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone to connect.
   - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
   - ▶ You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
5. Select (audio), (phone), or (Apple CarPlay).
   - ▶ and can be selected simultaneously, however, when is selected, and cannot be selected.
6. Select **Apply**.



■ To delete a paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

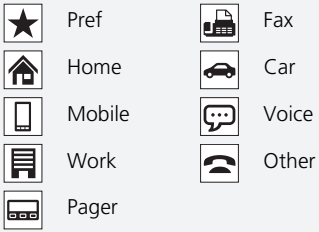
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and recent calls are automatically imported to the system.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Sync Phone**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

On some phones, it is necessary to set up it enabled to be imported the mobile phonebook.

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Recent calls are updated after every connection or call.

Continued

■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

■ Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.

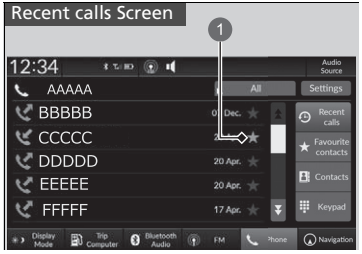
1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Ringtone**.
4. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.
▶ The default setting is **Phone**.

Ringtone

Vehicle: The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.
Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

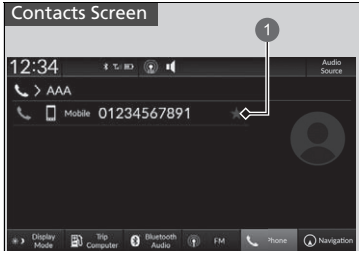
■ Favourite Contacts

Recent calls Screen



1 Star Icon

Contacts Screen



1 Star Icon

■ To add a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**), **Contacts**, or **Keypad**.

On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

3. Select the star icon.

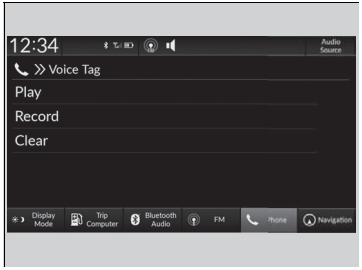
On the Keypad screen

3. Select **Add to Favourite Contacts** (**Add to Favorite Contacts**).
   - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the Favourite contacts is successfully stored.
   - ▶ To remove the Favourite contacts, select the star icon again.

Continued



❶ **Add to Favourite Contacts (Add to Favorite Contacts)**



Models without voice control system

■ **To add a voice tag to a stored Favourite contacts entry**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Record**.
6. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

Models without voice control system

■ **To delete a voice tag**

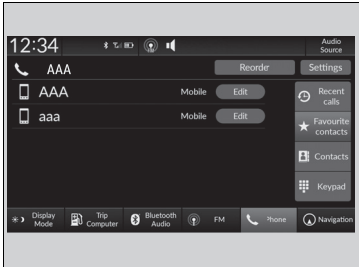
1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Clear**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Favourite Contacts

Models without voice control system

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "*home*" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.
For example, use "*John Smith*" instead of "*John*."

Continued



■ **To edit a Favourite contacts**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Done**.

■ **To delete a Favourite contacts**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

■ Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**), **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**), and **Contacts** entries.

■ To make a call using the recent calls

Recent calls are stored by **All**, **Dialled** (**Dialed**), **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Select **Phone**.

2. Select **Recent calls** (**Recent Calls**).

▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled** (**Dialed**), **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.

3. Select a number.

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

1. Select **Phone**.

2. Select **Favourite contacts** (**Favorite Contacts**).

▶ You can change the order of Favourite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.

3. Select a number.

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

Continued

Making a Call

Models without voice control system

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from most screens.
Press the button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

To make a call using the recent calls

The recent calls appear only when a phone is connected to the system.

All: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
Dialled (Dialed): Displays the last outgoing calls.
Missed: Displays the last missed calls.
Received: Displays the last incoming calls.

To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

Models without voice control system

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.
➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 475

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from any screen.
Press the button and follow the prompts.

■ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
▶ You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname** (**Last Name**). Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ **To make a call using a phone number**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.
To pick up the call, roll up or down to select (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting
Select (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

Select (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Select if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of and on the driver information interface.

Continued

■ Options During a Call



The following options are available during a call.
Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Use Handheld: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

Refuel Recommend*

Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically calculates when to refuel. This feature will notify you when refueling is recommended as well as enable you to search for gas stations that are located in the vicinity of your vehicle.



1. When it is time to refuel the vehicle, a notification is displayed and a notification icon is displayed in the header.
2. Touch the box that contains the icon.
3. Select **Find Petrol Station Now** (**Find Gas Station Now**).
4. Choose a gas station from the search screen of the navigation system.
   ▶ For instructions on how to use the navigation system, refer to the navigation system manual.

1 Notification Icon

* Not available on all models

Refuel Recommend*

You can turn the Refuel Recommend function on and off.

Customized Features P. 443

When you turn off this feature, the refuel recommend notification will not display.

This feature can only be used when the gas tank fuel level is below 30 percent.

If you select **Find Petrol Station Now** (**Find Gas Station Now**) or put more than 5 liters of gasoline into the gas tank, the notification for refueling will disappear. If you prefer not to be notified, select OFF in the settings for Refuel Recommend.

When you drive on a rough road or ascend or descend a hill for an extended period of time, the notification may disappear or may not be displayed at all.

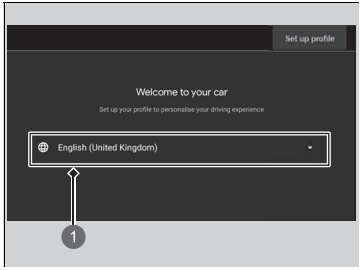
Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the disclaimer screen will be displayed. When adding a new user, entry of user information is required at start-up.

Select **OK** on the disclaimer screen.

- ▶ If you do not select **OK**, the system will automatically be display off after a certain period of time.
- ▶ If there is no registered device, select **OK** and the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.
- ▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

■ Registering new user information.



❶ Language List

1. Read the disclaimer screen and select **OK**.
2. Select **Set up profile**.
▶ If you want to change the language, select the language list.
3. Name your profile and select **Next**.
4. You can view the terms and conditions of the Google Services agreement.
5. On the System-wide permission Settings screen, select the data you give permission for the system to access, and select **Accept**.
6. Select **Done for now**.
▶ By selecting **Profile lock**, you can set security settings for your profile.
▶ By selecting **Set up Google Assistant and apps**, you can customize settings related to Google.
An internet connection is required to change settings.
➔ **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 524

Registering new user information.

Refer to the Google website for more information on set up profile.

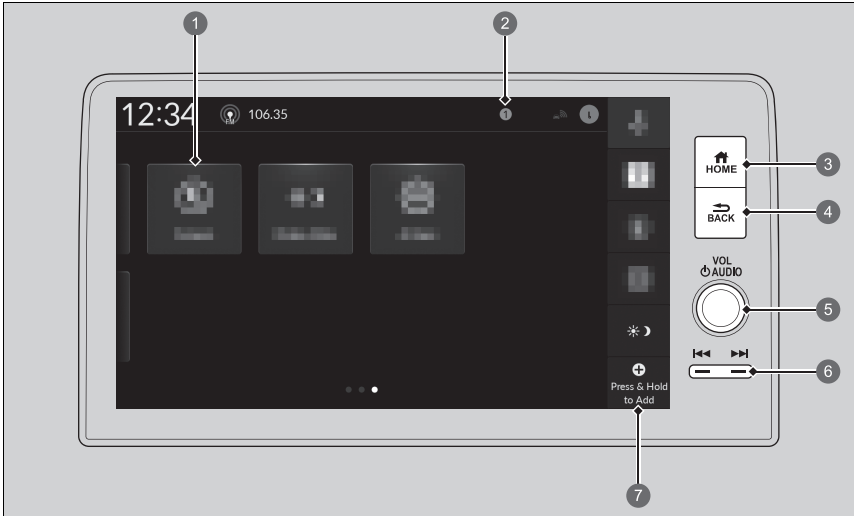
Additional information for Google Apps and Services is available at Honda website.

Specifications may be changed via system updates, etc.

Basic Operation

■ Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



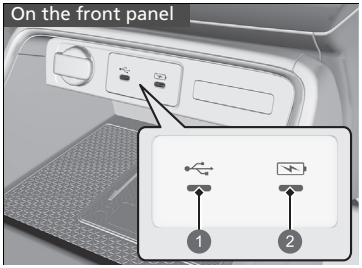
❶ App Shortcut Icons
Display the app shortcut icons.
▶ You can check all apps installed on this system by selecting **All Apps**.
Audio/Information Screen P. 492
❷ Status Icons
Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc.
❸ **(Home) Button**
❹ **(Back) Button**
❺ **VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob**
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to increase or decrease the volume.
❻ **(Seek/Track) Buttons**
Press to change station, song or file.
❼ Mode Change Switch Icons
Display icons to change the mode directly.

■ Reboot Audio

You can reboot the audio system.
1. Press and hold the button until the reboot dialog screen appears.
2. Select **Reboot**.
▶ If **Safe Mode** is selected, the audio system will be rebooted with third-party applications turned off.
After the power mode has been turned off once, third-party applications can be used again.

Continued

■ USB Ports



❶ Playing audio files and connecting compatible phones
❷ Only for charging devices

■ USB Charging/Connector Port ( )

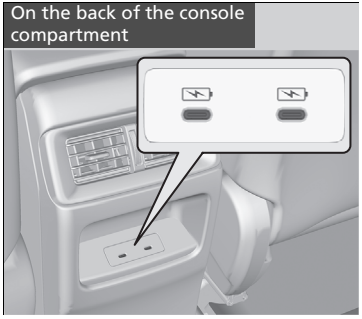
The USB port is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay. For Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

■ USB Charging Port on the front panel ( )

The USB port is only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.



■ USB Charging Port on the back of the console compartment ( )

The USB ports (3.0A) are only for charging devices.

▶ The USB port can supply up to 3.0A of power. It does not output 3.0A unless requested by the device.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.

USB Ports

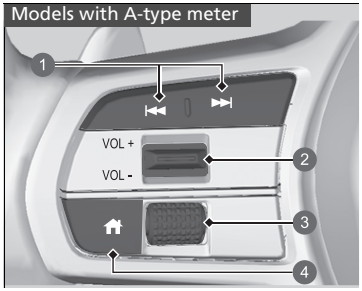
- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.
- Some devices may not work even if they are connected to the USB ports.

Supplementary information about USB Charging:

- The USB ports on the front panel support USB Power Delivery.
- USB standard output
  When using 1 port: 5V/3A(15W), 9V/3A(27W), 15V/3A(45W), 20V/3A(60W)
  When using both ports: 5V/3A(15W), 9V/3A(27W), 20V/2.25A(45W), Max 60W in total
  For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.
- The USB port also supports PPS (Programmable Power Supply). PPS 5.0V-21V (Max 60W).
- Charging may not start or may operate slowly depending on the connected devices and cables. Using only one port while not connecting anything (including cables) to the other port may solve the issue.

Audio Remote Controls

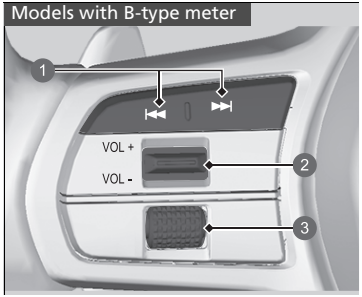
Models with A-type meter



Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

❶ |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❷ **VOL** + **/VOL** − (Volume) Switch
❸ Left Selector Wheel
❹ ⌂ (Home) Button

Models with B-type meter



❶ |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❷ **VOL** + **/VOL** − (Volume) Switch
❸ Left Selector Wheel

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Models with A-type meter

Press the ⌂ (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Continued

VOL ＋/VOL － (Volume) Switch
Press Up: To increase the volume.
Press Down: To decrease the volume.

Models with A-type meter

Left Selector Wheel

- When selecting the audio mode

Press the ⌂ (home) button, then roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Roll up or down:
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel.

Models with B-type meter

Left Selector Wheel

Roll up or down:

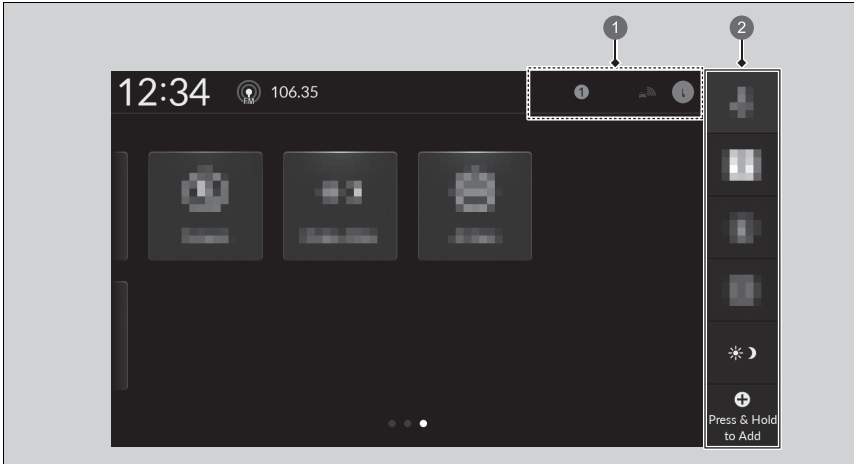
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel.

|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press |▶▶|: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press |◀◀|: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold |◀◀|: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  ▶ Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
  Press |▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press |◀◀|: To go back to the previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold |◀◀|: To go back to the previous folder.

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.



❶ Status Bar
❷ Mode Change Switch Bar

Audio/Information Screen

Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed-out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

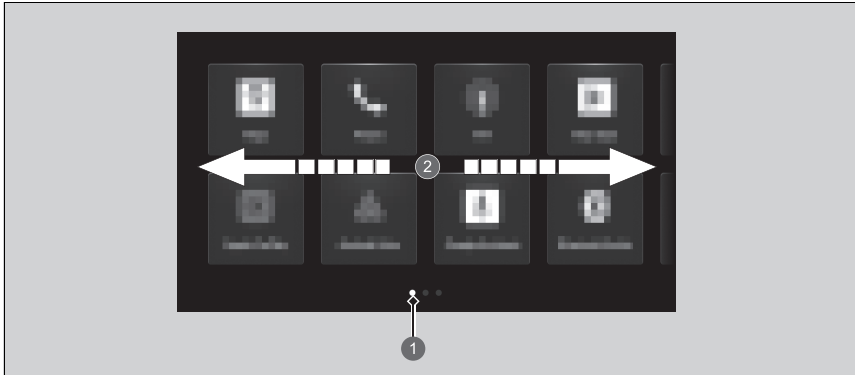
You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.
Customized Features P. 540

Mode Change Switch Bar

You can also select any application from the Mode Change Switch bar. Shortcuts can be edited to open other applications; however, **Google Assistant** cannot be edited.

■ To move to the next screen

Swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.



❶ Current page position
❷ Swipe

To move to the next screen

You can add up to six pages to the home screen.

Press the HOME button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

Continued

■ To add/remove app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added or deleted on the home screen.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **All Apps**.

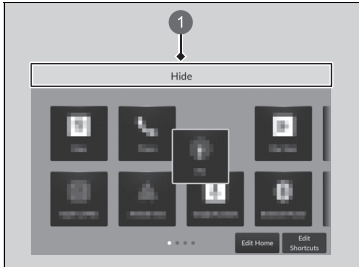
3. Select an app to check or uncheck it.

To add/remove app icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

■ To move/remove icons on the home screen

You can change icon locations on the home screen.



❶ Hide

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
▶ Drag and drop the icon to **Hide** to remove from the home screen.
4. Press the HOME or BACK button.
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To move/remove icons on the home screen

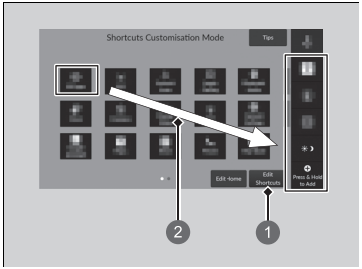
Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to five icons on the mode change switch bar.



❶ **Edit Shortcuts**
❷ Drag and Drop

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Select **Edit Shortcuts**.
4. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the right of the home screen.
▶ The icon is a shortcut.
5. Press the HOME or BACK button.
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

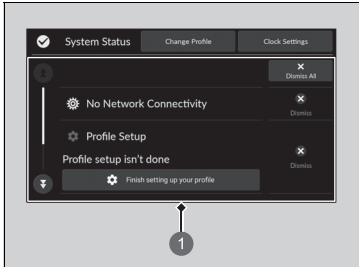
To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

You can also store icons on the mode change switch bar by the following procedure.
1. Select and hold an icon.
2. Select **Edit Shortcuts**.
3. Select an icon.
4. Select shortcut location.
5. Press the HOME or BACK button.

Status Bar

Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.



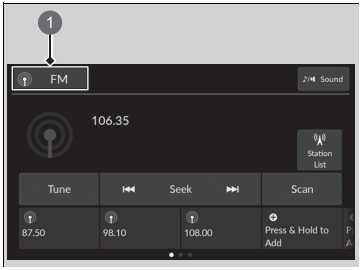
1. Select the Status Bar.
   ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the HOME or BACK button.

1 Status Area

Continued

■ Selecting an Audio Source

You can select an audio source on the audio/information screen.



1. Select application icon of the audio/ information screen.
2. Select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

1 Application Icon

Clock Setup

■ Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Date & Time**.
5. Select **Set Date & Time**.
6. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:
7. Select **Set Date**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Press the BACK button to set the date.

To adjust time:
7. Select **Set Time**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Press the BACK button to set the time.

Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or **All Apps**.

1. Touch the clock on the screen.
   The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Menu**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
8. Press the BACK button to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.
➡ **System** P. 541

Continued

■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   USB Ports P. 488
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Menu**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Add More**.
6. Import a desired picture.
   ▶ Multiple pictures can be imported at the same time.
7. Select **Select Files**.
8. Select **Add Files**.
   ▶ The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Clock**.
2. Select **Menu**.
3. Select **Clock Faces**.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
5. Select **Save**.
   ▶ The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

Wallpaper Setup

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock Faces** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- Up to 21 pictures can be imported.
- The individual file size limit is 10 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

■ **Delete wallpaper**

1. Select **Clock**.
2. Select **Menu**.
3. Select **Clock Faces**.
4. Select **Delete Files**.
5. Select **Select Files to Delete**.
▶ If you want to delete all wallpapers, select **Delete All Files**.
6. Select a desired wallpaper.
7. Select **Select Files**.
8. Select **Delete Files**.
▶ The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

Delete wallpaper

You cannot delete the initial imported wallpapers.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Adjusting the Sound

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select an audio source icon.
3. Select **Sound**.
4. Select the setting you want.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Speed Volume Compensation**[*2]: Sets the amount of volume increase.
- **Bass / Mid / Treble**: Bass, Midrange, Treble
- **Balance / Fader**[*2]: Balance, Fade
- **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*1]: Driver Only, Front Only, Rear Only, Full Vehicle, Balance, Fader
- **Bose Centerpoint Surround**[*1]: Turns the Bose Centerpoint ON and OFF.
- **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*1]: Sets the amount of volume increase.

*1: Models with BOSE AMP
*2: Models with Normal AMP

Adjusting the Sound

The **Speed Volume Compensation**[*2] and **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*1] adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Mid / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**[*2], **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*1], **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*1], and **Speed Volume Compensation**[*2] select **Reset to Default** in each setting item.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness of the audio/information screen.

■ Changing the Screen Brightness

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

To reset the settings, select **Reset to Default**.

System Updates

When an update for your system becomes available, a screen prompting you to update your system will be displayed on the audio/information screen.
System Updates uses the telematics control unit (TCU) or Wi-Fi communication capability to operate.

System Updates

If new software has been released, perform an update as soon as possible.

If a system update fails, please consult a dealer.

System updates that change specifications may result in some discrepancies with the information in this owner's manual. For the most up-to-date information, please refer to the Honda website.

Certain features may not be available during system updates.

■ Performing System Updates

1. Select **System Updates**.
2. Select **Agree to Update while power mode is OFF** to give permission for the update.
▶ The installation progress screen will be displayed.
▶ While the power mode is set to OFF, an update started notification appears for a few seconds.
3. The next time the power mode is turned to ON, the system update results screen will be displayed.
▶ System update results can also be viewed from **Settings → Update History** within System Update.

Performing System Updates

Make sure your vehicle is stopped in a safe location before starting a system update.

If you have pressed **Agree to Update while power mode is OFF** on the agreement screen when an update is being offered, or **Automatic Update** is set to **ON**, and the update started notification is not displayed even though the power mode is set to OFF, it may be due to one or more of the conditions listed below. For more information, consult a dealer.
- The shift position is not in P.
- The vehicle is providing one or more emergency notifications.
- The battery is depleted.

If the system is being updated via Wi-Fi, you will not be able to use this feature in some situations based on Wi-Fi authentication methods.
For example:
- The connection requires you to log in.
- Agreement to terms of use is required.

If you are disconnected from the network, the download will be stopped.
Download is resumed when a new network connection is established.

Continued

■ System Updates Settings

You can change or confirm system update settings.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select the option you want to change or confirm.

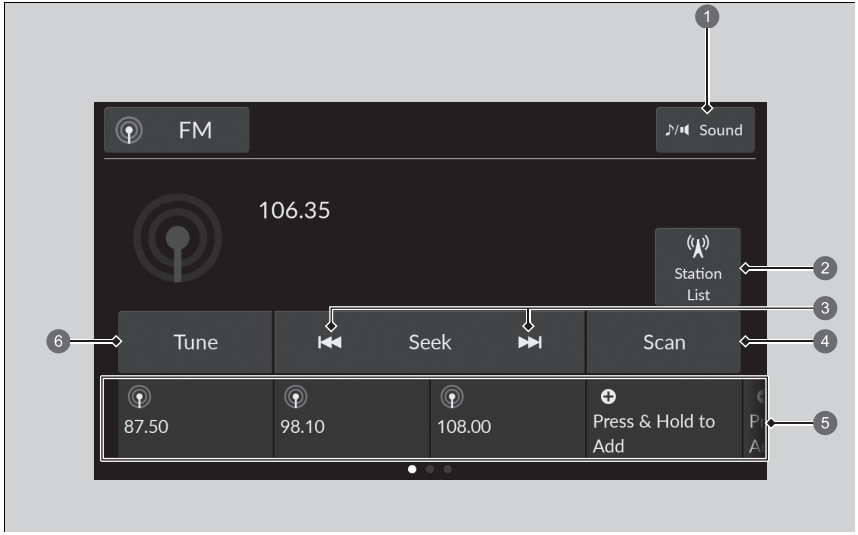
The following settings can be set.

- **Automatic Update**
- **Automatic Download**
- **Control Unit Versions**
- **Connection Setup**
  Wi-Fi Connection P. 524
- **Update History**

System Updates Settings

To perform a system update via Wi-Fi, change settings for connecting to Wi-Fi.
Wi-Fi Connection P. 524

Playing AM/FM Radio



1. **Sound Icon**
2. **Station List Icon**
3. **Seek Icon**
4. **Scan Icon**
5. **Favourite Station Icons**
6. **Tune Icon**

Continued

■ Favourite Station

To add a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold **Press & Hold to Add**.

■ Editing a favourite station

Select and hold the desired favourite station icon.
The following items are available:

- **Remove Favourite**: Delete the favourite station icon from the favourite station list.
- **Replace with** (number): Replace the stored favourite station icon.
- **Add to Home**: Add the shortcut icon of the stored favourite station to the home screen.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

Favourite Station

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll the left selector wheel or select the audio source icon on the screen.
Audio Remote Controls P. 489

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Stop** or press the BACK button.

■ Seek

Selects |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Selects to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.

1. Select **Tune**.

2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.

3. Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

1. Select **Sound**.

Adjusting the Sound P. 502

Continued

■ Radio Data System (RDS)*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Traffic announcement (TA)

The TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode while the function is on. The last tuned station must be an RDS-capable traffic program station.

To turn the function on: Select **TA**. When a traffic announcement begins, the information screen appears on the audio/information screen. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

▶ If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, select **Stop**.

To turn the function off: Select **TA** again.

Radio Data System (RDS)*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Traffic announcement (TA)

The **TA** indicator appears on the header area while the TA standby function is on.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Selecting **TA** while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

 * Not available on all models

■ Menu

Adjusts the sound settings and changes the RDS* settings.

1. Select **Menu**.

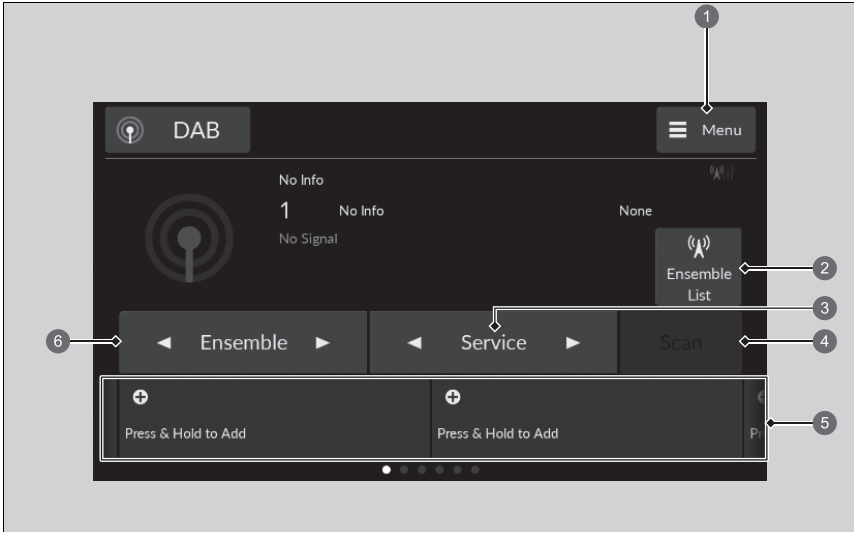
2. Select an option.

- **Sound Settings:** Adjusts the sound settings
  Adjusting the Sound P. 502
- **TA-Information*:** Turns on and off the traffic information. (**ON**/**OFF***1)
- **AF*:** Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same program you enter different regions. (**ON**/**OFF***1)
- **REG*:** Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak. (**ON***1/**OFF**)
- **NEWS*:** Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news program. (**ON**/**OFF***1)

*1 : Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*1



❶ **Menu Icon**
❷ **Ensemble List Icon**
❸ **Service Icon**
❹ **Scan Icon**
❺ **Favourite Station Icons**
❻ **Ensemble Icon**

*1: This feature is not available in some countries or regions.

■ Preset Memory

To store a service:
1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold **Press & Hold to Add**.

■ Ensemble List

Lists the receivable service on the selected ensembles.
1. Select the **Ensemble List**.
2. Select the ensemble.

■ Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.
1. Select the **Ensemble List**.
2. Select **Refresh**.

Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll the left selector wheel or select the audio source icon on the screen.
Audio Remote Controls P. 489

You can store 12 ensembles into preset memory.

Continued

■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Stop** or press the BACK button.

■ Change scan mode

1. Select **Menu**.
2. Select **Scan Mode**.
3. Select **Ensemble** or **All**.

■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

■ Settings

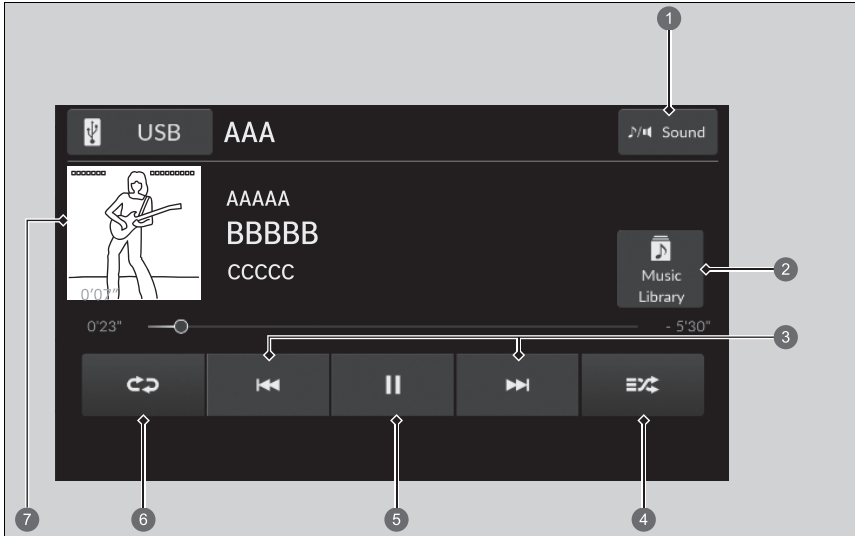
Change the DAB settings.

1. Select **Menu**.
2. Select the option you want to change.

Music Playback via Wired Connection

Using your USB connector, connect the device to the USB charging/connector port, then select the USB icon.

USB Ports P. 488



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Music Library Icon**
❸ **Track Icons**
❹ **Shuffle Icon**
❺ **Play/Pause Icon**
❻ **Repeat Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Continued

■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

1. Select **Music Library**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Shuffle

Shuffle off: Shuffle mode turns off.
Shuffle all songs: Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

Repeat off: Repeat mode turns off.
Repeat song: Repeats the current song.
Repeat all: Repeats all songs.

Music Playback via Wired Connection

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay.

■ How to Change a Song

You can select |◀◀| or |▶▶| to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

■ Sound

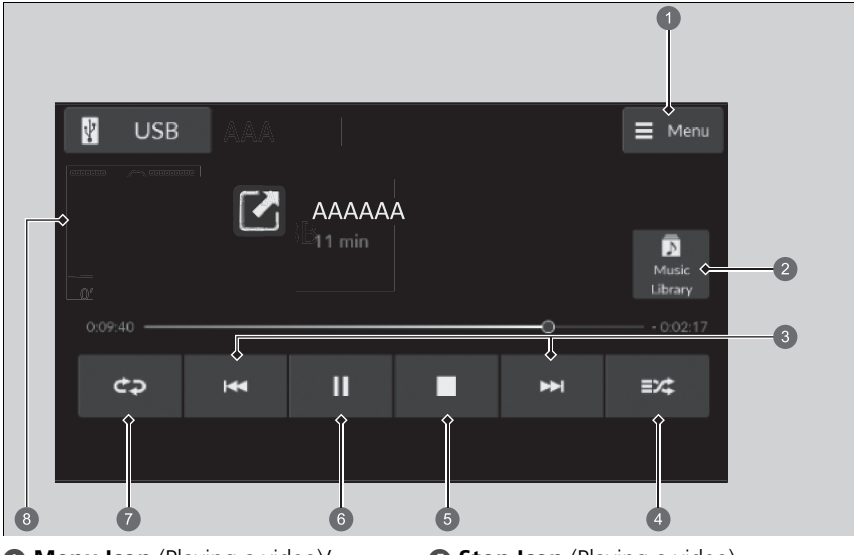
You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 502

Media Playback via USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays audio files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC*1, FLAC, WAV, opus, MP4*, AVI*, MKV*, 3GPP*, WebM*, or MPEG2-TS* format. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port, then select the USB icon.

USB Ports P. 488



1. **Menu Icon** (Playing a video)/ **Sound Icon** (Playing a music)
2. **Music Library Icon**
3. **Track/Video Icons**
4. **Random Icon**
5. **Stop Icon** (Playing a video)
6. **Play/Pause Icon**
7. **Repeat Icon**
8. **Cover Art** (Playing a music)/ **Mini Player** (Playing a video)

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

* Not available on all models

How to Select a File from the Music Search List

1. Select **Music Library**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, Videos, etc.).
3. Continue making selections until you find the song or video of your choice.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select random and repeat modes when playing a file.

Random/Repeat

Repeatedly select the random or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Random

Random off: Random mode turns off.
Random all tracks: Plays all files in random order.
Random in folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

Repeat off: Repeat mode turns off.
Repeat track: Repeats the current playing file.
Repeat in folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Media Playback via USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.
General Information on the Audio System P. 580

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **The selected file cannot be played on this system**, then skips to the next file.

Continued

■ How to Change a File

You can select |◀◀| or |▶▶| to change file. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

■ Sound (Playing a Music File)

You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 502

■ Menu (Playing a Video File)

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

1. Select **Menu**.

2. Select an option.

- **Sound Settings**: Adjusts the sound settings.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 502
- **Image Settings**: Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.
  ➡ **Display Setup** P. 503
- **Aspect Ratio**: Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original/Normal***1/**Full/Zoom**)
- **Overlay Clock Location**: Changes the clock display layout. (**OFF***1/**Upper right/Upper left/Lower right/Lower left**)

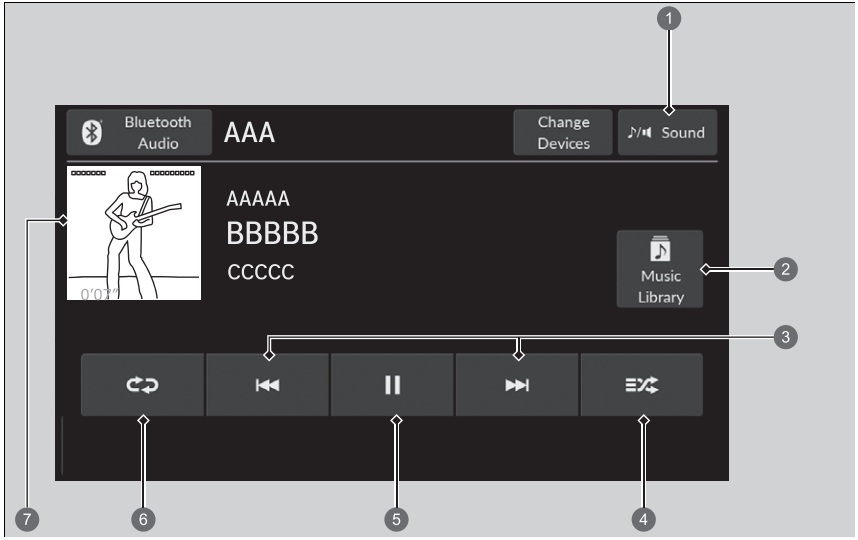
*1: Default Setting

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 566



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Music Library Icon**
❸ **Track Icons**
❹ **Shuffle Icon**
❺ **Play/Pause Icon**
❻ **Repeat Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible.
To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there is more than one paired phone in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the *Bluetooth*® device list.

Phone Setup P. 566

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone will be unavailable.

Phone Setup P. 566

Continued

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 566

2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone manufacturer's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Devices**.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 566

■ Searching for Music

1. Select **Music Library**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
3. Select an item.
▶ The selection begins playing.

Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle

Shuffle off: Shuffle mode to off.

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

Repeat off: Repeat mode to off.

Repeat Song: Repeats the current song.

Repeat Group: Repeats the current group.

Repeat all: Repeats all songs.

How to Select a Play Mode

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the functions may not be displayed.

Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

■ Connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
▶ To change the Wi-Fi settings, select **Options**.
5. Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
6. Select **Connect**.
▶ When the connection is successful, the status text **Connected** next to the network name is displayed on the list.
7. Press the HOME button to go back to the home screen.

Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the Wi-Fi network list. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

When you select **Access Point**, you can set up a Wireless connection from the phone to the vehicle.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 540

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB charging/connector port on the front panel or wirelessly, and the Apple CarPlay icon is selected, you can use Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

➲ **USB Ports** P. 488

Apple CarPlay

We recommend that you update iOS to the latest version when using Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or Hands-Free Telephone (HFT). You can only make calls or listen to music through Apple CarPlay. Other previously paired phones can use the *Bluetooth*® Audio.

When using Hands Free, you can only control it with Siri.

➲ **Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri** P. 528

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple website.

Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

Continued

■ Apple CarPlay Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Apple CarPlay website. Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your iPhone.
Select the **Honda** icon on the Apple CarPlay menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations
Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple website for information on compatible apps.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB charging/connector port using the USB cable.
USB Ports P. 488
▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
2. Select **Yes**.
▶ If you do not allow this consent, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Connections** settings menu.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
3. Select **Connect New Phone** or **Check Device List**.
4. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® system.
Phone Setup P. 566
5. Select **Yes**.

Apple CarPlay

Only initialize Apple CarPlay when you are safely parked.
When Apple CarPlay first detects your iPhone, you will need to set up your iPhone. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your iPhone.

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:
Press the HOME button → **General Settings** → **Connections** → **Manage Device Connections** → Select Device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

If there is a problem with the connection of your iPhone, an error code will be displayed.
Customized Features P. 540

Continued

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the (Talk) button to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto™

When you connect an Android™ phone to the audio system via the USB charging/connector port on the front panel or wirelessly, and the Android Auto icon is selected, you can use Android Auto on the audio/information screen.
We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

USB Ports P. 488

NOTE:
Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

Android Auto™

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto.
Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To directly access the Android Auto phone function, press **Phone** on the home screen.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

To use each of Android Auto's features: say a wake-up word while the Android Auto screen is displayed, or press and hold the (talk) button to activate Google Assistant.

Operating Android Auto with Google Assistant P. 532

Continued

■ Android Auto Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Android Auto website. Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your smartphone.
Select the **Honda** icon on the Android Auto menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto website.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto website for information on compatible apps.

Connect Android Auto Using the USB Cable

1. Connect the Android phone to the USB charging/connector port using the USB cable.

USB Ports P. 488

▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.

2. Select **Yes**.

▶ If you do not allow this consent, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Connections** settings menu.

Connect Android Auto Wirelessly

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **Android Auto**.

3. Select **Connect Phone** or **Search for Devices**.

4. Pair the device to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® system.

Phone Setup P. 566

5. Select **Yes**.

Android Auto™

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Press the HOME button → **General Settings** → **Connections** → **Manage Device Connections** → Select Device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

If there is a problem with the connection of your smartphone, an error code will be displayed.

Customized Features P. 540

Continued

■ Operating Android Auto with Google Assistant

Press and hold the (Talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Android Auto with Google Assistant

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto website.

Google built-in

You can use the features available with Google built-in on the audio screen.

■ Google Assistant

You can operate features with hands-free help from Google Assistant.

You can activate Google Assistant by:
- Saying "*Hey Google.*"
  ▶ Wake words vary by region and language. Refer to the Google website for more information.
- Pressing the (Talk) button on the steering wheel.
- Selecting the Google Assistant icon on the audio/information screen.

Google built-in

- Google, Google Play, and Google Maps are trademarks of Google LLC.
- For more details on Google Apps and Services' features, visit the Google website.

Additional information for Google Apps and Services is available at Honda website.

Google Assistant

Below are example voice commands that can be used once Google Assistant is activated:
- Play music.
- Play radio.

You can customize language and other settings regarding **Google Assistant**.

How to Customize the General Settings
P. 540

Continued

■ Google Maps

Google Maps helps you reach your next destination faster with real-time traffic info, automatic rerouting, and voice control.

Google Maps

Operate when vehicle is stopped in a safe location.

When your Google Account is linked with a valid user account, destinations stored on other devices (home, work, favourites, previous searches, etc.) can be displayed. When the device and the vehicle are logged into the same Google Account, changing information on the device will change it on Google Maps as well.

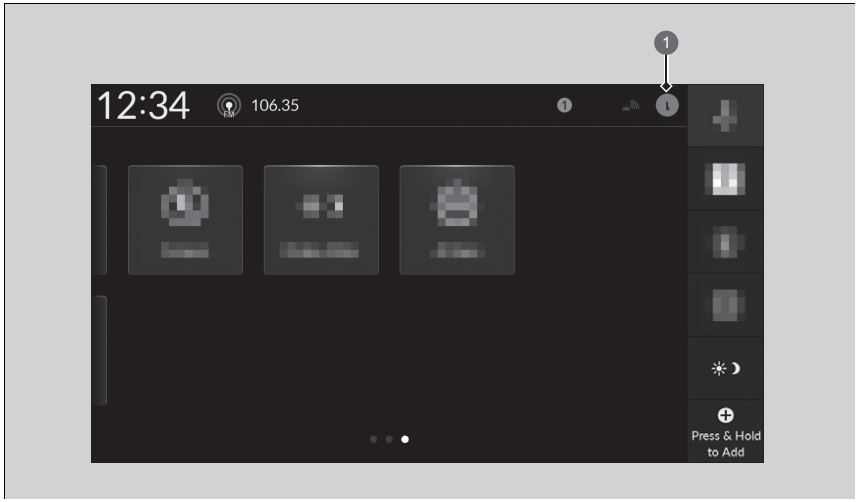
■ Google Play

Download your favourite apps on Google Play.

Google Play

The vehicle must be stopped in order to download an app.
Operate when vehicle is stopped in a safe location.

User Information



1 User Information

User Information

This feature cannot be used while driving.

You can customize settings individually for each user.
Profile Settings P. 539

You can customize security settings for each user. If you have forgotten security settings, you will need to delete the user and create a new one. If you have forgotten security settings for the Owner user, please contact a dealer.

Certain features are unavailable when using a newly created user or the Guest user.

Continued

You can add and change users, as well as customize user settings.
By registering a user, you can personalize your vehicle settings.
You can select a user when the audio/information screen loads, even when the doors are open or unlocked.

By linking your profile with your Google Account, you can enjoy a more personalized Google built-in experience. For more assistance on account linking, visit the Google website.



■ Registering a User

1. Select User Info.
▶ You can also add users by selecting **Profile Settings**.
➡ **Profile Settings** P. 539
▶ You can add users even when the doors are open or unlocked.
2. Select **Change Profile**.
3. Select **+ Add User**.
4. Enter User Information.
➡ **Start Up** P. 484

■ Switching Users

1. Select User Info.
▶ You can also change users by selecting **Profile Settings**.
➡ **Profile Settings** P. 539
▶ You can switch users even when the doors are open or unlocked.
2. Select **Change Profile**.
3. Select the user you want to use.

Registering a User

Profile can be changed only when the vehicle is parked.

You can add up to 4 users other than the Owner user and the Guest user.

When you add a user, the audio/information screen is loaded under that user.

Switching Users

Profile can be changed only when the vehicle is parked.

Users with customized security settings can restrict screen operations by selecting the **Screen Lock** shortcut.

Continued

■ Deleting Users

1. Select **Profile Settings**.
2. Select **Manage Profile**.
3. Select **Profiles & accounts**.
4. Select **Delete your profile**.

Deleting Users

When the profile currently being used is deleted, the audio/information screen is loaded under the Guest user.

While using the Owner user, you can delete other user via General Settings → Advanced Settings.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 540

Depending on the version of your OS, the steps for deleting a user may differ from the instructions on this page. Follow the on-screen prompts.

Profile Settings

You can add and change users, as well as customize user settings.

■ How to Customize the Profile Settings

Press the HOME button, select **Profile Settings**, and select a setting item you want.

■ Change Profile

You can change and add users.

➔ **User Information** P. 535

■ Manage Profile

Use **Manage Profile** to change profile settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen.

Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

Profile Settings

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.
- Set the parking brake.

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, and select a setting item.

Customized Features

When you customize settings:
- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

■ **System**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Date & Time	**Set Date & Time**	**Automatic Date & Time**	Select **ON** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select **OFF** to cancel this function.	**OFF/ON**
		Set Date	Adjusts date. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 499	—
		Set Time	Adjusts clock. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 499	—
	Time Zone*	**Automatic Time Zone**	Sets the navigation system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	**OFF/ON**
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
	Auto Daylight Saving Time*		Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time.	**ON/OFF**

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Date & Time	**Date Format**	Sets the date format.	**Day-of-week, MM DD,YYYY/ YYYY.MM.DD Day-of-week/ YYYY.MM.DD (Day-of-week)/ Day-of-week DD.MM.YYYY/ DD.MM.YYYY**
	Time Format	Selects the digital clock display from **12-H** to **24-H**.	**12-H/24-H**
Language		Changes the display language.	**English**[*1], **Chinese**[*1], **Arabic**[*1], or **Bahasa Indonesia** Some languages may not be available in all regions. Check the audio/information screen for available options.
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**Low/High**

*1:The default setting varies depending on the model.

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
About	**IP address**	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	Wi-Fi MAC address		
	Bluetooth MAC address		
	Serial Number		
	Up Time		
	Model Number		
	Android Version		
	Kernel Version		
	Build Number		
	Software Version		
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 560	**Cancel/Continue**

■ **Connections**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Manage Device Connections	**Options**	**Bluetooth**	Turns *Bluetooth*® on and off.	**On/Off**
		Priority Device Information	Displays the priority device.	—
		Change Name	Changes vehicle name for *Bluetooth*® connection setting.	—
		Smartphone Projection Screen Size	Changes the screen size of the smartphone projection.	**Normal/Wide**
		Smartphone Projection Error Code	Displays the error code(s) of the smartphone projection.	—
	+ Connect New Device		Pairs a new phone to HFT. **Phone Setup** P. 566	—
	(Saved Devices)		Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. **Phone Setup** P. 566	—

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Wi-Fi	**Options**	**Wi-Fi**	Allow vehicle to connect to Wi-Fi.	**OFF/ON**
		Add Network	Allows you to connect to a new external network.	—
		Saved Networks	Deletes a saved network or changes update permission settings for the selected network.	—
Access Point	**Options**	**Access Point**	Allow wireless connection from the phone to the vehicle. This feature must be turned on for wireless Apple CarPlay or Android Auto to work.	**OFF/ON**
		Edit Access Point Settings	Allows you to confirm hotspot settings and edit hotspot connection information.	—
Data Connection Options	**Set up Wi-Fi**		Sets personal hotspot (phone tethering). ➡ **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 524	—

■ **Privacy**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Data Sharing with Honda	Turns the data sharing **Disable** and **Enable**.	**Disable/Enable**
Microphone	Turns the microphone on and off. e-call can still be used regardless of settings.	
Location	Sets the data sharing permission for each function.	
Infotainment system data		
App permissions		
System-wide Permission Settings		
Data sharing with Google[*1]		
Ads[*1]		
Google legal[*1] **Google Terms of Service**[*1]	Displays the Google URL.	—
Google legal[*1] **Google Privacy Policy**[*1]		

*1:Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

■ **Display**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
Display OFF	Turns the audio/information screen brightness off.	—

■ **Sound**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bass / Mid / Treble	**Treble**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 502	—
	Midrange		
	Bass		
Audio Zones & Balance / Fader*			
Bose Centerpoint Surround*			
Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation*			
Balance / Fader*			
Speed Volume Compensation*			

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Sound Volume**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System Sounds	Adjusts the settings of the sounds' volume.	—
Voice Recognition		
Navigation Guidance		
Phone Calls		

■ **Camera**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Rear Wide Camera*	**Guidelines**	**Fixed Guideline**	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 789	**OFF/ON**
		Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 789	**OFF/ON**
Multi View Camera*	**Guidelines**	**Fixed Guideline**	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Camera*** P. 791	**OFF/ON**
		Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Camera*** P. 791	**OFF/ON**
	Customise	**Show after shifting from Reverse**	Selects whether to display the forward camera image after shifting from R to D.	**OFF/ON**
		Auto display when obstacle is detected	Displays the forward camera image when a parking sensor detects an obstacle.	**OFF/ON**

* Not available on all models

Continued

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
LaneWatch*	**Show with indicator**	Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a left*1/right*2 turn.	**OFF/ON**
	Display Time after Indicator Off	Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the centre.	**0 second/2 seconds**
	Show Reference Line	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	**OFF/ON**
Cross Traffic Monitor*		Shows arrows on the rear camera image to indicate vehicles approaching from the sides. ➡ **Cross Traffic Monitor*** P. 785	**ON/OFF**

*1:Right-hand Drive Type
*2:Left-hand Drive Type

 * Not available on all models

■ **Voice Control**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Default Assist App	Selects the assistant apps.	**None/Google Assistant**
Listen for "Hey Siri"[*1]	Toggles Siri activation when you say "*Hey Siri*".	**ON/OFF**
Google Assistant	Sets the functions of **Google Assistant**.	—

*1:Activates when the iPhone is connected.

■ **Security**
You can customize security settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen.
Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

■ **Google**
You can customize Google settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen.
Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

■ **Advanced Settings**
You can customize advanced system settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen.
Specifications may be changed via system updates, etc.

■ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, press the HOME button, and then select **Vehicle Settings** and select a setting item.

■ **Deflation Warning System***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation Warning System	Calibrates the deflation warning system. ➡ **Deflation Warning System*** P. 659	**Initialise**

■ **Driver Assist System Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 677	**Far/Normal*1/Near**
Head-up warning*	Turn On/Off warning light for head-up flash alert.	**ON*1/OFF**
ACC vehicle ahead detected beep	Turns audible notification On/Off when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 707	**ON/OFF*1**
Lead Car Departure Notification System*	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system. ➡ **Lead Car Departure Notification System*** P. 751	**Normal*1/Early/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Road departure mitigation setting	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 697	Oceanian models **Early/Normal/Delayed***1 Except Oceanian models **Warning only/Early/ Normal***1**/Delayed**
Lane keep assist beep	Switches the LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist* suspend alert beeps on and off. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 729 ➡ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 742	**ON/OFF***1
Blind spot information*	Selects On/Off the blind spot information system audible alert. ➡ **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 665	**Audible And Visual Alert***1**/ Visual Alert Only**
Traffic sign recognition system display*	Displays the traffic sign recognition system on the instrument panel. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 756	**ON***1**/OFF**
Traffic sign recognition system over speed warning*	Enables over speed limit warning when speed limit is exceeded. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 756	**ON***1**/OFF**
Driver attention monitor	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor. ➡ **Driver Attention Monitor** P. 173, 202	**OFF/Tactile alert only/ Tactile and audible alert***1
Rear Sensor Setting*	Turns the Rear Parking Sensor On or Off. ➡ **Parking Sensor System** P. 779	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

■ **Meter setup (Meter/Head-up Display Setup)**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust outside temp. display	Adjusts outside temperature reading by a few degrees. ➡ **Outside Temperature** P. 162	**-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C**
"Trip A" reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip A. ➡ **Range/Fuel/Trip Meter** P. 167, 196 ➡ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 169, 198	**When Fully Refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/ Manual reset**[*1]
"Trip B" reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip B. ➡ **Range/Fuel/Trip Meter** P. 167, 196 ➡ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 169, 198	**When Fully Refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/ Manual reset**[*1]
Alarm volume control	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning, and indicator.	**Max/Mid**[*1]**/Min**
Fuel efficiency backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Turn by turn display	Turns the pop-up information on/off in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface. ➡ **Turn-by-Turn Directions** P. 171	**ON***1**/OFF**
Rear seat reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON***1**/OFF**
Fuel Economy Unit*	Selects the fuel consumption units.	**km/l***1**/ l/100km**
Tachometer*	Selects whether the tachometer come on the driver information interface.	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Keyless Access Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless access beep volume	Changes the beep volume of unlocking /locking the doors.	**High***1**/Low**
Keyless access light flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON***1**/OFF**
Keyless access beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON***1**/OFF**
Remote start system ON/OFF*	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

■ **Driving position setup***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Memory position link	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Seat Position Movement At Entry/Exit	Moves the seat rearward when you get in/get out of the vehicle. Changes the setting for this feature.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Lighting Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High-Beam	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Interior light dimmer duration	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. ➡ **Interior Lights** P. 303	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
Headlight auto OFF timer	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. ➡ **Automatic Lighting Off Feature** P. 263	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**
Headlight integration with wipers	Turns headlight function at wiper operation On/Off when the headlight is in **AUTO** setting. ➡ **Headlight Integration with Wipers** P. 263	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Door Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto door lock*	Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature.	**With vehicle speed*1/Shift from P/OFF**
Auto door unlock*	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	**All doors with Shift to P*1/ All Doors When Ignition Switched OFF/OFF**
Walk away lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	**ON/OFF*1**
Keyless lock notification	Turns flash of exterior lights on/off when doors are locked/ unlocked by keyless remote. ➡ **Using the Remote Transmitter** P. 229	**ON*1/OFF**
Auto Folding Door Mirror*	Changes the door mirror auto-folding operation.	**ON*1/OFF**
Lock Presetting	Changes the settings for the lock presetting function.	**ON*1/OFF**
Keyless Remote Power Window Control*	Turns the remote window control on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

■ **Power Tailgate Setup***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless Open Mode	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	**Anytime***1**/When Unlocked**
Power Open By Outer Handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	**ON (Power/Manual)***1**/ OFF (Manual Only)**
Hands Free Access*	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Climate Control Setup***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driver seat automatic climate control	Automatic climate control of Driver Seat with automatic air conditioner. Changes the interlocking control setting.	**ON***1**/OFF**
Passenger seat automatic climate control	Automatic climate control of Passenger Seat with automatic air conditioner. Changes the interlocking control setting.	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Maintenance Info.**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Maintenance Info.	Resets the maintenance information. ➡ **Oil Monitor System** P. 815	**Reset**

* Not available on all models

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

■ Defaulting System Settings

Only the Owner user can execute this command.
If current profile is not the Owner user, please switch users.

Switching Users P. 537

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue**.
6. Select **Reset** to reset the settings.
   ▶ The system will reboot.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Default all**.
4. Select **Yes**.

Defaulting All the Settings

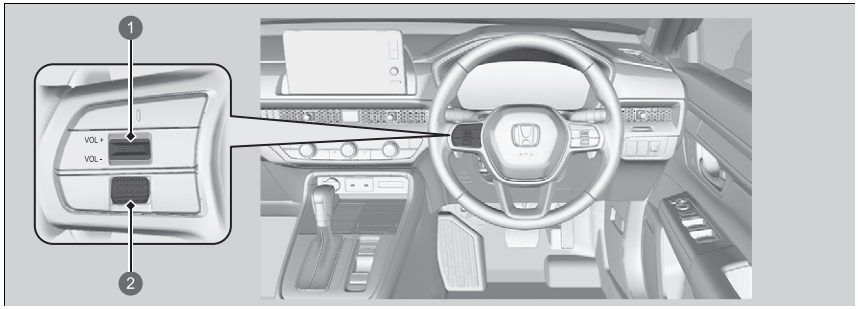
When you transfer the vehicle to a third-party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

HFT Buttons



❶ **VOL**+/**VOL**− (Volume) Switch
❷ Left Selector Wheel

Left Selector Wheel: Roll up or down to select. **Phone** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, HFT/HFL is unavailable.

Phone Setup P. 566

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- If the microphones pick up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, the volume level is able to change by the audio system's volume.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

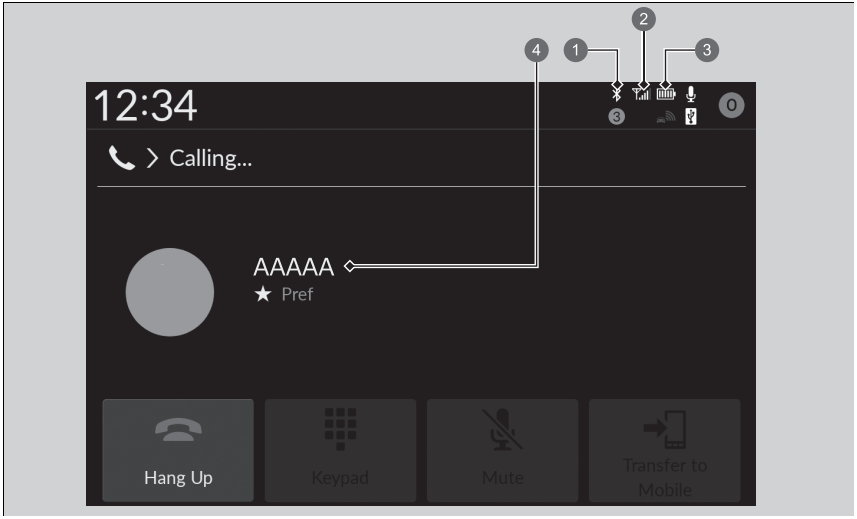
HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Continued

■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



❶ *Bluetooth* Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
❷ Signal Strength
❸ Battery Level Status
❹ Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

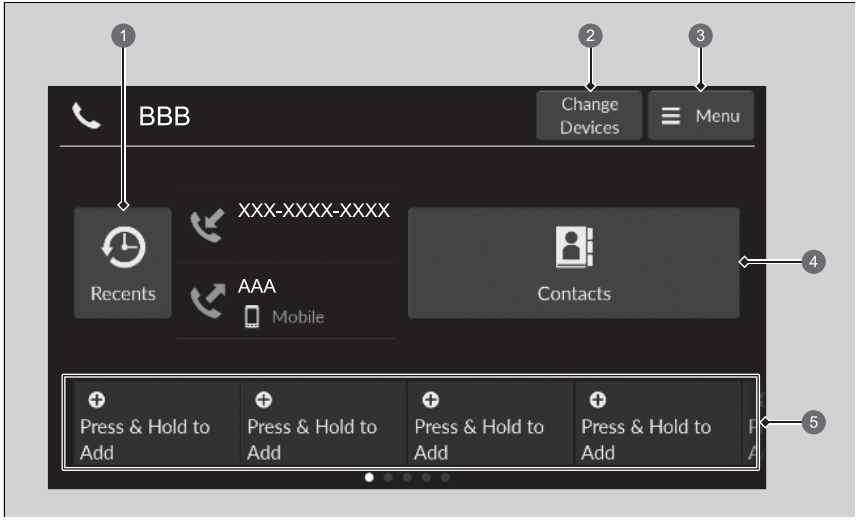
Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.



❶ **Recents**
❷ **Change Devices**
❸ **Menu**
❹ **Contacts**
❺ **Press & Hold to Add** (Existing entry list)

HFT Menus

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

Continued

Recents: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.

➡ **To make a call using the call history** P. 575

Change Devices: Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 566

Menu: Changes the phone settings.

➡ **Phone Menu Screen** P. 565

Contacts: Displays the phonebook of the paired phone.

➡ **To make a call using the imported phonebook** P. 574

Press & Hold to Add (Existing entry list): Dials the selected number in the favourite contacts entry.

➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 571

■ Phone Menu Screen

To display the phone menu screen, select **Menu** on the phone screen.

Keypad: Enters a phone number to dial.

➡ **To make a call using a phone number** P. 574

Latest Call History: Sets whether the history shortcut is displayed in the phone screen.

Auto Sync Phone: Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

➡ **Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History** P. 569

Auto Phone Call Transfer: Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

➡ **Automatic Transferring** P. 570

Ringtone: Selects the ringtone.

➡ **Ringtone** P. 570

Continued

■ Phone Setup

■ *Bluetooth*® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Manage Device Connections**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Set **Bluetooth** to **ON**.

■ **To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select **Connect New Device**.
4. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Search for Devices**.
▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
5. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
▶ If your phone still does not appear, search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone.
From your phone, search for Vehicle Name.
▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the audio/information screen and your phone matches.
This may vary by phone.
6. Select **Yes**.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or more icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:

: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio and HFT.

: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

: The phone is compatible with Android Auto.

Continued

■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the phone screen.
➔ **HFT Menus** P. 563
2. Select **Change Devices**.
3. Select **Go to Device List**.
4. Select a phone to connect.
▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
5. Select  or  , .
6. Select **Yes**.

■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the phone screen.
➔ **HFT Menus** P. 563
2. Select **Change Devices**.
3. Select **Go to Device List**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete Device**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

You can also switch the connection with the icon, icon, or icon in the device list.
When or is selected, cannot be selected.

■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

■ When Auto Sync Phone is set to ON:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

■ Changing the Auto Sync Phone setting

1. Go to the phone menu screen.

Phone Menu Screen P. 565

2. Select **Auto Sync Phone**.

3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

On some phones, you will be asked to allow your mobile phonebook to be imported.

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.


Mobile


Work


Home


Other


Pref

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Continued

■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
➡ **Phone Menu Screen** P. 565
2. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

■ Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
➡ **Phone Menu Screen** P. 565
2. Select **Ringtone**.
3. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.

Ringtone

Vehicle: The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.
Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

■ Favourite Contacts

■ To add a favourite contact

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select and hold **Press & Hold to Add**.
4. Select **From Recents**, **From Contacts**, or **Using Enter Number**.

From Recents, From Contacts

5. Select the phone number.

Using Enter Number

5. Input number, and select **Enter**.

Continued

■ **To edit a favourite contact**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select and hold a favourite contact.
4. Select **Edit Favourites**.
5. Select a setting you want.
6. Select **Enter** or select type.

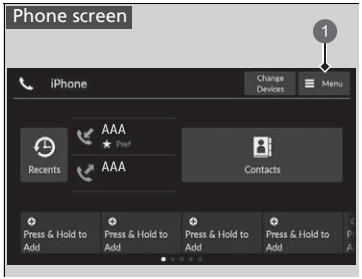
■ **Add to the home screen a favourite contact**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select and hold a favourite contact.
4. Select **Add to Home**.

■ **To delete a favourite contact**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select and hold a favourite contact.
4. Select **Remove Favourite**.

Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, or favourite contact entries.

❶ Menu

Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

Continued

■ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

1. Go to the phone screen.
➡ **HFT Menus** P. 563

2. Select **Contacts**.

3. Select a name.
▶ You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.

4. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ **To make a call using a phone number**

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
➡ **Phone Menu Screen** P. 565

2. Select **Keypad**.

3. Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.

4. Select **Call**.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Go to the phone screen.

➔ **HFT Menus** P. 563

2. Select **Recents**.

▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.

3. Select a number.

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a favourite contact entry

1. Go to the phone screen.

➔ **HFT Menus** P. 563

2. Select desired favourite contact.

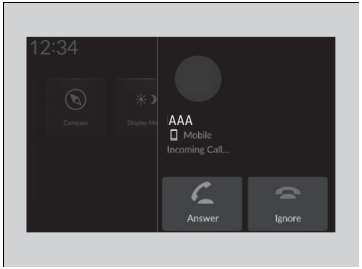
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

Continued

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.
To answer the call, roll up or down to select (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting
Select (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.
Select (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Select if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and on the driver information interface.

■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Transfer to Mobile: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.
Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

Audio Error Messages*

The following error messages are just examples. If you see an error message not listed below, follow the on-screen instructions to clear it.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
Faulty USB Device **Please check owner's manual** **(Bad USB Device** **Please check owners manual)**[*1]	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Connect Retry[*1, *2]	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File[*1, *2] **The selected file cannot be played on this system**[*3]	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about a few seconds, then plays the next file.
No Data[*1, *2, *3]	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, PCM/WAVE, MP4*, AVI*, MKV*, or ASF/WMV* files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.

*1:Models with colour audio system
*2:Models with Display Audio
*3:Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

* Not available on all models

Error Message	Solution
Unsupported[*1, *2]	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
Error[*3]	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device. Appears when unsupported formats are in the device. Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
No response from device (Device No Response)[*1, *2]	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
USB hub not supported[*1, *2] **USB Hub Unsupported**[*3]	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.[*1, *2]	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.

*1:Models with colour audio system
*2:Models with Display Audio
*3:Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Models with colour audio system

Model
Made for iPod nano (7th generation) released in 2012
Made for iPod touch (5th to 7th generation) released between 2012 and 2019
Made for iPhone 5/iPhone5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6S/iPhone 6S Plus/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone SE (1st to 3rd generation)/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 12 mini/iPhone 13/iPhone 13 Pro/iPhone 13 Pro Max/iPhone 13 mini/iPhone 14/iPhone 14 Plus/iPhone 14 Pro/iPhone 14 Pro Max

Models with Display Audio

Model
Made for iPod touch (5th to 6th generation) released between 2012 and 2015
Made for iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6S/iPhone 6S Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 12 mini

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

The Lightning connector works with iPhone 5, iPhone 5s, iPhone 5c, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6S, iPhone 6S Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (1st to 3rd generation), iPhone 12, iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 12 mini, iPhone 13, iPhone 13 Pro, iPhone 13 Pro Max, iPhone 13 mini, iPhone 14, iPhone 14 Plus, iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPod nano (7th generation), iPod touch (5th, 6th, 7th generation).

USB works with iPhone 5, iPhone 5s, iPhone 5c, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6S, iPhone 6S Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (1st to 3rd generation), iPhone 12, iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 12 mini, iPhone 13, iPhone 13 Pro, iPhone 13 Pro Max, iPhone 13 mini, iPhone 14, iPhone 14 Plus, iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPod nano (7th generation), iPod touch (5th, 6th, 7th generation).

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

Model
Made for iPod touch (6th generation)/iPod touch (7th generation)
Made for iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/ iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/ iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 12 mini/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 13/iPhone 13 Pro/iPhone 13 Pro Max/iPhone 13 mini/iPhone SE (3rd generation)

Continued

■ USB Flash Drives*

- Please use a recommended USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher formatted with FAT16 or FAT32.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Each audio system is compatible the following formats. Some versions of the formats may be unsupported.

Models with colour audio system

MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV

Models with Display Audio

MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV, PCM/WAVE, MP4*, AVI*, MKV*, ASF/WMV*

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV, Opus, MP4, AVI, MKV, 3GPP, WebM, MPEG2-TS

USB Flash Drives*

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

* Not available on all models

Models with Display Audio

Recommended Devices*

MP4 File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MP4 version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)

AVI File

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (AVI version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (AVI version)	.avi		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3, WMA		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **MKV File**

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (MKV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (MKV version)	.mkv		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

■ **ASF/WMV File**

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (ASF/WMV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (ASF/WMV version)	.asf/.wmv	
Compatible audio codec	WMA	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

Models with Display Audio

Recommended Devices

MP4 File

Media	USB Flash Drive				
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v				
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3				
Compatible video codec*1	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	H.263	H.265 HEVC	MEPG-4 SP	MPEG-2
Profile (MP4 version)*1	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—
Bit rate*1	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—
Maximum image*1	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—

AVI File

Media	USB Flash Drive
File extension (AVI version)	.avi
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3, WMA
Compatible video codec*1	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)
Profile (AVI version)*1	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)
Bit rate*1	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)
Maximum image*1	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)

*1:Some video file format cannot be played on this audio system.

Continued

■ **MKV File**

Media	USB Flash Drive					
File extension (MKV version)	.mkv					
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3					
Compatible video codec[*1]	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	H.263	H.265 HEVC	MPEG-2	VP8	VP9
Profile (MKV version)[*1]	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—
Bit rate[*1]	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—
Maximum image[*1]	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—

*1:Some video file format cannot be played on this audio system.

■ **3GPP File**

Media	USB Flash Drive		
File extension (3GPP version)	.3gp		
Compatible audio codec	MPEG-4, AAC LC (Low Complexity)		
Compatible video codec[*1]	H.263	H.264	MPEG-4 SP
Profile (3GPP version)[*1]	—	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—
Bit rate[*1]	—	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—
Maximum image[*1]	—	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—

■ **WebM File**

Media	USB Flash Drive	
File extension (WebM version)	.webm	
Compatible audio codec	Opus	
Compatible video codec[*1]	VP8	VP9
Profile (WebM version)[*1]	—	—
Bit rate[*1]	—	—
Maximum image[*1]	—	—

*1:Some video file format cannot be played on this audio system.

■ **MPEG2-TS File**

Media	USB Flash Drive	
File extension (MPEG2-TS version)	.ts	
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3	
Compatible video codec[*1]	MPEG-2	H.264 AVC
Profile (MPEG2-TS version)[*1]	—	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)
Bit rate[*1]	—	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)
Maximum image[*1]	—	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)

*1:Some video file format cannot be played on this audio system.

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

Models with colour audio system

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select **Licence** (**License**).

Models with Display Audio

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **About**.
5. Select **Legal Information**.
6. Select **Licence** (**License**).

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Advanced Settings**.
4. Select **System**.
5. Select **Legal Information**.
6. Select **Third-party licenses**.

Licence Information

■ Dolby AUDIO

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Audio, Pro logic, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

■ Bluetooth

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by ALPS ALPINE CO., LTD. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/

■ Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

■ Apple

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.
Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone, iPod touch, iPod nano are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.



Continued

■ MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUALA STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.
SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

VC-1
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

AVC/H.264
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto*

■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

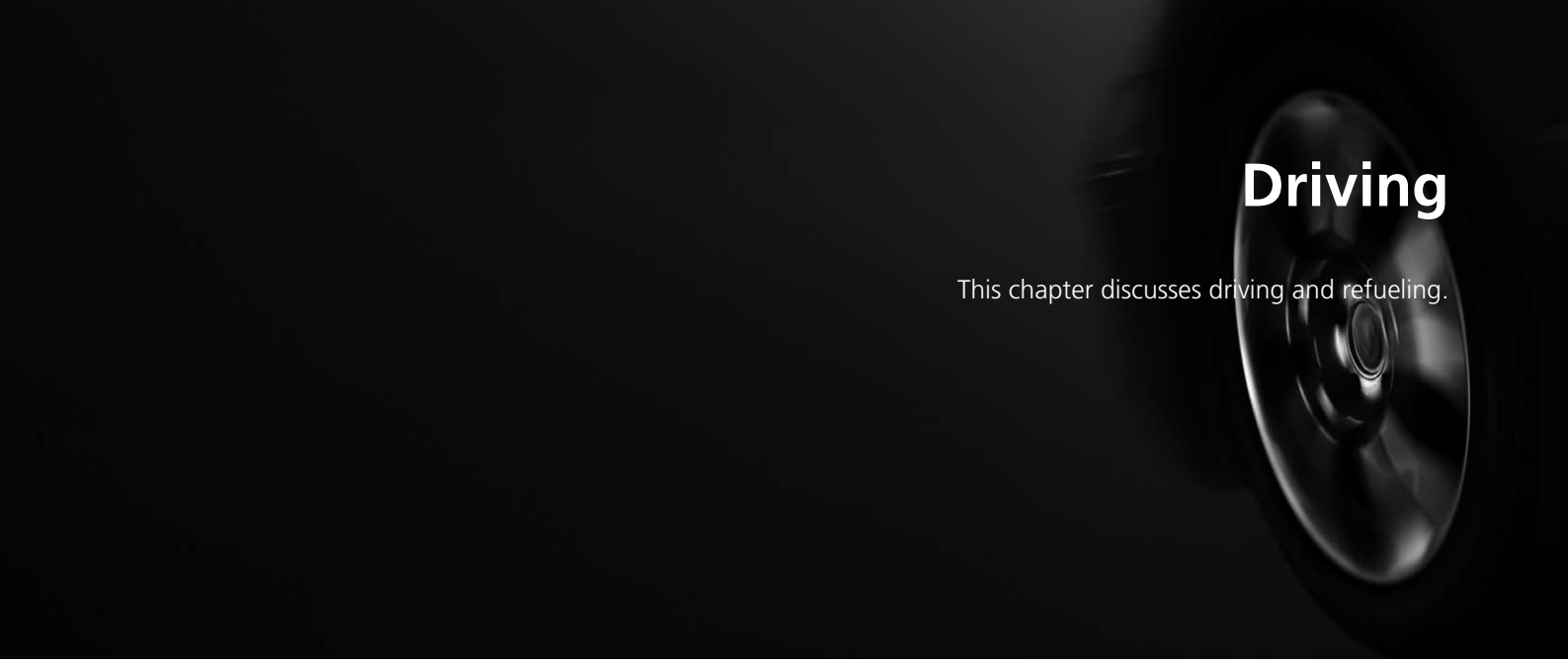
USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

 * Not available on all models

■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.



Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving 598
Towing a Trailer 602
Off-road Guidelines 609
When Driving
- Starting the Engine 611
- Precautions While Driving 617
- Continuously Variable Transmission ... 619
- Shifting 620, 622
- ECON Mode 627
- Auto Idle Stop* 628
- Hill Descent Control System 635
- Adjustable Speed Limiter* 637
- Intelligent Speed Limiter* 644
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 652
- Agile Handling Assist 654
- Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System* ...655

Taiwanese models
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ...656

Except Taiwanese models
- Deflation Warning System* 659
- Blind Spot Information System* 665
- LaneWatch* 669
- Adjusting Headlight Distribution* 673

Honda SENSING 674
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 677
- Low Speed Braking Control* 691
- Road Departure Mitigation System ... 697
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 707
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 729
- Traffic Jam Assist 742
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* 751
- Traffic Sign Recognition System* 756
- Front Sensor Camera 763
- Radar Sensor 765
- Sonar Sensors* 766

Braking 767
Parking Your Vehicle 777
Multi-View Rear Camera* 789
Multi-View Camera* 791
Refueling 805
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 809
Turbo Engine Vehicle 810

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

■ Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving or fall off and impact other road users. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 849
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
  ➡ **Load Limit** P. 601
- Do not pile items higher than the seatback height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➡ **Seats** P. 283
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 297
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➡ **Mirrors** P. 279
  ➡ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 278

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer*, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with manual headlight adjusting system

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

➡ **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 267

Models with automatic headlight adjusting system

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

* Not available on all models

Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 53
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➡ **Indicators** P. 136

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Specifications P. 940

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

Specifications P. 940

Load Limit

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Except Oceanian models

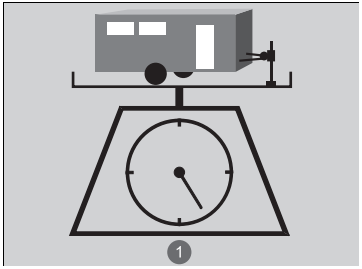
Your vehicle is not designed to, and cannot safely, tow a trailer nor have a tow hitch installed. Do not install a tow hitch on, or tow with, your vehicle.

Oceanian models

Towing Preparation

■ Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



❶ Total Load

■ Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it. Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

Towing Load Limits

⚠WARNING

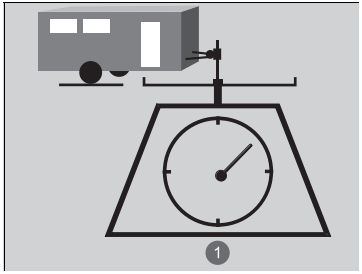
Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and the trailer nose load.

Break-in Period.
Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km.

When using a detachable towing device, always remove the towing device when not in use and only install it when towing so that it does not cover or hide anything on the rear of your vehicle, such as the exterior lights or licence plate.



❶ Trailer Nose Load

■ Trailer nose load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 100 kg. This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 1,000 kg, the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

Towing Load Limits

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and specified load limit.

Specifications P. 940

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres of elevation.

Continued

■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

■ Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

■ Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

■ Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

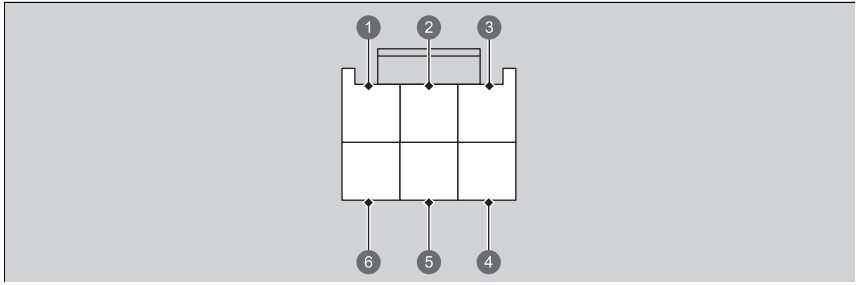
Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment.
Improper installation and setup can affect the electrical components, handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.



❶ Left Turn Signal (Light Blue)
❷ Grand (Black)
❸ Right Turn Signal (Green)
❹ +B Trailer (Light Violet/Red)
❺ Brake Light (Green)
❻ Small (Grey)

We recommend that you have a dealer install a Honda wiring harness and converter. They are designed for your vehicle.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

Trailer light

The trailer lighting connector is located behind the left side panel in the luggage area.
Even if you are planning to use the non-Honda trailer lighting harness and converter, ask a dealer for the correct connector and pins.

Trailer Stability Assist*

Helps to stabilize the vehicle and trailer when the trailer severely sways.

■ How trailer stability assist works

When the vehicle and trailer become unstable while driving, trailer stability assist determines the cause. If the trailer oscillation is detected as the cause, and the swaying increases, the system applies the brakes or controls engine output to reduce vehicle speed.

Both the vehicle and trailer brake lights come on automatically if you brake to reduce vehicle speed.

Trailer Stability Assist*

Trailer stability assist is not a function that prevents the vehicle and trailer from swaying. Avoid high speeds, abrupt steering, improper trailer load, and sudden braking to keep the trailer from swaying. When swaying too severely, the system becomes ineffective, and you may lose control of your vehicle, causing the trailer to roll over or get damaged.

➡ **Driving Safely with a Trailer*** P. 607

Trailer towing sway is caused by:

- Crosswinds
- Improper towbar down load
- Excessive speed

The VSA system indicator blinks during the trailer stability assist operation.

➡ **VSA Operation** P. 652

 * Not available on all models

Driving Safely with a Trailer*

Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
  ➡ **Towing Load Limits** P. 602
- Securely attach the towbar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressure of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.
- Turn off the rear parking sensor system. It may alert if it detects the towed object as an obstacle.
  ➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540
- Turn off the rear Low Speed Braking Control system through the rear sensor setting. It may activate if it detects the towed object as an obstacle.
  ➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

Driving Safely with a Trailer*

Operating speed when towing a trailer must not exceed 100 km/h.

Parking
In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

When towing a trailer, we recommend that you carry a full-size spare wheel and tyre for both your vehicle and trailer.

Models with compact spare tyre

If you use the compact spare tyre that came with your vehicle, it could adversely affect vehicle driving stability.

Remember to unhitch the trailer before changing a flat tyre. Ask the trailer sales or rental agency where and how to store the trailer's spare tyre.

We recommend you drive uphill of less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Towing Speeds and Shift Position

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the D position when towing a trailer on level roads.

■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- If the **Engine temperature near limit. Avoid strong acceleration and high speed.** message appears on the driver information interface, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed.
- If the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message appears on the driver information interface, pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine.

Towing Speeds and Shift Position

When towing a fixed-sided trailer (e.g., camper), do not exceed 88 km/h. At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling.

General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement; however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store luggage properly and do not exceed your luggage load limits.
  Load Limit P. 601
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

Off-road Guidelines

⚠WARNING

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off-pavement can cause a crash or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

Important Handling Information P. 44
Precautions While Driving P. 617

Avoiding Trouble

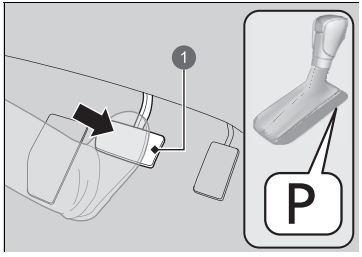
- **Check Out Your Vehicle** before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tyres, and check the tyre pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognise these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- **Accelerating and Braking** should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- **Avoiding Obstacles and Debris** in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increases your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight up or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- **Crossing a Stream** - Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- **If You Get Stuck**, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tyres as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

Starting the Engine



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



1 Brake Pedal

2. Check that the transmission is in P, then depress the brake pedal.
▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.

Starting the Engine

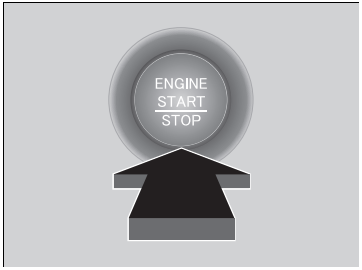
Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Continued



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Starting the Engine

Bring the keyless remote or card key* close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote or card key* is weak.

➡ **If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak** P. 902

The engine may not start if the keyless remote or card key* is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

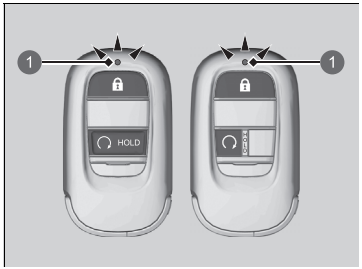
➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 247

 * Not available on all models

■ Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely start the engine using the keyless remote.

■ To start the engine



Press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [⟳] button.
▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

❶ LED: Blinks when any button is pressed.



If the engine starts successfully, some exterior lights flash six times.

Remote Engine Start*

⚠WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the keyless remote, the range will be reduced.
This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

* Not available on all models

Continued



If the engine does not start, exterior lights will not flash.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [⟳] button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

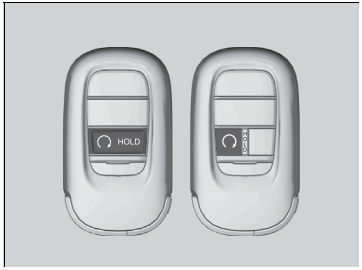
Remote Engine Start*

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

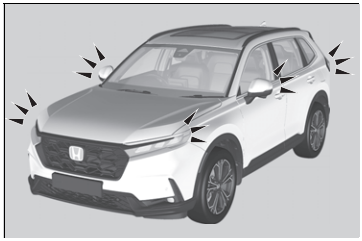
- You have disabled a remote engine start setting.
  - **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183
  - **Customized Features** P. 443, 540
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than [P].
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit* malfunctions.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The battery charge is too low.

* Not available on all models

■ To stop the engine



Press and hold the [ ] button for one second.



If the engine stops successfully, the exterior lights flash once.



When the remote is out of the keyless access system range, the exterior lights will not flash. The engine will not stop.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

Remote Engine Start*

The engine may stop while it is running if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of starting the engine with the keyless remote.
- The engine is stopped by using the keyless remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door, or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.
When it is cold outside:

- The demister is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister and seat heaters* are activated.

Rear Demister Button P. 275
Front Seat Heaters* P. 323

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button on the keyless remote

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

When the engine was started in any case

2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the transmission into [D]. Select [R] when reversing.

3. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

➡ **Parking Brake** P. 767

■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into [D], [S], or [L]* when facing uphill, or [R] when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Put the transmission into [P].

2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button on the keyless remote

The engine stops when the transmission is taken out of [P] before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.
When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

* Not available on all models

Precautions While Driving

■ Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvres whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the centre of gravity.
- Do not carry heavy luggage on the roof.

■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Continued

Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select N while driving as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Precautions While Driving

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

➡ **Important Handling Information** P. 44

In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Models with paddle shifter

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Continuously Variable Transmission

■ Creeping

When the engine runs at higher idle speeds, the creeping force increases.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped or ensure that brake-hold is engaged.

■ Kickdown

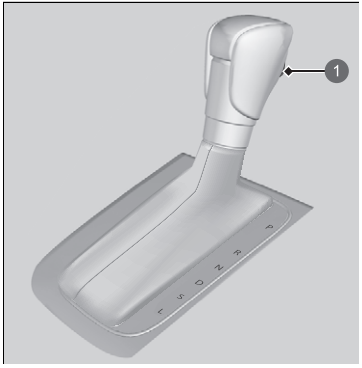
Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed.
Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Models without paddle shifter

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift positions



1 Release Button

P Park
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive
Used for normal driving

S Drive(S)
Used:
- For better acceleration.
- To increase engine braking.
- When going up or down hills.

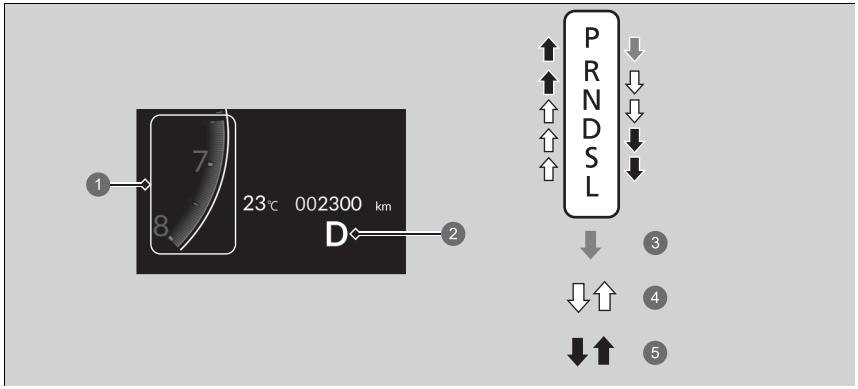
L Low
Used:
- To further increase engine braking.
- When going up or down hills.

Shift positions

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift position is in P.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

Shift Operation



1. Tachometer Red Zone
2. Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
3. Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
4. Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
5. Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift position from [D] to [R] and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

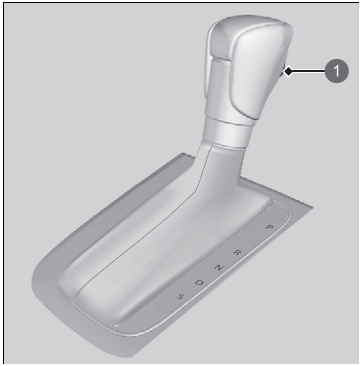
When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (–30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

Models with paddle shifter

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift positions



1 Release Button

P Park
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive
Used:
- For normal driving.
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode.

S Drive (S)
Used:
- For better acceleration
- To increase engine braking
- When going up or down hills
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

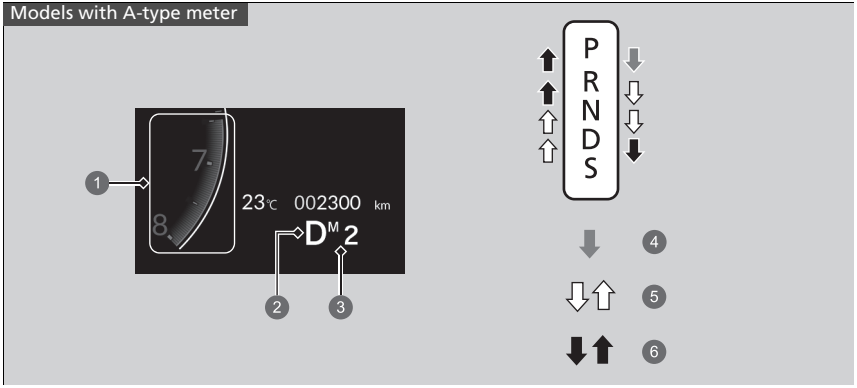
Shift positions

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift position is in P.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

Shift Operation

Models with A-type meter



1. Tachometer red zone
2. Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
3. **M** (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator
4. Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
5. Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
6. Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift position from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

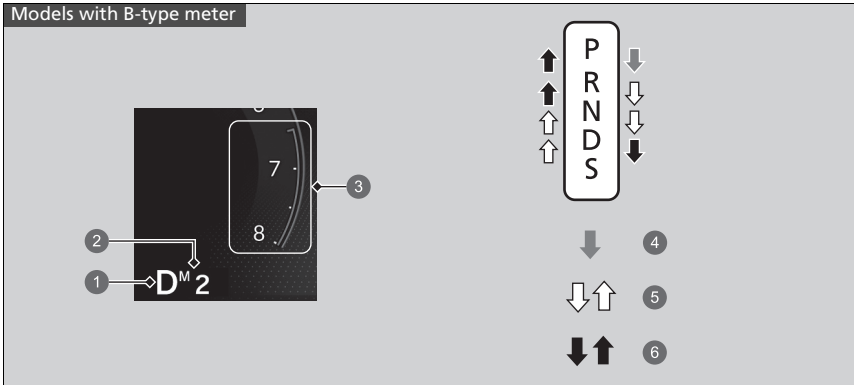
If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (–30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

Continued



❶ Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
❷ **M** (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator
❸ Tachometer Red Zone
❹ Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
❺ Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
❻ Press the shift lever release button and shift.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the transmission is in [D]:
The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.
Pulling the [+] paddle shifter for a few seconds will cancel this mode.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the transmission is in [S]:
The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, change the shift position from [S] to [D] or pull the [+] paddle shifter for a few seconds. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator will turn off.

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

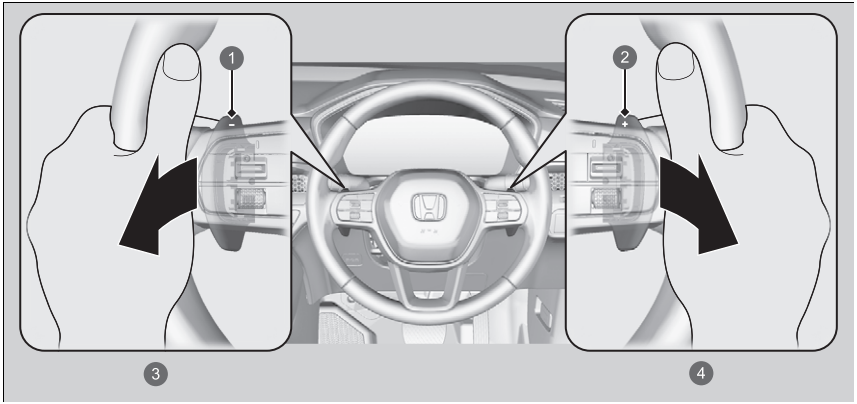
In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:
Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.
When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal [D] driving mode.

Continued

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



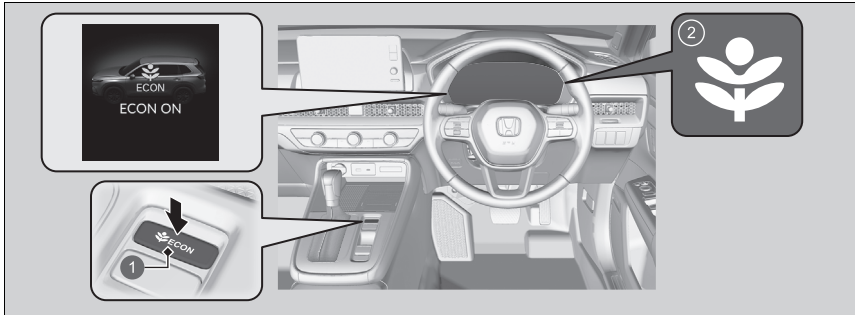
❶ −Paddle Shifter (Shift down)
❷ +Paddle Shifter (Shift up)
❸ Downshifting when pulling the −paddle shifter (Changes to lower speed number)
❹ Upshifting when pulling the +paddle shifter (Changes to higher speed number)

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.
To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.
Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

ECON Mode



❶ **ECON** Button
❷ ECON Mode Indicator

The **ECON** button turns the **ECON** mode on and off.
The **ECON** mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission and climate control system.

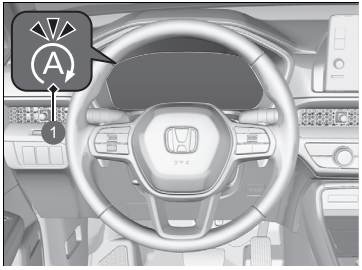
ECON Mode

While in **ECON** mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuation.

Due to emergency brakes operation or driving conditions, you may not be able to change the mode.

Auto Idle Stop*

To help to maximise fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on at this time.



1 Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)

The environmental and vehicle conditions that impact Auto Idle Stop system operation are varied.

➡ **Auto Idle Stop Activates When:** P. 631, 632

The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, and the indicator (green) goes off.

➡ **The Engine Automatically Restarts When:** P. 633

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator (green) comes on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

A message associated with Auto Idle Stop appears on the driver information interface.

Auto Idle Stop*

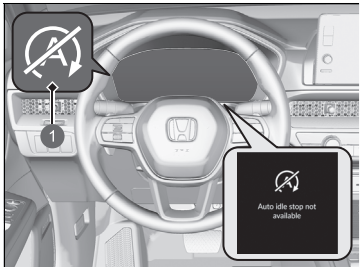
The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the 12-volt battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the 12-volt battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

The duration of the Auto Idle Stop operation:

- Increases in the **ECON** mode, compared to when the **ECON** mode is off, with climate control in use.

➡ **ECON Mode** P. 627

 * Not available on all models



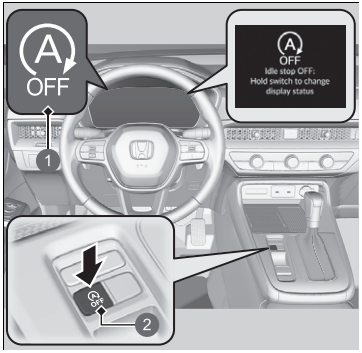
❶ Auto Idle Stop Suspend Indicator

The Auto Idle Stop suspend indicator comes on and a message appears on the driver information interface when the Auto Idle Stop system cannot be activated.

➡ **Indicators** P. 136
➡ **Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF** P. 630

Continued

■ Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF



❶ Auto Idle Stop **OFF** Indicator
❷ Auto Idle Stop **OFF** Button

To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

▶ Auto Idle Stop system will stop, the indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

If you turn off the Auto Idle Stop system while it is activated, the engine will restart.

Auto Idle Stop Activates When: P. 631

If you press and hold the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button, you can select whether to display the status messages or not.

■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

The vehicle stops with the transmission in D and the brake pedal depressed.
When you put the transmission into P quickly with depressing the brake pedal, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate, even if the brake pedal is released.

▶ If you depress the brake pedal, the engine may automatically restart.

■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The engine is not adequately warmed up or coolant temperature is high.
- The transmission fluid temperature is low or high.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h after the engine starts.
- The vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
- The transmission is in a position other than D.
- The engine is started with the bonnet open.
  ▶ Turn off the engine. Close the bonnet before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
- The battery charge is low.
- The internal temperature of the battery is 5°C or less.
- The climate control system is in use, and the outside temperature is below –20°C or over 40°C.
- The climate control system is in use, and the temperature is set to **Hi** or **Lo**.
- FRONT is ON (indicator on).

Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated. If the bonnet is opened, the engine will not restart automatically.
In this case, restart the engine with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 611

Pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button causes the engine to no longer restarts automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.

➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 611

When ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation, the vehicle stops without depressing the brake pedal and Auto Idle Stop may activate. In such cases, the engine may restart if you change the shift position other than D.

Continued

■ **Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:**

- The vehicle is stopped by braking suddenly.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The vehicle is repeatedly accelerated and decelerated at a low speed.
- The fan speed is high.
- The climate control system is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature.
- The climate control system is in use, and humidity in the interior is high.
- Altitude is high.

The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

- The brake pedal is released (without the automatic brake hold system activated).
- The accelerator pedal is depressed (with the automatic brake hold system activated).
  Automatic Brake Hold P. 771
- When the transmission is put into P from D or N on a slope.

The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed*1 when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The transmission is put into R, S, or L*, or when it is set from N to D.
  ▶ If you put the transmission into P after the Auto Idle Stop activates, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate. In this case, the engine restarts when you depress the brake pedal.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is reduced and the vehicle starts moving while stopped on an incline.
- The brake pedal is released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The driver's seat belt is unlatched.
- FRONT is ON (indicator on).
- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.
- The climate control system is being used to dehumidify the interior.
- The vehicle ahead of you starts again when your vehicle stops automatically with ACC with Low Speed Follow.

The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

If you are using an electronic device during Auto Idle Stop, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.

The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed*1 when:

*1: With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal while Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

If the automatic brake hold system has been turned off, or if there is a problem with the system, the engine will restart automatically when you release the brake pedal.
Automatic Brake Hold P. 771

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Starting Assist Brake Function

Briefly keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal to restart the engine. This can keep your vehicle from unexpectedly moving while on an incline.

Hill Descent Control System

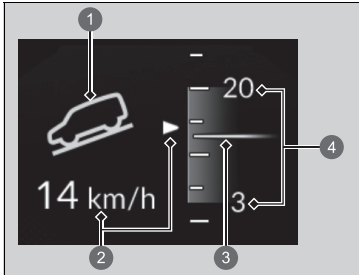
When driving down hills where engine braking is not enough to decelerate the vehicle, this system helps maintain a constant vehicle speed without needing to depress the brake pedal.

■ Hill Descent Control Operating Conditions

The system operates under the following conditions.

- Driving at a speed between about 3-20 km/h.
- Driving downhill.
- Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not depressed.

■ Driver Information Interface Display



❶ The system's operating status
- Green: Activated
- White: Standby

❷ Vehicle speed display
- White: Set speed
- Grey: Current speed
  ▶ Blinks when the vehicle speed is above the operating speed.

❸ Current speed

❹ Operating range of set speed

Hill Descent Control System

⚠WARNING

Hill descent control cannot maintain a constant vehicle speed in every situation.

When driving down a very steep hill or on slippery road surfaces, the vehicle may not be able to maintain the vehicle speed and could cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Since Hill Descent Control is not designed to increase the limits of vehicle performance, the driver must always be aware of road surface conditions and drive safely.

The brake lights automatically come on while the system is in operation.

The system may not operate when driving down a gentle slope. Check the Hill Descent Control System indicator to see if the system is in operation.

The system may activate even when not driving downhill, such as when the vehicle leans while driving over uneven surfaces.

Continued

■ How to Operate Hill Descent Control



❶ Hill Descent Control System Indicator
❷ (Hill Descent Control) Button

■ To turn the system on

When the vehicle speed is less than about 20 km/h, press the button to turn the system on.

▶ The system goes into standby mode, and the Hill Descent Control System indicator (white) comes on.

When all the working conditions are met, the system activates, and the vehicle begins to maintain the vehicle speed when driving downhill.

▶ The Hill Descent Control System indicator (green) comes on when operating.

■ To adjust the set speed

Depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal to adjust the vehicle speed within the operating range. The vehicle speed at which you release the accelerator pedal or brake pedal will be the set speed.

■ To turn the system off

Press the button to turn the system off.

How to Operate Hill Descent Control

Using the system repeatedly for a long time may cause the brakes to heat up and make the system go into standby mode temporarily.

Hill Descent Control is turned off every time you turn the engine off, even if it was turned on the last time you drove the vehicle.

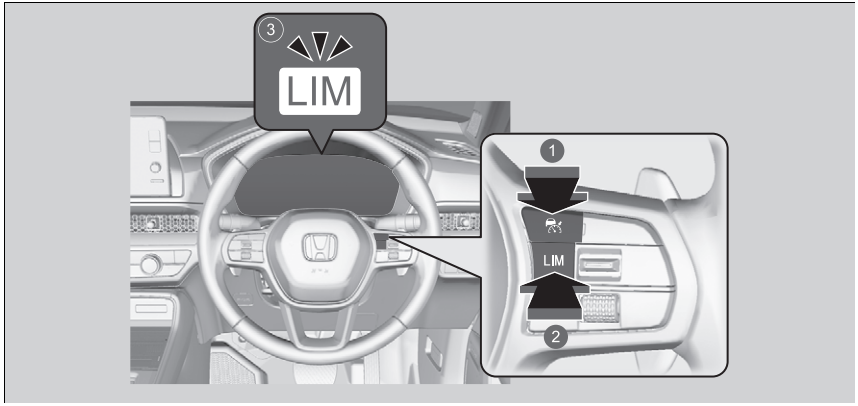
The pedals may vibrate or you may hear the system working when in operation.

To turn the system off

When the vehicle speed is about 60 km/h or more, the system turns off automatically.

Adjustable Speed Limiter*

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.
The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h to about 250 km/h.



❶ Press the button on the steering wheel.
❷ If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.
❸ **The Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
Adjustable speed limiter is ready to use.

▶▶Adjustable Speed Limiter*

⚠WARNING

Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations.
It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill, especially if you are carrying a heavy luggage or towing a trailer. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

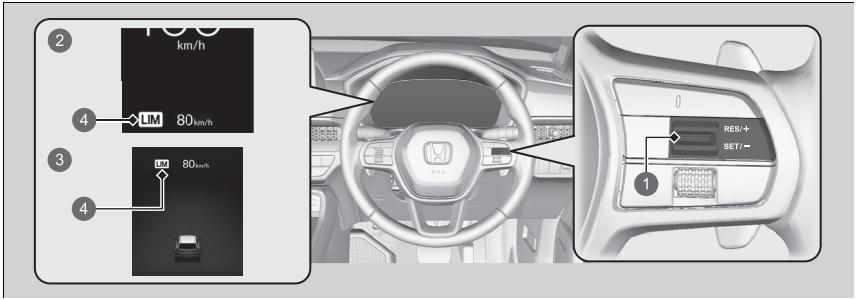
When not using the adjustable speed limiter:
Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the button.

You cannot use the Adjustable Speed Limiter and below systems at the same time.
-Adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow
-Intelligent speed limiter

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ To Set the Speed Limit



❶ **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
Up or down
❷ On when the adjustable speed limiter is set for models with A-type meter
❸ On when the adjustable speed limiter is set for models with B-type meter
❹ Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)

- Press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the **RES/+/SET/–** switch, the speed limit is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The speed limit is displayed.
- You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up.

To Set the Speed Limit

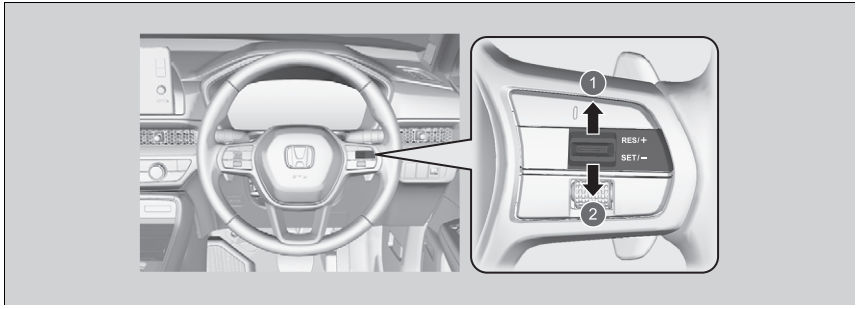
If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h, the speed limit is set to 30 km/h.

The displayed speed limit will blink continuously if your vehicle exceeds the speed limit by 1 km/h or more on a steep descent.
A few seconds after the speed limit starts blinking, a beeper sounds for about four seconds.
However, when any of the following conditions are met, the beeper will stop.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The accelerator pedal is released.

The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up.

■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+/SET/–** switch on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+/SET/–** switch pressed, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

Continued

■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal completely.

▶ The displayed limit speed blinks.

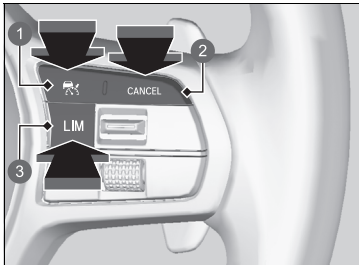
▶ The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel



1 Button
2 **CANCEL** Button
3 **LIM** Button

To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To Cancel

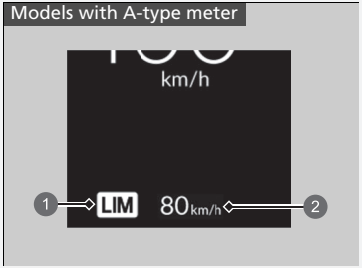
The adjustable speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or intelligent speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.

Resuming the prior set speed:
Press the **CANCEL** button to display the prior set speed (grey) and press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up to resume the prior set speed.
If you are driving at a speed faster than the prior set speed (grey), the adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed by pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up.
If you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up when no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.

Continued

To Cancel

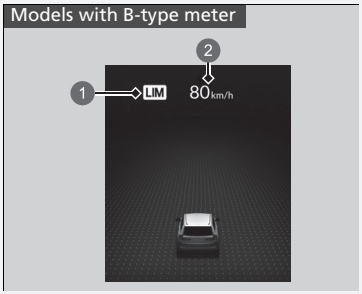
Models with A-type meter



❶ Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

❷ Prior Set Speed (Grey)

Models with B-type meter

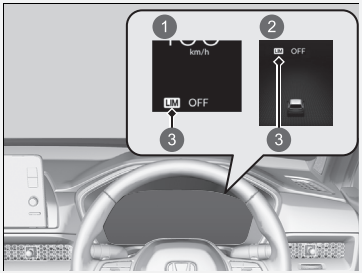


❶ Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

❷ Prior Set Speed (Grey)

To Cancel

If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.



❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter
❸ Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

Intelligent Speed Limiter*

Automatically sets the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. And the speed limit cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal. If you fully depress the accelerator the speed limit can be exceeded.

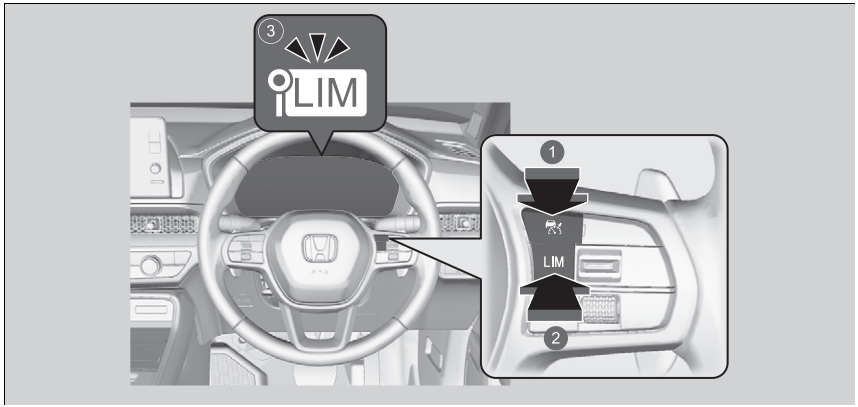
Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 756

⚠WARNING

Intelligent Speed Limiter has limitations. The Intelligent Speed Limiter may set itself to a speed above or below the actual speed limit, or may not work, particularly where the traffic sign recognition system does not operate correctly or where a road has no speed limit signs. It is always your responsibility to adjust the speed to obey the actual speed limit and to safely operate the vehicle.

Depending on the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will accelerate until it reaches the speed identified by the traffic sign recognition system.

 * Not available on all models



❶ Press the button on the steering wheel.
❷ If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to the intelligent speed limiter.
❸ **The Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
Intelligent speed limiter is ready to use.

Intelligent Speed Limiter*

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be detected, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 756

If the intelligent speed limiter is set to the wrong speed limit, try one of the following:
To cancel
- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To exceed the speed limit temporarily
- Depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The intelligent speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill, especially if you are carrying a heavy luggage or towing a trailer. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

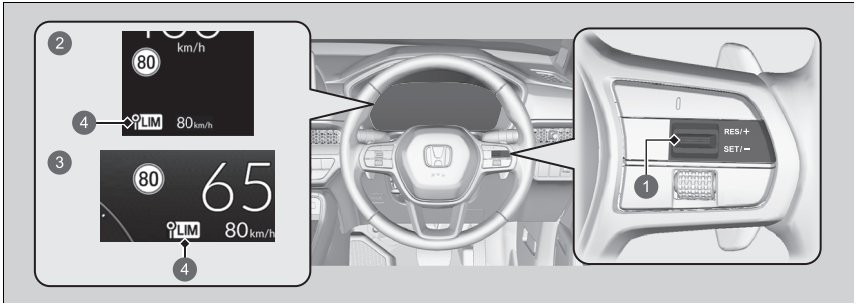
When not using the intelligent speed limiter, turn off the intelligent speed limiter by pressing the button.

You cannot use the intelligent speed limiter and adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

* Not available on all models

Continued

To Set the Speed Limit



1. **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
   Up or down
2. On when the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects for models with A-type meter
3. On when the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects for models with B-type meter
4. Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)

- The moment you release the **RES/+/SET/–** switch, the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. The speed limit is displayed.

Intelligent Speed Limiter*

Do not use the intelligent speed limiter in areas of different units from the display unit of the intelligent speed limiter.

To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the intelligent speed limiter when the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects is less than 30 km/h, the speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause.

If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit or less. If necessary, slow down by depressing the brake pedal. Also, the displayed speed limit blinks continuously when your vehicle exceeds the speed limit by 1 km/h or more.
A few seconds after the speed limit starts blinking, a beeper sounds for about four seconds.
However, when any of the following conditions are met, the beeper will stop.

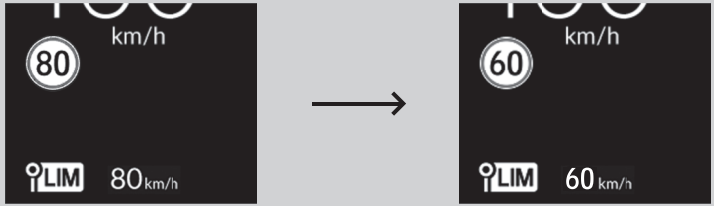
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The accelerator pedal is released.
- The vehicle speed becomes less than or equal to the displayed speed limit.

* Not available on all models

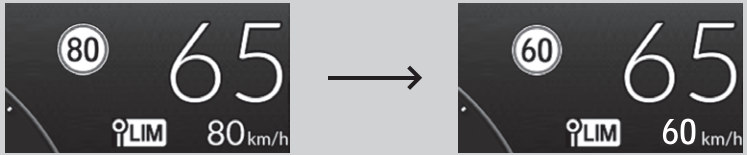
■ When the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign

The intelligent speed limiter is set to the new speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.

Models with A-type meter



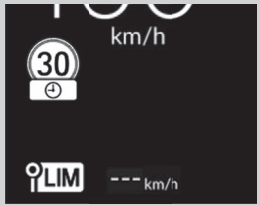
Models with B-type meter



To Set the Speed Limit

The intelligent speed limiter may also switch to pause when the traffic sign recognition system detects only additional speed limit signs.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter

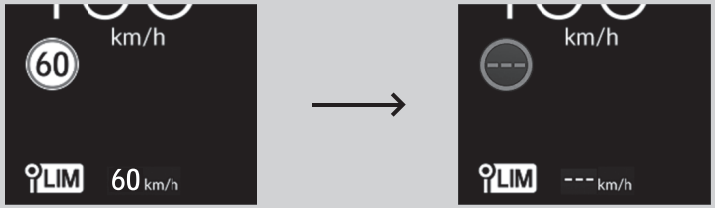


Continued

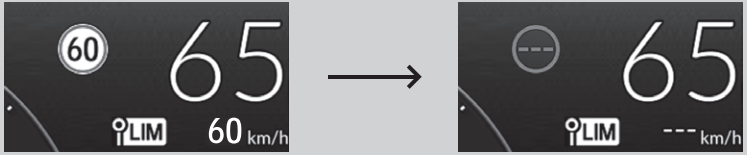
■ **The speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause if there is no speed limit sign in the screen of the traffic sign recognition system when:**

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal to change direction at an intersection.

Models with A-type meter



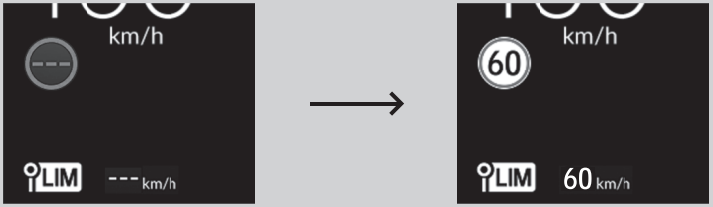
Models with B-type meter



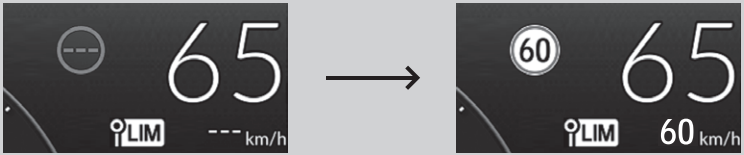
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system detects the speed limit sign while the intelligent speed limiter is paused**

The speed limitation function and warning function will be resumed automatically.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter

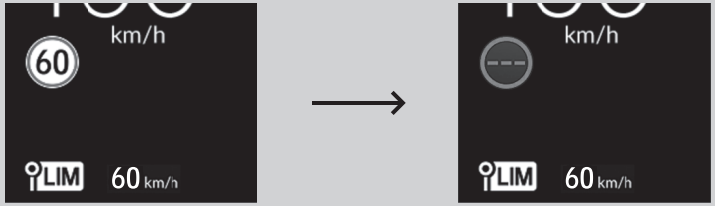


Continued

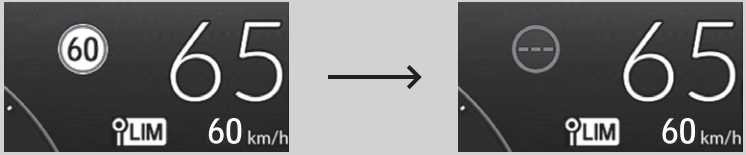
■ When the traffic sign recognition system does not detect the speed limit sign for a time while the intelligent speed limiter is activated

While driving, in addition to when the traffic sign recognition system detects no speed limit sign, the traffic sign recognition system may display no speed limit. But, intelligent speed limiter functions continue.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter

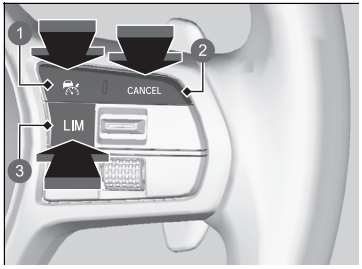


■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

▶ The displayed speed limit blinks.
The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

■ To Cancel



❶ Button
❷ **CANCEL** Button
❸ **LIM** Button

To cancel the intelligent speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The intelligent speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel

The intelligent speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or adjustable speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.



❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter
❸ Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

If there is a problem with the system or traffic sign recognition system when you are using the intelligent speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The intelligent speed limiter will be turned off.

Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 756

* Not available on all models

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

❶ VSA System Indicator

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/TPMS*, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

VSA On and Off

You can partially disable VSA features using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 165, 194
Vehicle Stability Assist Mode P. 209

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the VSA system is off, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Oceanian models

When the VSA system is off, trailer stability assist is also off.

Trailer Stability Assist* P. 606

* Not available on all models

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes each of the front and rear wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps to support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System*

Your vehicle is equipped with the AWD system. When the system senses a loss of front wheel traction, it automatically transfers some power to the rear wheels. This allows you to utilise all available traction and may increase mobility.

You still need to exercise the same care when accelerating, steering, and braking that you would in a two wheel drive vehicle.

If you excessively spin all four wheels and overheat the AWD system, only the front wheels receive power. Stop until the system cools down.

Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System*

NOTICE

Do not continuously spin the front tyres of your vehicle. Continuously spinning the front tyres can cause transmission or rear differential damage.

The AWD system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

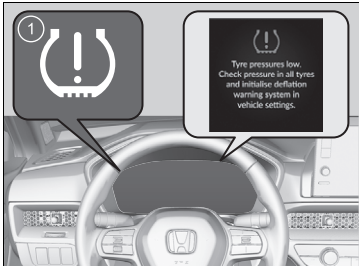
Tyre and Wheel Replacement P. 851

* Not available on all models

Taiwanese models

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

❶ Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 849

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- The tyre loses air pressure rapidly.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at calibration.

■ TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the TPMS:
- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  ➡ **Checking Tyres** P. 849

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in P.
- The power mode is in ON.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

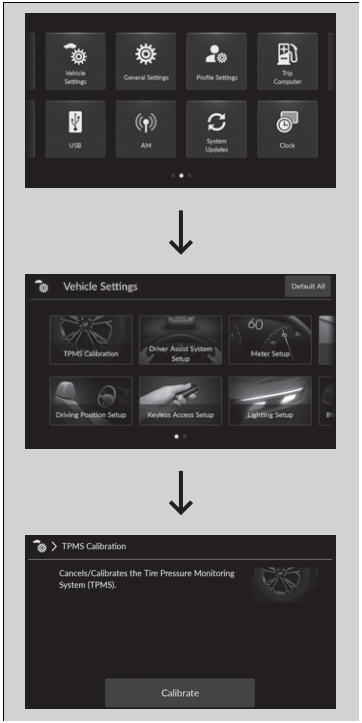
TPMS Calibration

The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h.
During this period, if power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

Continued



When you calibrate the TPMS, do the following.

Basic Operation P. 486

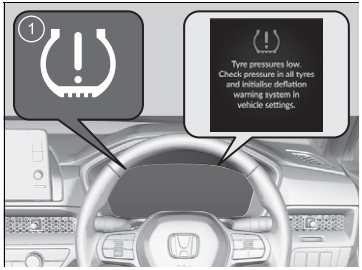
1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
4. Select **TPMS Calibration**.
5. Select **Calibrate**.

- If the **Calibration Failed To Start.** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Except Taiwanese models

Deflation Warning System*

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

❶ Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator

Deflation Warning System*

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.
Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 849

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains* are used.
- The tyre loses air pressure rapidly.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- A compact spare tyre* is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer*, than the condition at calibration.
- Tyre chains* are used.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:
- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  ➡ **Checking Tyres** P. 849

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in P.
- The power mode is in ON.

Deflation Warning System*

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Deflation Warning System Calibration

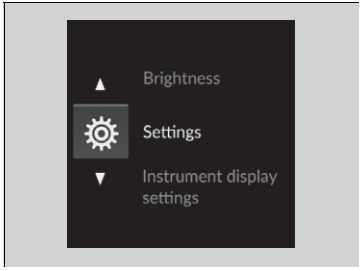
The deflation warning system cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tyre* is installed.
The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h.
During this period, if power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

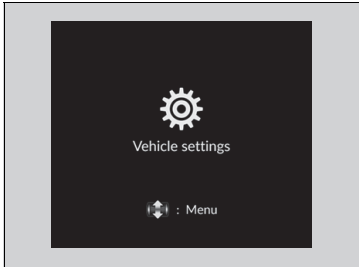
If the tyre chains* are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

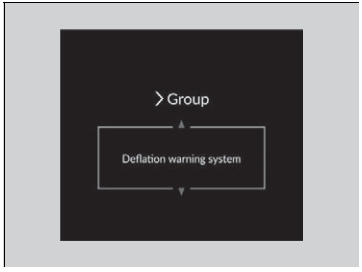
If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

 * Not available on all models







Models with colour audio system

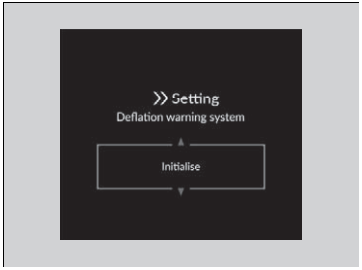
When you calibrate the deflation warning system, do the following.

Switching the Display P. 165

1. Press the (home) button, to select **Settings**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ **Vehicle settings** appears on the display.

2. Roll the left selector wheel.
▶ **Deflation warning system** appears on the display.

Continued

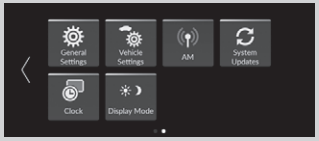


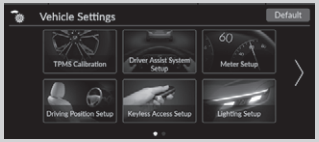
3. Press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.

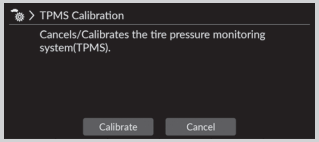
4. Roll the left selector wheel and select **Initialise**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ **Completed** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat step 4.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Models with Display Audio without Google built-in







When you calibrate the deflation warning system, do the following.

➡ **Basic Operation** P. 389

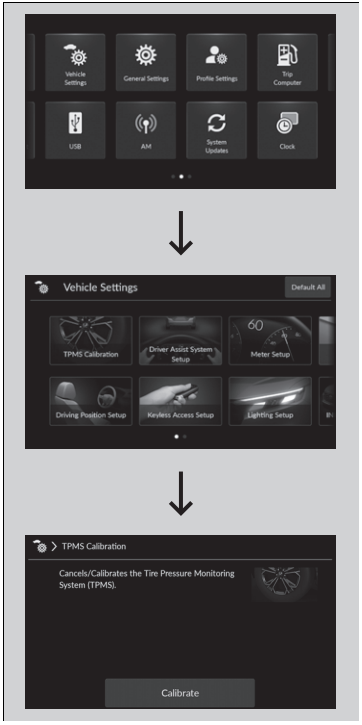
1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
4. Select **TPMS Calibration***1/**Deflation warning system***2.
5. Select **Calibrate** or **Cancel**.

- If the **Calibration Failed To Start.** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Continued

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in



When you calibrate the deflation warning system, do the following.

Basic Operation P. 486

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
4. Select **TPMS Calibration***1**/Deflation Warning System***2**.
5. Select **Calibrate**.

- If the **Calibration Failed to Start.** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

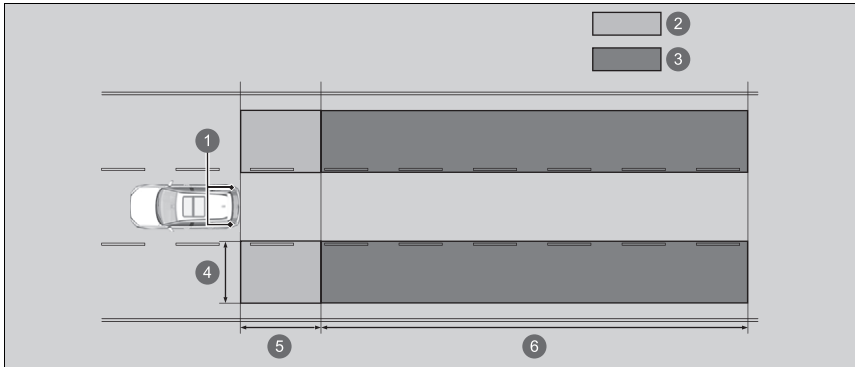
*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Blind Spot Information System*

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

How the System Works

The system activates when your vehicle is moving forward at about 20 km/h or above.



❶ Radar Sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners
❷ Alert Zone 1
❸ Alert Zone 2
Alert zone range
❹ Approx. 0.5 ~ 3 m from vehicle side.
❺ Approx. 3 m from rear bumper.
❻ Approx. 3 ~ 25 m behind from rear bumper. (The faster the approaching vehicle, the further away it will be detected.)

The initially set alert zone is alert zone 1. Over time, after the vehicle has been driven on straight roads with traffic and roadside objects, the system will adapt and expand the alert zone (alert zone 1 and 2).

* Not available on all models

Continued

Blind Spot Information System *

Important Safety Reminder

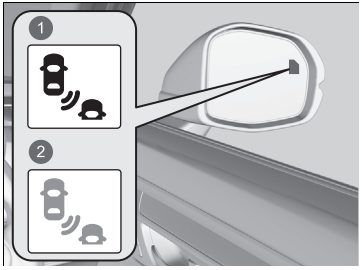
Like all assistance systems, the Blind Spot Information System has limitations. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes. Overreliance on the Blind Spot Information System may result in a collision.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer in the following situations:
- The rear bumper or area around the radar sensors is strongly impacted.
- The indicator does not come on even if a vehicle in the alert zone should have been detected.
- The rear bumper or any system components need to be repaired.

If the rear bumper or any system components are repaired, the system will revert to alert zone 1 only until it is able to adapt and expand to alert zone 1 and 2.

For proper Blind Spot Information System operation:
- Always keep the rear bumper and area around the radar sensors clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

■ When the system detects a vehicle



❶ Comes On
❷ Blinks

Blind Spot Information System alert indicator: Located on the outside door mirror on both sides.

Comes on when:

- A vehicle approaches you from behind to overtake you at a speed difference of no more than about 50 km/h.
- You pass a vehicle at a speed difference of no more than about 20 km/h.

Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You use the turn signal lever to signal a turn in the direction of the detected vehicle while the Blind Spot Information System alert indicator is on.

▶ The beeper sounds three times.

Blind Spot Information System*

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur:

- The Blind Spot Information System alert indicator does not come on and the **Blind spot information not available** message appears on the driver information interface.
- The Blind Spot Information System alert indicator may come on even with the message displayed.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/TPMS*, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Turn the system off when towing a trailer.
The system may not work properly for the following reasons:

- The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
- The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the Blind Spot Information System alert indicators to come on.

* Not available on all models

■ Blind Spot Information System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➔ **Switching the Display** P. 165, 194
➔ **Safety Support** P. 178, 207

The Blind Spot Information System will stay on the previously selected on or off setting each time you start the engine.

Blind Spot Information System *

You can change the settings for the Blind Spot Information System.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Blind Spot Information System Conditions and Limitations

The Blind Spot Information System alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

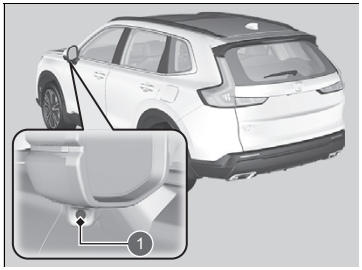
- There is a large speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle in the adjacent lane.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- The vehicle driving in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

The Blind Spot Information System may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well or a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up signal interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors is covered by dirt, mud, snow, ice, etc.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors has been damaged or deformed.
- In bad weather (heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a short turn or driving on a bumpy road that slightly tilts the vehicle.
- An object such as a bicycle rack is attached to the rear of the vehicle.

LaneWatch*

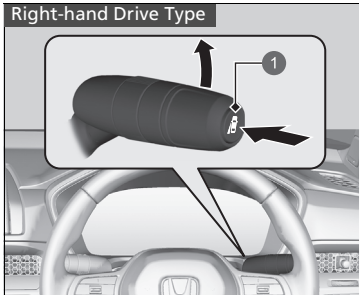
LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side.



A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.

1 Camera

Right-hand Drive Type



The system activates when you do either of the following operations:

- Press the LaneWatch button.
- Move the turn signal lever to the passenger side.

The system deactivates when you press the LaneWatch button again.

1 LaneWatch Button

LaneWatch*

⚠WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Overreliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

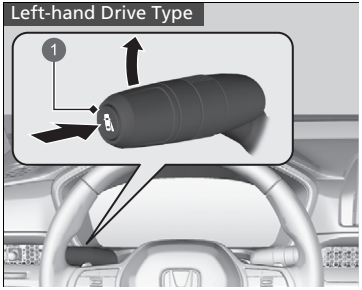
The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

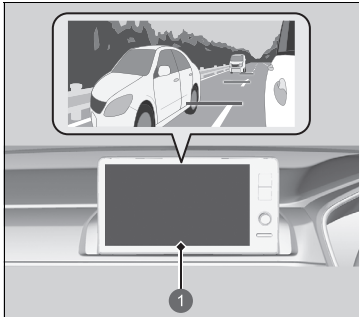
- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tyres are over or under inflated.
- Your tyres or wheels are of varied size or construction.

* Not available on all models

Continued



❶ LaneWatch Button



1 Audio/Information Screen

The passenger side view display appears on the audio/information screen.

■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with turn signal**[*1]**/Show with indicator**[*2]: Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal lever.
- **Display Time after Turn Signal Off**[*1]**/Display Time after Indicator Off**[*2]: Changes the remaining LaneWatch display time after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Show Reference Line**: Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display**: Adjusts display settings.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 443

*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

LaneWatch*

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the transmission is in R.

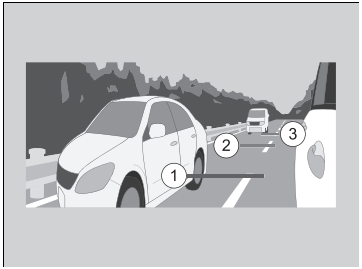
For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line ① (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line ③ is farther away.

Reference Lines

The area around the reference line ① (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

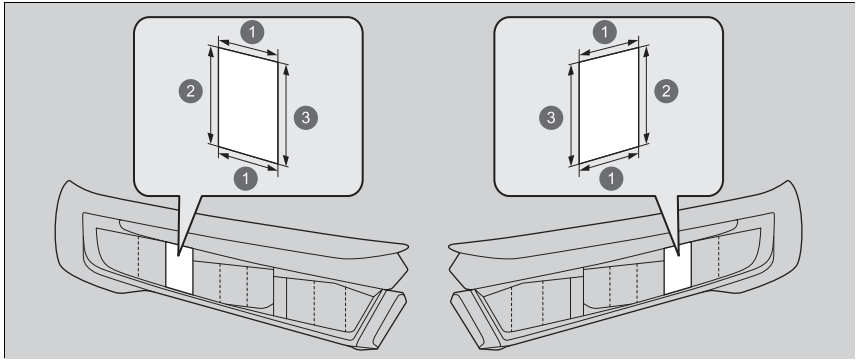
The distance between your vehicle and lines ①, ② and ③ on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

Adjusting Headlight Distribution*

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.



❶ 45 mm
❷ 49 mm
❸ 48 mm

1. Prepare for two pieces of masking tape as shown.
▶ Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

Adjusting Headlight Distribution*

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details.

* Not available on all models

Honda SENSING

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions.

■ The functions that do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ➡ P. 677
- Low Speed Braking Control* ➡ P. 691
- Road Departure Mitigation System ➡ P. 697
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* ➡ P. 751
- Traffic Sign Recognition System* ➡ P. 756
- Auto High-Beam ➡ P. 269
- Blind Spot Information System* ➡ P. 665
- Cross Traffic Monitor* ➡ P. 785
- Parking Sensor System ➡ P. 779
- Driver Attention Monitor ➡ P. 173, 202

■ The functions that require switch operations to activate

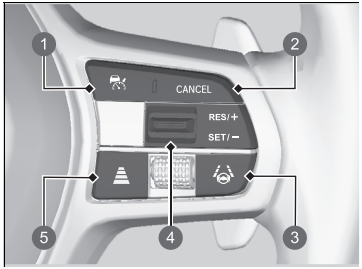
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ➡ P. 707
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➡ P. 729
- Intelligent Speed Limiter* ➡ P. 644

Oceanian and Singaporean models

- Traffic Jam Assist ➡ P. 742

* Not available on all models

Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/ Traffic Jam Assist*



❶ Button
Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow.
Or press to cancel the system.

❷ **CANCEL** Button
Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

❸ LKAS Button
Press to activate standby mode for LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist*.
Or press to cancel these systems.

❹ **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
Press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.
Press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch down to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

❺ Interval Button
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

* Not available on all models

Continued

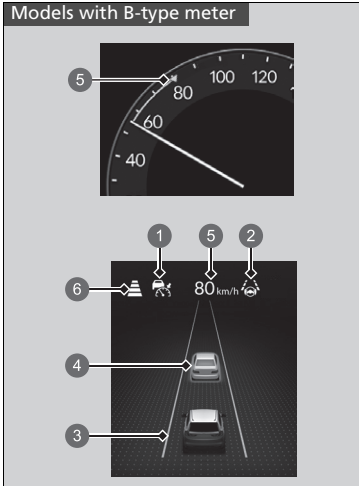
■ Gauge Content

You can see the current state of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), and Traffic Jam Assist*.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



❶ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is on.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❷ Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is operating.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❸ Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
- Green lines: The system is operating.
- White lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
- Amber line: Lane departure is detected.

❹ Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.

Models with B-type meter
- Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green
- Outside of control target vehicle: Grey

❺ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.

❻ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

Gauge Content

Models with head-up display

You can have the head-up display show you the current state of each function.

Head-Up Display* P. 212

Driving

* Not available on all models

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle).
The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder
The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:
CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 683

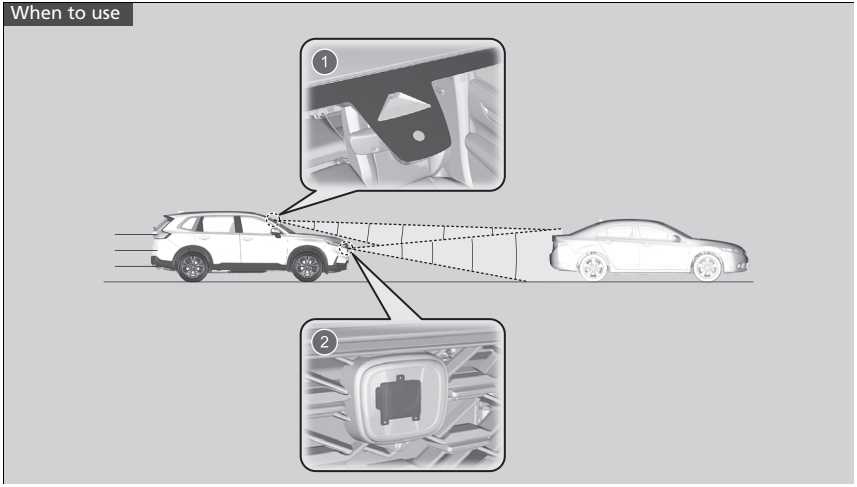
For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.
Radar Sensor P. 765

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
Front Sensor Camera P. 763

Continued

■ How the system works

When to use



❶ A front sensor camera is located behind the rearview mirror.
❷ The radar sensor is behind the Honda emblem on the front grille.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

How the system works

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 683

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of in frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle when you turn right*1/left*2 at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:

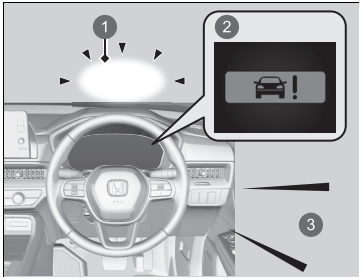
- An oncoming or stationary vehicle (including motorcycles) detected in front of you.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.
- A vehicle approaching from the side in front of you.

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.
The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

*1: Right-hand Drive Type
*2: Left-hand Drive Type

Continued

■ When the system activates



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

❶ Head-up Warning Lights*
❷ Visual Alerts
❸ Audible Alert

You can change the distance (**Long**[*1]/**Far**[*2], **Normal** or **Short**[*1]/**Near**[*2]) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

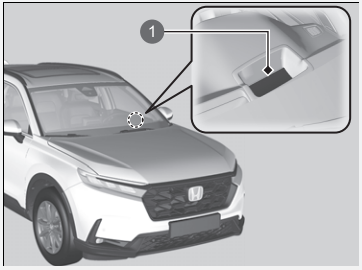
Vehicle Settings* P. 183
Customized Features P. 443, 540

When in **Long**[*1]/**Far**[*2], visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**[*1]/**Near**[*2], at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

When the system activates

Models with head-up display

The head-up warning uses a lens located at the front end of the dashboard.
Do not cover the lens or spill any liquid on it.



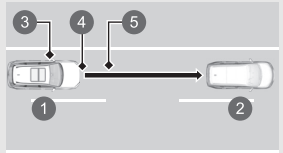
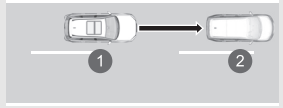
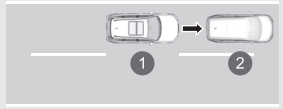
❶ Lens

*1: Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Taiwanese models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Taiwanese models

* Not available on all models

■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	The visual alert flashes. If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing. ▶ The collision warning distance can be changed. ➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183 ➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

❶ Your Vehicle
❷ Vehicle Ahead
❸ **Long**[*1]**/Far**[*2]
❹ **Normal**
❺ **Short**[*1]**/Near**[*2]

*1: Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Taiwanese models
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Taiwanese models

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ CMBS On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 165, 194
➡ **Safety Support** P. 178, 207

The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions:

➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 683

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/TPMS*, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the radar sensor or camera may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 763
➔ **Radar Sensor** P. 765

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the vehicles (including motorcycles), pedestrians, moving bicycles or roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, pedestrians, moving bicycles or other vehicles [including motorcycles], may not be detected).
- When nearby radio wave emitting devices such as other automotive radar sensors.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving through an area where there are objects that strongly reflect radio waves onto a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Continued

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- When tyre chains* are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage or suspension modifications.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor behind the Honda emblem on the front grille gets dirty.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.

Oceanian models

- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

* Not available on all models

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the radar sensor or camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, vehicle approaching from the side, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, vehicle approaching from the side, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, vehicle approaching from the side, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a carried object.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle is approaching diagonally from the side.
- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tank lorry or a lorry without a luggage) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

Continued

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the vehicle ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, three-wheeled vehicle, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle approaching from the side is significantly large.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrians, or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning right*1/left*2 at an intersection etc.)*3
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the radar and camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.
- When turning left or right and your turn signal is not activated in the same direction you are turning.

*1: Right-hand Drive Type

*2: Left-hand Drive Type

*3: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning right*1/left*2, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) come and stay on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The front of the camera or radar sensor behind the Honda emblem is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

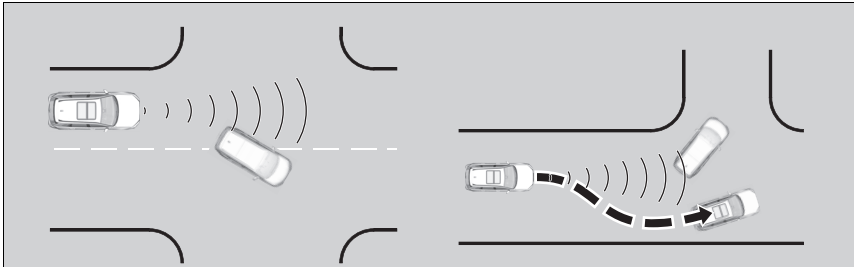
Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

Continued

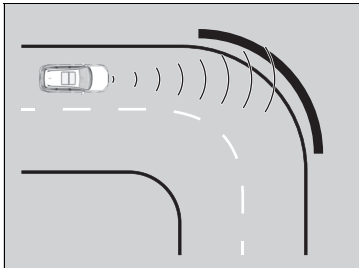
■ With Little Chance of a Collision

Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions.
Also, the system may activate if it detects a possibility of collision with pedestrians, moving bicycles, or vehicles.

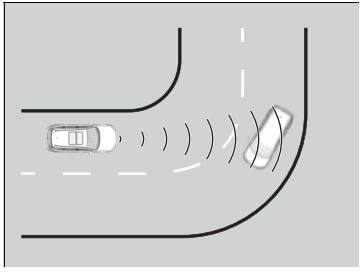
- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.



- When your vehicle approaches vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- When vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When you drive over roads with bumps, train tracks, or construction steel plates.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

Continued

- A vehicle approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is turning left or right.
- You pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle turns left or right while approaching your vehicle from the side.
- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- You pass close by the side of a vehicle parked on the street.

Low Speed Braking Control*

The Low Speed Braking Control system has three functions: Low Speed Brake, Collision Mitigation Throttle Control, and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control. Using sonar sensors located on the front and rear bumpers, the vehicle detects if there danger of collision with a wall or other obstacle when the accelerator is depressed with too much force, and the system assists in avoiding collisions and reducing damage from impact by limiting power system output.

Low Speed Braking Control*

⚠WARNING

The Low Speed Braking Control System cannot avoid all collisions and may not reduce damage in each situation where the accelerator is mistakenly or aggressively pressed.
Overreliance on the system may result in a collision with serious injury or death.
Always check your surroundings, your shift position, and your pedal use. Driver remains responsible for safely operating the vehicle.

If the Low Speed Braking Control activates in a situation where you do not want automatic brake application (such as when the vehicle is between two railroad crossing gates), simply press the brake pedal to deactivate the system and then continue to drive as intended.

If the system is activated by curbs/parking curbs or level differences on the road and you are unable to park or clear them, turn the system off.

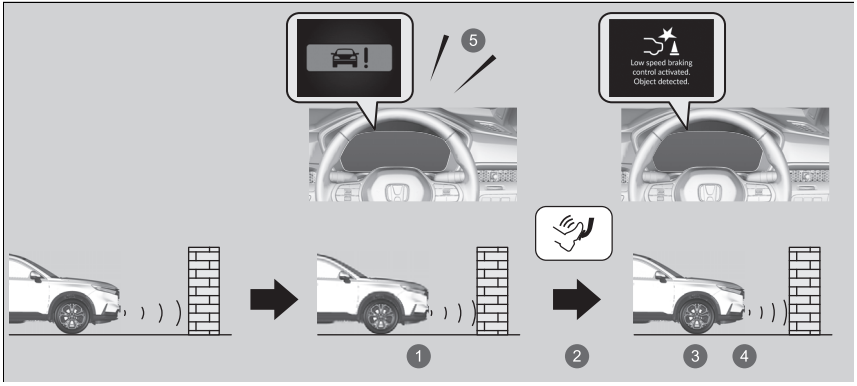
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ How the System Works

■ Low Speed Brake function

The Low Speed Brake function provides a visual and audible alert when the vehicle is moving between approximately 2 and 10 km/h and there is the possibility of a collision with a detected wall or other obstacles, as well as providing assistance with braking.



1. The vehicle applies brake
2. Driver depresses brake pedal
3. Stop
4. Remove brake after maintaining stationary position
5. Audible Alert

If only the rear parking sensors are turned off, the Low Speed Brake function will not work when reversing.

Customized Features P. 443, 540

Low Speed Braking Control*

For directions on the proper handling of the sonar sensors, please refer to the following page.

Sonar Sensors* P. 766

The vehicle will release the brake and start moving a few seconds after the system is activated. To keep the vehicle stopped, keep the brake pedal depressed or put the transmission into P.

In order to prevent the system from activating when not needed, always turn it off during vehicle maintenance, when loading on ships, trucks, and so on, or when using a chassis dynamometer or free rollers for inspection.

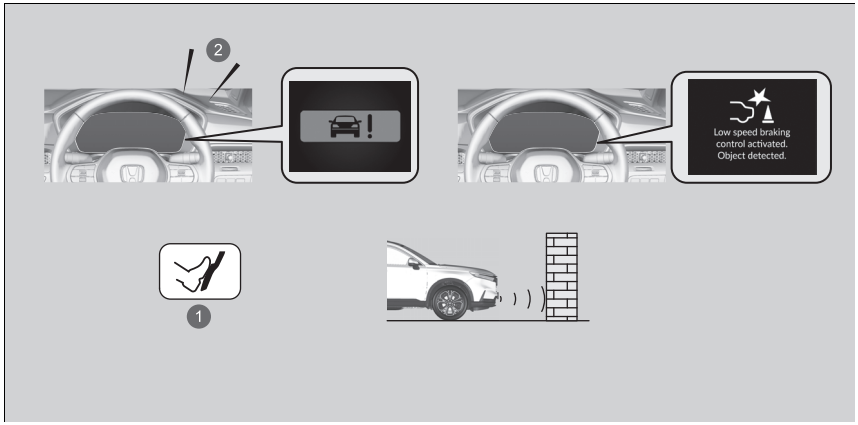
If you put any accessories (such as a towing hitch or bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the Low Speed Braking Control System may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

Customized Features P. 443, 540

* Not available on all models

■ Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control

When the vehicle is stopped or moving at less than 10 km/h and there is an obstacle such as a wall detected near the front or back of the vehicle, if the accelerator pedal is depressed more than necessary, the system will inform you with a visual and audible alert. At the same time, the system will prevent sudden forward or backwards movement by limiting the output of the engine, then Low Speed Brake function will activate when you get closer to the obstacle.



❶ Accidental depression of the accelerator/Limiting the output of the engine
❷ Audible Alert

Continued

Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control will not activate in the following situations.
When moving forward:
- When on a steep slope or the shift position is in P, R, or N.

When reversing:
- When on a steep slope or the shift position is in a position other than R.

If only the rear parking sensors are turned off, the Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control will not work when reversing.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

■ System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➔ **Switching the Display** P. 165, 194
➔ **Safety Support** P. 178, 207

The system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

System On and Off

The Low Speed Braking Control system may temporarily turn off after reconnecting the battery. The system will automatically turn ON after the vehicle has been moving at over 20 km/h for some time.
If the system does not turn on, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Conditions for Cancellation

Conditions for Collision Mitigation Throttle Control, and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control:

- When the accelerator is no longer depressed.
- When the accelerator is depressed for approximately four seconds.
- When the brake pedal is depressed.

Conditions for Low Speed Brake function cancellation:

- A certain amount of time has passed since activation.

■ Low Speed Braking Control System Conditions and Limitations

The system may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

■ Examples of obstacles the sonar sensors cannot detect

- Obstacles that do not reflect sound waves well, such as people, snow, cloth, sponges, etc.
- Thin obstacles such as fences, bicycles, sign posts, etc.
- Short or small obstacles.
- Obstacles immediately in front of the bumper.
- Obstacles that are not perpendicular to the ground.
- Moving objects or obstacles that suddenly enter the road.

Conditions for Cancellation

After Low Speed Brake and Collision Mitigation Throttle Control have activated once, they will not activate again for the same obstacle.
They can be activated again after driving for some time after the last activation.

Low Speed Braking Control activates separately when moving forward and reversing. (For example, if it activates when moving forward, it can be activated again immediately if reversing.)
However, if Low Speed Brake function has been activated, in order to activate Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control again, it is necessary to drive for a certain distance to reset the system.

Continued

■ **Examples of situations where the sonar sensors cannot detect obstacles**
- The sonar sensors are dirty (covered by snow, water, mud, etc.).
- The vehicle is too hot or cold.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply when approaching the obstacle at an angle.

■ **Examples of other cases where the system may not work correctly**
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage or suspension modifications.
- Bad weather conditions such as heavy rain, fog, snow, sandstorms, etc.
- The ambient temperature/humidity is too high or low.
- When going down a very steep slope.
- When driving off-road such as on dirt, grass or rocks.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).

■ **Situations where the system may activate even without risk of a collision**
- When passing through short or narrow gates.
- When driving on uneven surfaces, grassy areas, or places with steps.
- When a sloped pillar or wall is protruding from a high position.
- When there are obstacles next to the road.
- When driving toward flags, curtains, tree branches, railroad crossing bars, etc.
- When driving on flooded roads.

 * Not available on all models

Road Departure Mitigation System

Oceanian and Singaporean models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

Except Oceanian and Singaporean models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.

Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

Oceanian and Singaporean models

The Road Departure Mitigation system alerts you when the system detects that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder), an oncoming vehicle, or drifting into another lane without using a turn signal.

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or every instance of lane drift.

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle.

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not be able to assist you depending on weather, speed or road conditions.

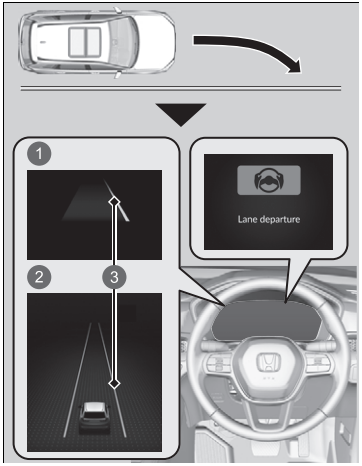
Except Oceanian and Singaporean models

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

Continued

■ How the System Works

Oceanian and Singaporean models



❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter
❸ Amber line

The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings in white or yellow, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel road shoulder) or a detected oncoming vehicle.
If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel road shoulder) or a detected oncoming vehicle when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

▶ If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles. In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you remain within the detected lane.
Vehicle Settings* P. 183
Customized Features P. 443, 540

As a visual alert, the **Lane departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle.

Road Departure Mitigation System

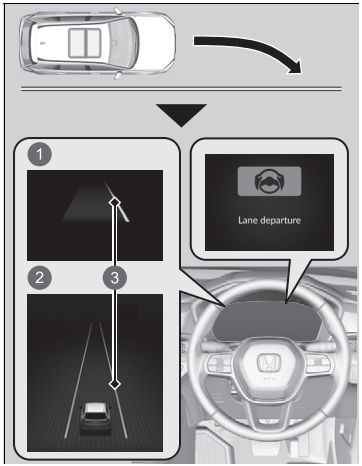
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
Front Sensor Camera P. 763

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:
Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations P. 703

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

* Not available on all models

Except Oceanian and Singaporean models



The front camera located behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183
➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

As a visual alert, the **Lane departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter
❸ Amber line

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Oceanian and Singaporean models

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.
If LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or oncoming vehicle.

➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183
➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

Except Oceanian and Singaporean models

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.
If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

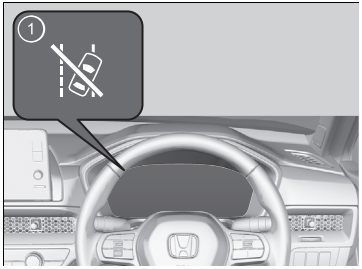
➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183
➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540



* Not available on all models

Continued

All models



❶ Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator goes off and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The lane markings are white (yellow).
  The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.

Oceanian and Singaporean models

▶ When oncoming vehicles are running
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.

Oceanian and Singaporean models

- The outer edge of the pavement is grass or gravel road shoulder.
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.

All models

- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.

How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Road Departure Mitigation indicator (amber) comes and stays on.

Indicators P. 136

The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

Continued

■ Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 165, 194
➡ **Safety Support** P. 178, 207

Except Oceanian models

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you start the engine.

Oceanian models

The Road Departure Mitigation system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

Except Oceanian models

When you have selected **Warning Only**[*1]/**Warning only**[*2], the system does not operate the steering wheel.

➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183
➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/TPMS*, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Taiwanese models with Display Audio
*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine and Taiwanese models with Display Audio

* Not available on all models

■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

Oceanian and Singaporean models

The system may not properly detect lane markings (in white or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

Except Oceanian and Singaporean models

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.

Oceanian and Singaporean models

- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.

Continued

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.

Oceanian models

- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Oceanian and Singaporean models

■ **Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles**

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of an oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.

Oceanian and Singaporean models

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation**

- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

Oceanian and Singaporean models

■ **With Little Chance of a Collision**

The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

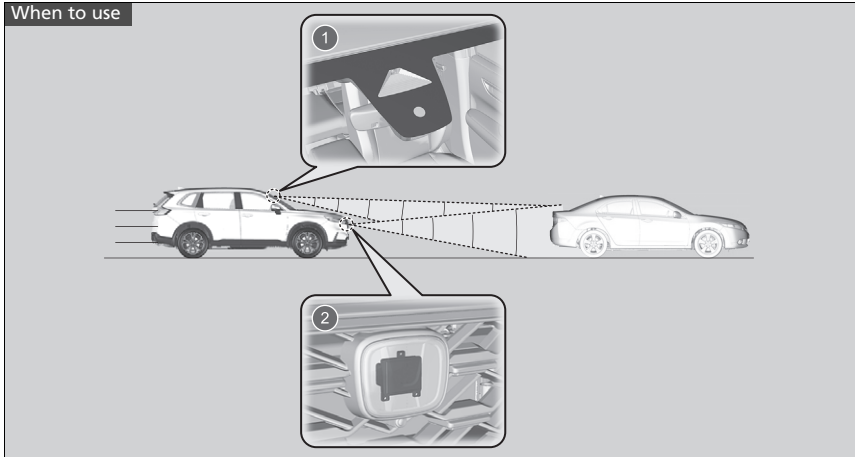
- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



❶ A front sensor camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

❷ The radar sensor is behind the Honda emblem on the front grille.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

⚠WARNING

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

⚠WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Continued

- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h.
  No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D or S.

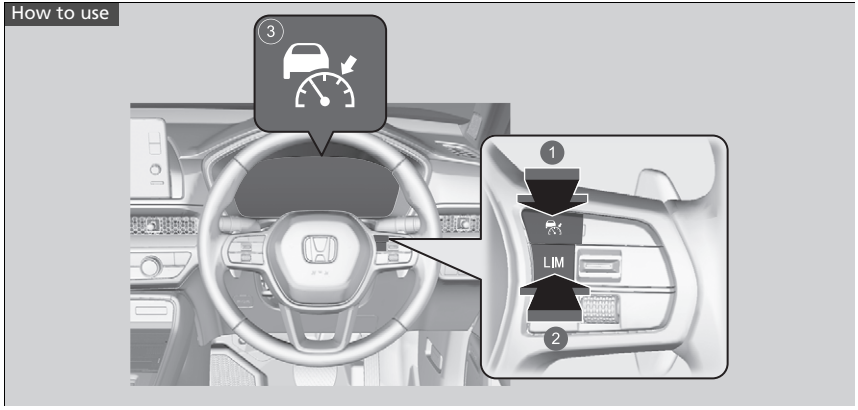
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.
➔ **Radar Sensor** P. 765

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 763

■ How to activate the system



❶ Button
Press the button on the steering wheel.

❷ **LIM** Button*
If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to ACC with Low Speed Follow.

❸ The (white) is on in the gauge.
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

The radar sensor for ACC with Low Speed Follow is shared with the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS).

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 677

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

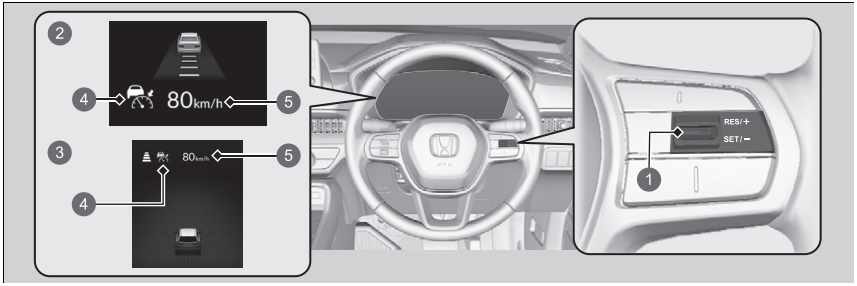
ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 719

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the button.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



❶ **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
Up or down
❷ On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins for models with A-type meter
❸ On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins for models with B-type meter
❹ (green)
❺ Set Vehicle Speed (white)

When driving at about 30 km/h or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the switch, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

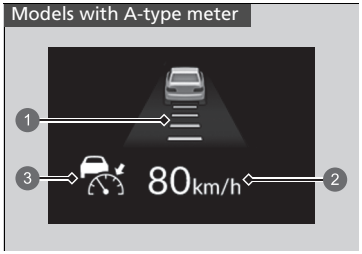
- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC with Low Speed Follow may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/TPMS*, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h.
Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

When driving slower than about 30 km/h: If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the switch fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed.
If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.

Models with A-type meter

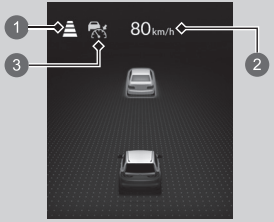


When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the gauge.

❶ Set Vehicle Interval
❷ Set Vehicle Speed
❸ (green)

Continued

Models with B-type meter



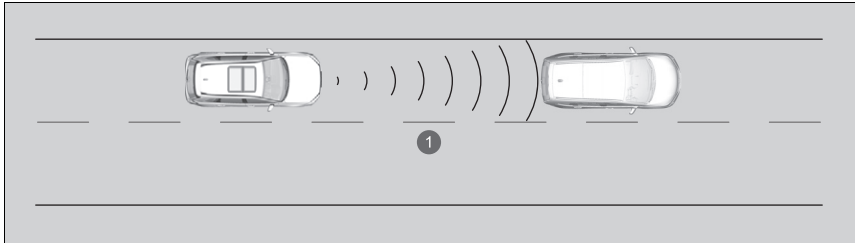
❶ Set Vehicle Interval
❷ Set Vehicle Speed
❸ (green)

When in Operation

There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

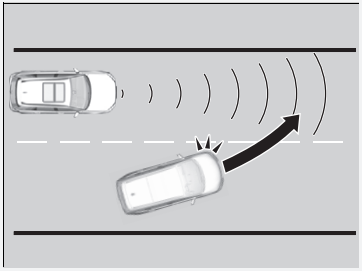
To Set or Change Following-interval P. 724



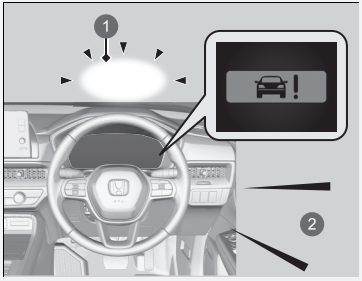
❶ ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 120 m

When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface, and the head-up warning lights* flash.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.

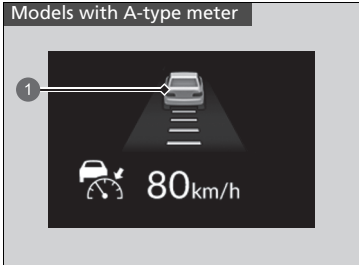


❶ Head-up Warning Lights*
❷ Audible Alert

* Not available on all models

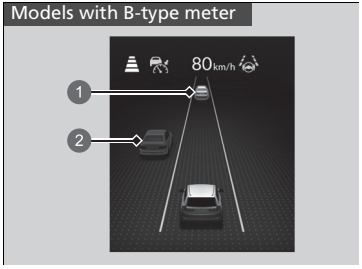
Continued

Models with A-type meter



❶ A vehicle icon appears on the gauge

Models with B-type meter



A vehicle icon appears on the gauge

❶ Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green

❷ Outside of control target vehicle: Grey

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the radar and the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range.
A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183
➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

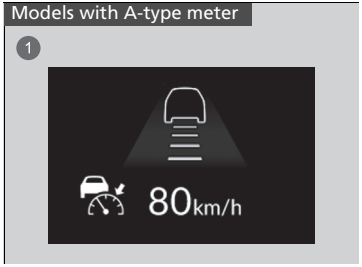
➡ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 719

Driving

* Not available on all models

■ There is no vehicle ahead

Models with A-type meter



❶ A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

While driving down steep hills, ACC with Low Speed Follow brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

Models with B-type meter



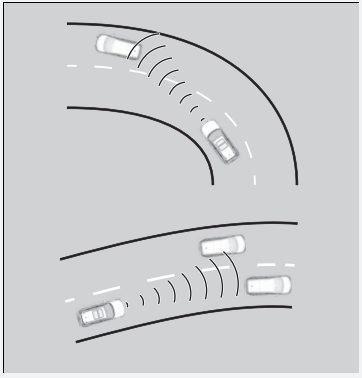
Continued

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

When in Operation

- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop

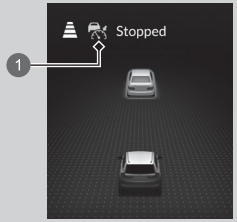
Models with A-type meter



Your vehicle also stops automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+** /**SET/–** switch up or down, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the previously set speed.

❶ (green)

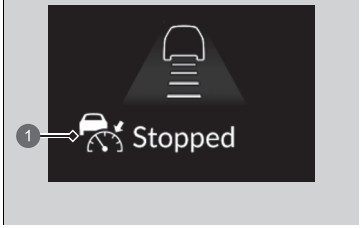
Models with B-type meter



❶ (green)

Continued

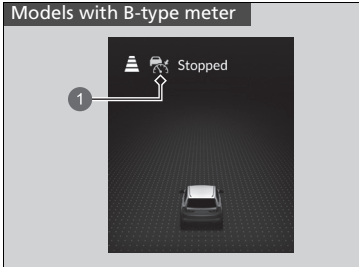
Models with A-type meter



If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

❶ (green)

Models with B-type meter



❶ (green)

■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 763
➔ **Radar Sensor** P. 765

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- When nearby radio wave emitting devices such as other automotive radar sensors.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

■ Vehicle conditions

- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The area around the front grille is obstructed by dirt, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage or suspension modifications.
- Tyre chains* are installed.

Oceanian models

- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

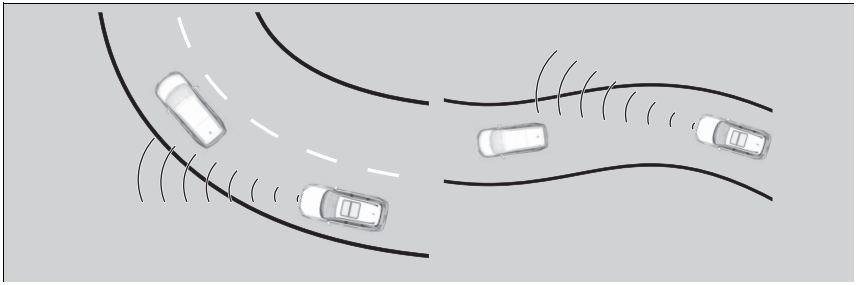
ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the front grille is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

■ **Detection limitations**

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- You accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- There are animals in front of your vehicle.
- You drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.

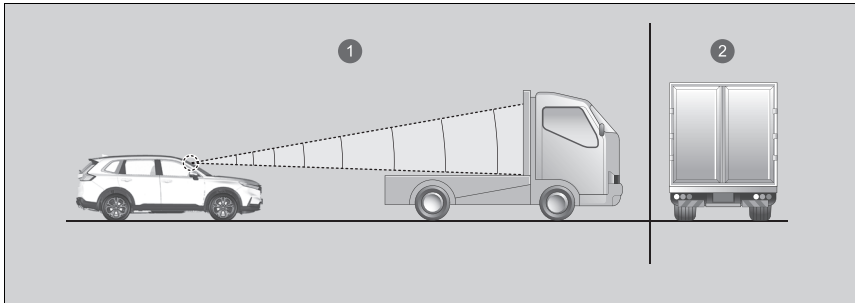


- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.

- Driving through a narrow metal bridge.



- The vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- The vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.

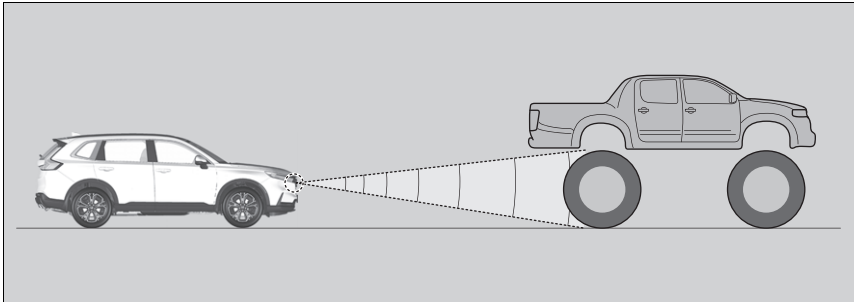


❶ Sensor detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.
❷ Panel lorry, tanker lorry, etc.

- Your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

Continued

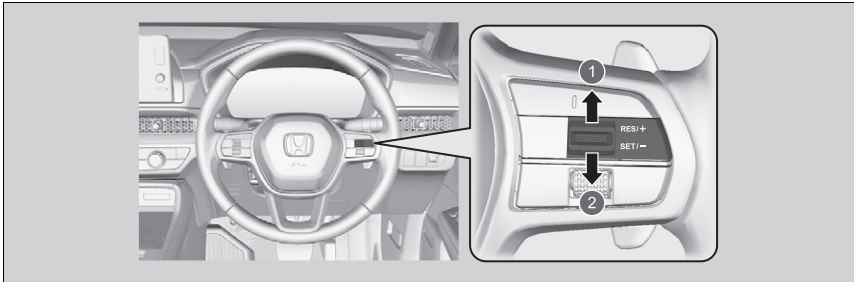
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.



- When the radar and camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+/SET/–** switch on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

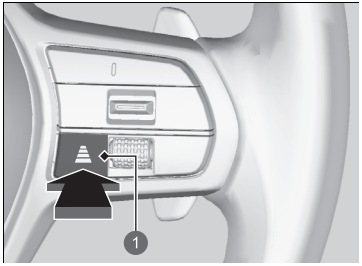
To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press down and release the **RES/+/SET/–** switch, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

Continued

■ To Set or Change Following-interval



❶ Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short	 *1 *2	22 metres 1 sec	29 metres 1 sec
Middle	 *1 *2	34 metres 1.5 sec	43 metres 1.5 sec
Long	 *1 *2	47 metres 2.1 sec	61 metres 2.1 sec
Extra Long	 *1 *2	64 metres 2.9 sec	83 metres 2.9 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

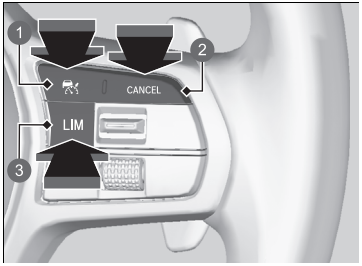
*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

Continued

■ To Cancel



❶ Button
❷ **CANCEL** Button
❸ **LIM** Button*

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Press the **LIM** button*.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up even if the vehicle is stopped.

When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.

When pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed.

If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.

* Not available on all models

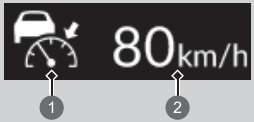
■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor behind the Honda emblem on the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, CMBS, Low Speed Braking Control* or Post-Collision Braking System is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.
- When the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.

To Cancel

Models with A-type meter



❶ (white)
❷ Prior Set Speed (grey)

Models with B-type meter



❶ (white)
❷ Prior Set Speed (grey)

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

* Not available on all models

Continued

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The engine is turned off.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

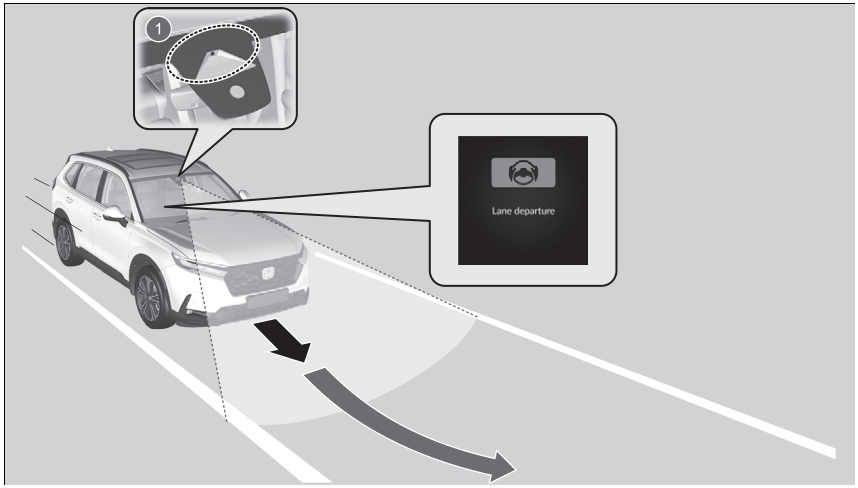
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



❶ Front Sensor Camera: Monitors the lane lines

Continued

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

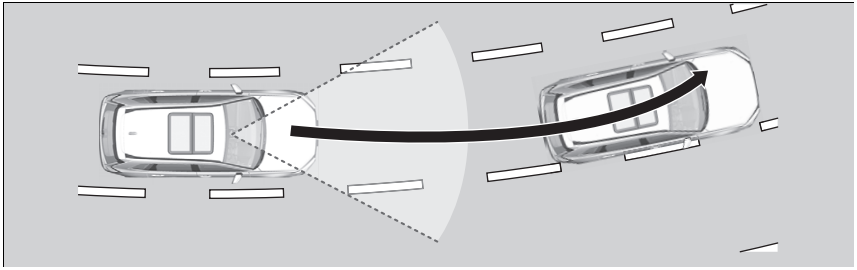
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
Front Sensor Camera P. 763

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:
LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 738

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.
If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



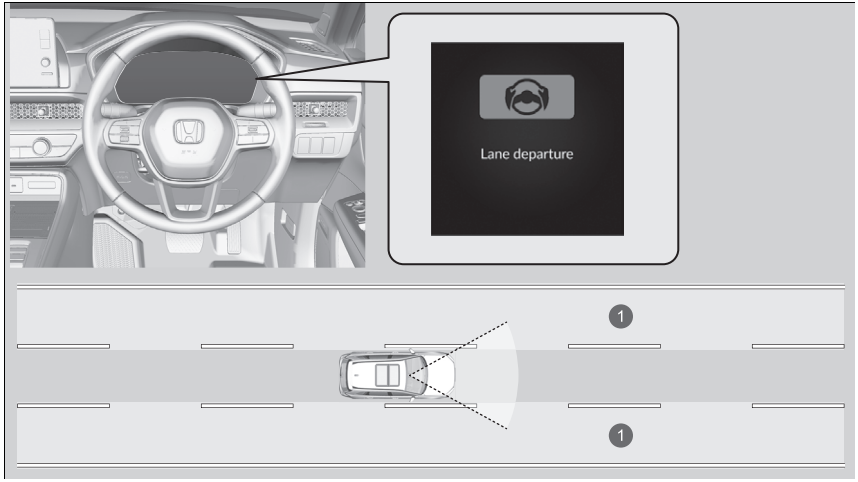
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



❶ Warning Area

Continued

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not suddenly depressed.

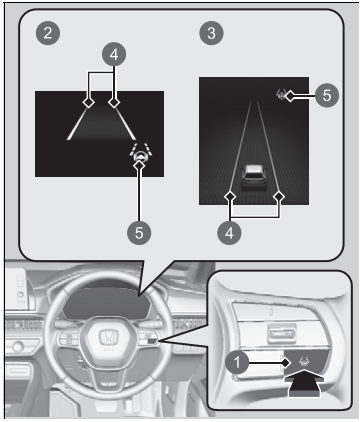
When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Follow the points below to properly activate the system:

- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.

■ How to activate the system



❶ LKAS Button
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter
❹ White Lines
❺ LKAS indicator (white)

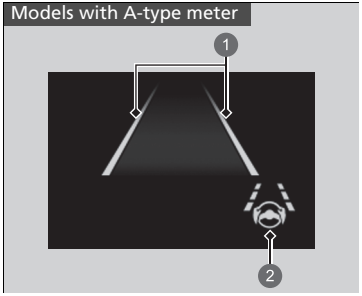
1. Press the LKAS button.
▶ LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.
The system is standby.
▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

When the System can be Used

If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.

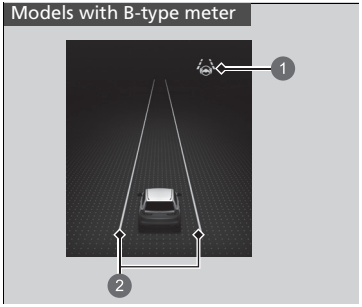
Continued

Models with A-type meter



❶ Green lines
❷ LKAS indicator (green)

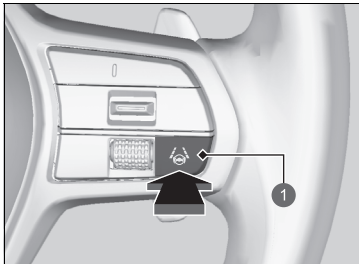
Models with B-type meter



❶ LKAS indicator (green)
❷ Green lines

2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

To Cancel



Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

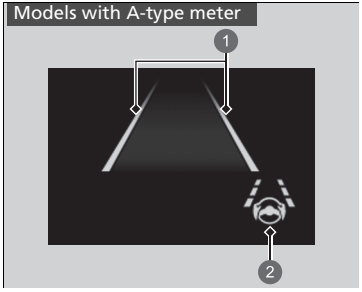
1 LKAS Button

Continued

■ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

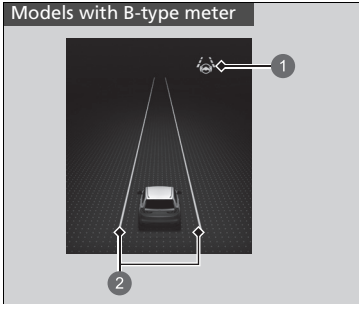
When the LKAS is suspended under the following circumstances, green lines on the gauge change to white lines or disappear, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

Models with A-type meter



❶ White lines
❷ LKAS indicator (white)

Models with B-type meter



❶ LKAS indicator (white)
❷ White lines

Except Oceanian and Singaporean models

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.

All models

- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.
➔ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183
➔ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

Driving

* Not available on all models

■ The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically cancelled:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

Continued

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

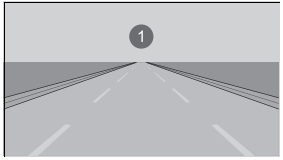
The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and LKAS may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

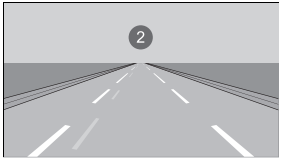
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

■ **Roadway conditions**

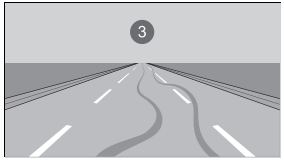
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.



❶ Faded lines

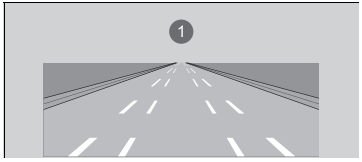


❷ Duplicate lines



❸ Tyre tracks

- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

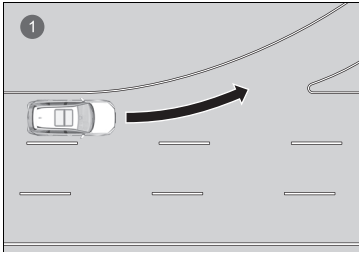


❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

Continued

- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



1 Lane void of lines at junction

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains* are installed.

Oceanian models

- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

* Not available on all models

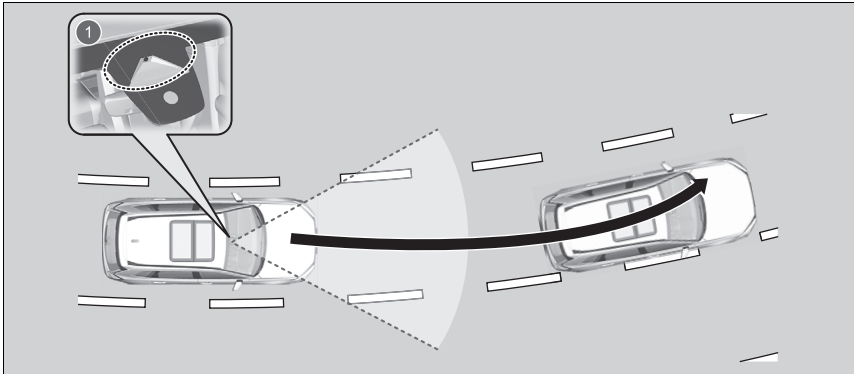
Oceanian and Singaporean models

Traffic Jam Assist

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

■ How Traffic Jam Assist works

When you are in heavy traffic and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active, the Traffic Jam Assist system, upon detecting the traffic lane lines, will apply steering torque to help keep your vehicle in the centre of the lane.



1 Front Sensor Camera
Detects left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines

When you use the turn signal to indicate a lane change, Traffic Jam Assist is temporarily deactivated. It is reactivated once the vehicle is travelling in the centre of the lane and the system has detected the traffic lane lines.

Traffic Jam Assist

Important Safety Reminders
Traffic Jam Assist is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 763

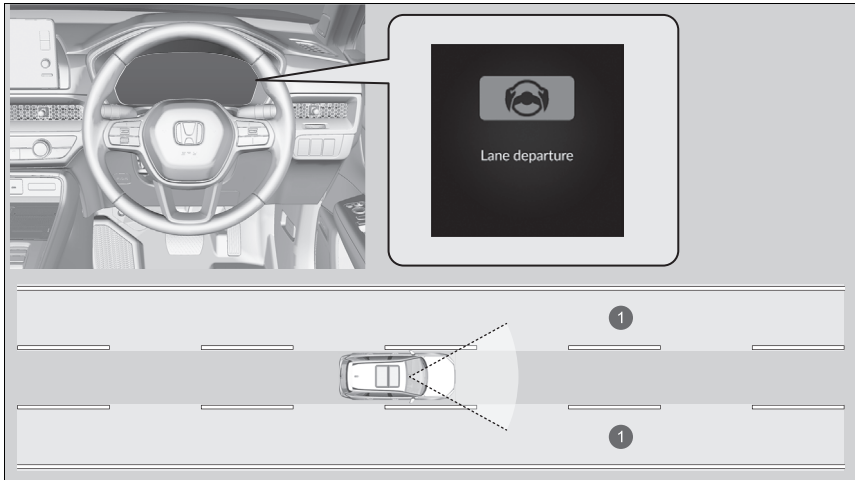
The Traffic Jam Assist only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Traffic Jam Assist may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

Traffic Jam Assist may not work properly under certain conditions:
➡ **Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations** P. 747

When the driver takes full control of the steering, the steering assist function is temporarily cancelled.
The torque applied to the steering may not be noticeable when the driver has full control of the steering, or when the surface of the road is rough or uneven.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the Traffic Jam Assist alerts you with an audible alert as well as a warning display.



❶ Warning Area

Continued

■ Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Traffic Jam Assist is activated when all of the following conditions exist:

- LKAS is activated.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 0 and 72 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The driver is gripping the steering wheel.
- The shift position is in D, S or L*.

Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in any of the following situations:

- You are travelling on a road with sharp curves.
  ▶ The system may not allow your vehicle to respond in a manner best suited for the road conditions.
- You are entering a toll booth, interchange, service area, or parking area.
- You are driving in adverse weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The surface of the road is slippery; for example, it is icy or covered with snow.
  ▶ The tyres may slip, causing you to lose control of the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Refer to the following page for proper handling of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS):

➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 729

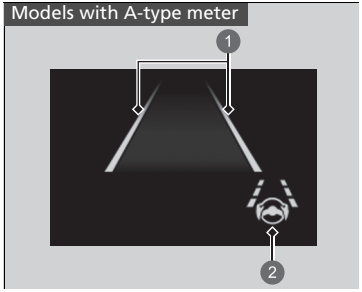
Refer to the following page for steering buttons and displays:

➔ **Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist*** P. 675
➔ **Gauge Content** P. 676

* Not available on all models

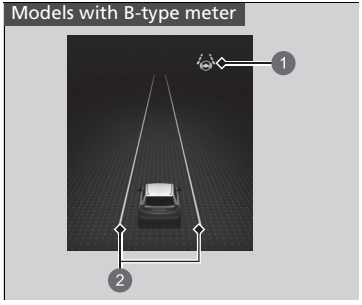
How Traffic Jam Assist Works

Models with A-type meter



❶ Green lines
❷ LKAS indicator (green)

Models with B-type meter



❶ LKAS indicator (green)
❷ Green lines

Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

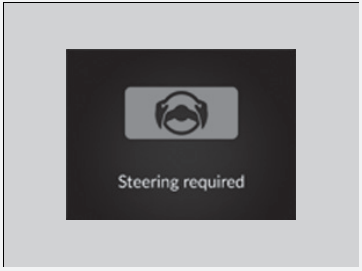
How Traffic Jam Assist Works

If your vehicle veers too far to the right or the left of the white (or yellow) traffic lane lines while Traffic Jam Assist is active, deactivate Traffic Jam Assist and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

In some cases the system cannot properly detect the traffic lane lines and, as a result, will not provide steering assistance.

Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations P. 747

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning below will appear.



If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning above has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and Traffic Jam Assist will be cancelled.

Continued

■ Cancelling Traffic Jam Assist

Press the LKAS button to cancel Traffic Jam Assist.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- You are driving through a sharp curve.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, Traffic Jam Assist automatically resumes.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically cancelled when:

- The temperature of the camera is too high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

Upon cancellation, the lane lines will disappear from the screen and the beeper may sound.

Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

You can change the setting for the Traffic Jam Assist suspended beep on and off when you select the **Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep** on the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

■ Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and Traffic Jam Assist may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

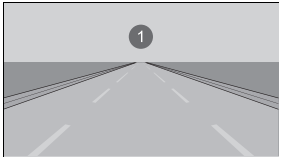
■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at a junction.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

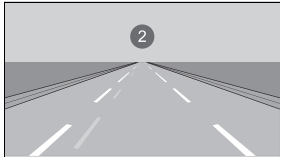
Continued

■ **Roadway conditions**

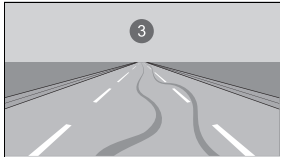
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.



❶ Faded lines

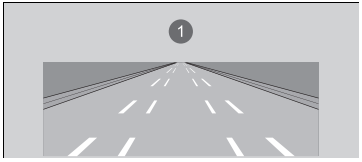


❷ Duplicate lines



❸ Tyre tracks

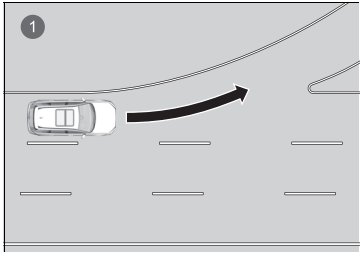
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



1 Lane void of lines at junction

Continued

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

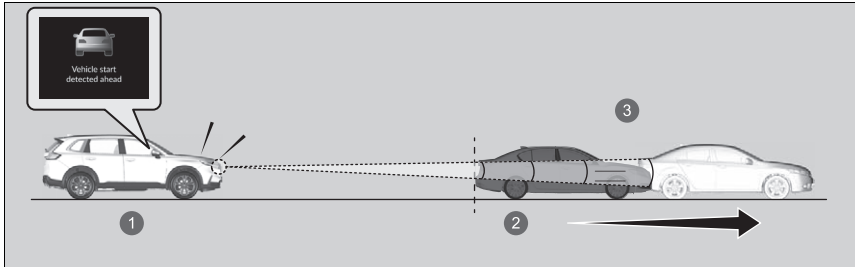
Oceanian models

- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

 * Not available on all models

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.



❶ When stopped
❷ Vehicle ahead is stopped
❸ Vehicle ahead starts moving

■ How the System Works

The system detects a stopped vehicle in front of you, on the condition that the vehicles are within 10 m of each other and both vehicles have been stopped for a period of time. When the detected vehicle moves but yours does not, the system will activate.

■ When the shift position is in D or S

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed, the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation, or the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

⚠WARNING

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance. It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.
➡ **Radar Sensor** P. 765

You can read about handling information for the camera located behind the rearview mirror.
➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 763

Like other assistance systems, this system may not function properly depending on weather, environmental conditions, and so on.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When the shift position is in N

The system will work when the vehicle is stopped, the brake pedal is depressed, the parking brake is in operation, or the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

You can choose from two system operation timing modes, **Normal** and **Early**.

➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183
➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

In Normal mode, the system operates when the vehicle ahead of you has moved approximately 3 m from where it stopped.
In Early mode, the system operates as soon as movement has been detected.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

You can turn off the Lead Car Departure Notification System.

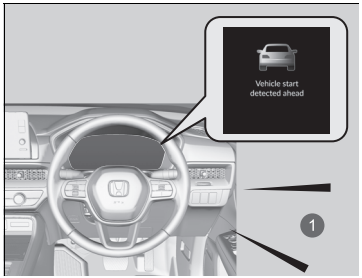
➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183
➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

The Lead Car Departure Notification System will not activate while the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (amber) is on.

➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 707

 * Not available on all models

■ When the System Activates



The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when the system is activated.

❶ Audible Alert

Continued

■ Lead Car Departure Notification System Conditions and Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

■ Examples of cases when the radar sensor cannot properly detect another vehicle due to vehicle condition

- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage or suspension modifications.
- The front grill is dirty.
- When the vehicle was only stopped for a short time.

■ Examples of cases when the radar sensor cannot properly detect another vehicle due to environmental conditions

- Weather conditions are poor (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water or snow has been stirred up or sprayed by the vehicle ahead of you.

■ Examples of cases when the radar sensor cannot properly detect the vehicle ahead of you due to road conditions

- The road is curvy, winding, or sloping.
- There are objects around your vehicle that reflect radio waves strongly, such as when driving through a narrow metal bridge.

■ **Examples of cases when the radar sensor cannot properly detect the vehicle ahead of you due to the conditions of the vehicle itself**

- The vehicle ahead of you was only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you turns right, left, or around suddenly.

■ **Examples of cases when the radar sensor cannot properly detect the vehicle ahead of you due to other conditions**

- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, or mobility scooter in front of your vehicle, or the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian or bicycle suddenly moves between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

■ How the System Works

When the camera located behind the rearview mirror captures traffic signs while driving, the system displays the ones that are recognised as designated for your vehicle. The sign icon will be displayed until the vehicle reaches a predetermined time and distance.
If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the sign icon will not be displayed.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

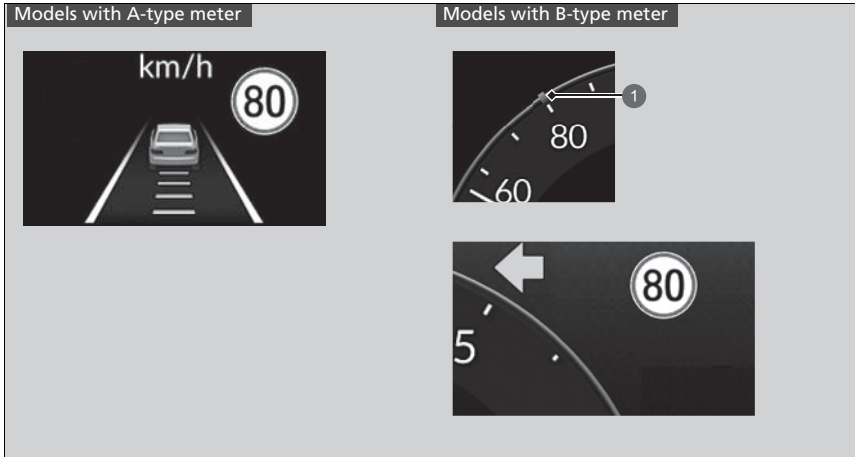
Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.
Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 763

You can turn the Traffic Sign Recognition System on and off.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

 * Not available on all models



❶ Speed Limit Sign

The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:
- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.
Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display.
Customized Features P. 443, 540

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.
Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations P. 758

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may incorrectly recognise, be slow to identify, or fail to recognise the traffic sign in the following cases.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.

■ Roadway conditions

- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

* Not available on all models

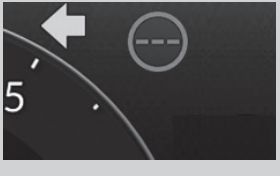
Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

When the Traffic Sign Recognition System malfunctions, ⊖ appears on the gauge. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



■ **The position or the condition of the traffic sign**
- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).
- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

■ **Other conditions**
- When you are driving at a high speed.

Continued

The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases.

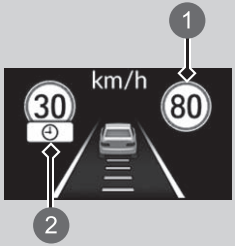
▶ A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.

- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric signs, numbers on the sign are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving in, even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at a junction between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in colour or shape to recognised objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

■ Signs Displayed on the Gauge

Up to two speed limit signs can be simultaneously displayed next to each other when detected. Speed limit icons can be displayed on the gauge.
Additional signs that indicate speed limit based on specific period of time can also appear.

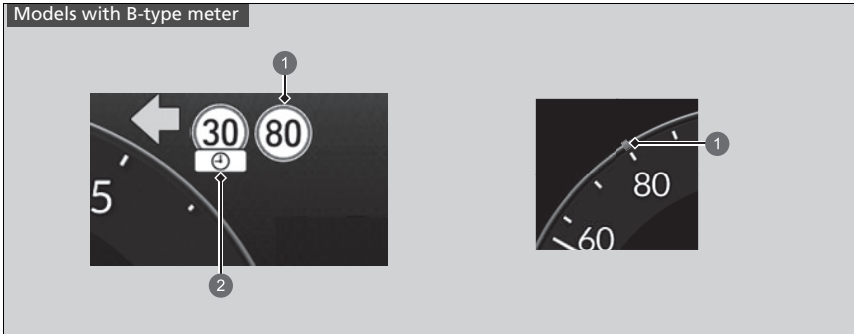
Models with A-type meter



❶ Speed Limit Sign
❷ Additional Speed Limit Sign Based on Conditions*1

Depending on situation, *1 can appear on the right side.

Continued



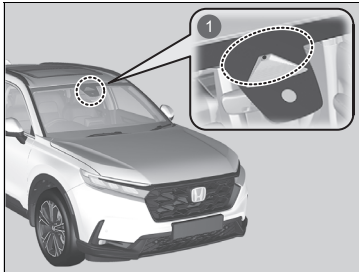
❶ Speed Limit Sign
❷ Additional Speed Limit Sign Based on Conditions*1

Depending on situation, *1 can appear on the right side.

Front Sensor Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Traffic Jam Assist*, Lead Car Departure Notification System*, Traffic Sign Recognition system*, and Auto High-Beam, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate their functions.

Camera Location and Handling Tips



❶ Front Sensor Camera

This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Sensor Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Front Sensor Camera

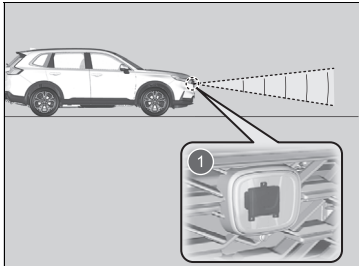
If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition.** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean.
  Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Radar Sensor



❶ Radar Sensor

The radar sensor is behind the Honda emblem on the front grille.

Radar Sensor

For the system to work properly, observe the following precautions.

- Always keep the emblem and front grille clean.
- Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the emblem and front grille. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.
- Do not put any stickers or paint on the emblem or front grille.
- Do not scratch or damage the emblem or front grille.
- Do not replace the emblem, front grille, or bumper.
- Do not remove or disassemble the radar sensor.

Consult a dealer if:

- The radar sensor cover is strongly impacted.
- The front grille or bumper needs to be repaired.

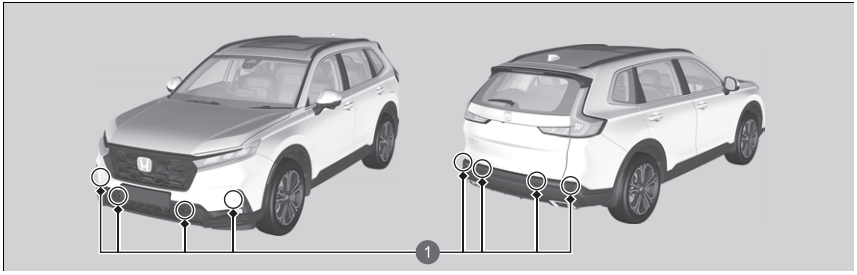
If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- Your vehicle is involved in a frontal collision.
- Your vehicle drives through deep water or is submerged in deep water.
- Your vehicle strongly strikes a bump, curb, chock, slope, or embankment that could jar the radar sensor.

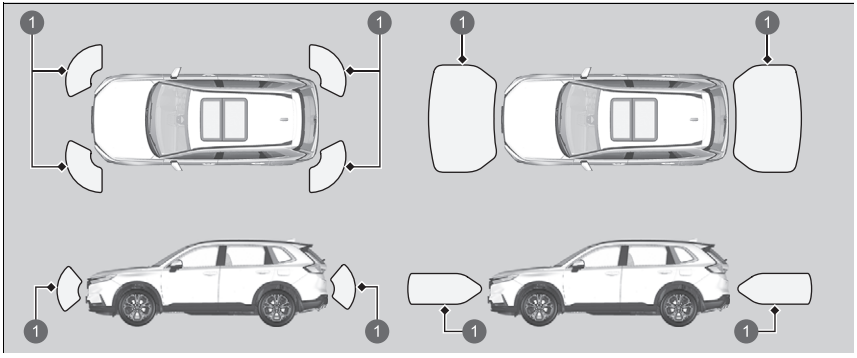
Sonar Sensors*

■ Location and range of sensors

The sonar sensors are situated in the front and rear bumpers.



1 Sonar Sensors



1 Sensor Range

Sonar Sensors*

For the sonar sensors to work properly, do not:
- Place stickers or other objects on or around the sensors.
- Hit the area around the sensors.
- Attempt to take apart any sensor.
- Put any accessories on or around the sensors.

Consult with a dealer if:
- A sensor has been subjected to shock.
- Work needs to be done to the area around a sensor.

In the following cases, the sonar sensors may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
- The front or rear bumper has made contact with a hill, parking block, curb, embankment, etc.
- The vehicle has been involved in a frontal or rear collision.
- The vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle.

* Not available on all models

Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



❶ Electric Parking Brake Switch

■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.



❶ Electric Parking Brake Switch

■ To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

Continued

Brake System

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.
If the Battery Is Dead P. 906

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

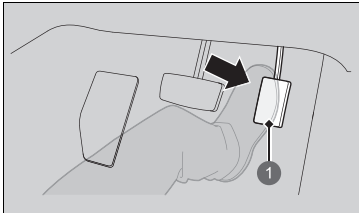
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature P. 769

■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

1 Accelerator Pedal

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the engine is turned off, except by Auto Idle Stop system*, while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the engine is turned off, except by Auto Idle Stop system*, while brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with the brake hold system while brake hold is applied.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

* Not available on all models

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into P.

2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up and release the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.

3. Pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within three seconds pull up and hold the switch again.

4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
▶ Two beeps indicate that the feature has been activated.
▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the engine.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when having your vehicle towed, follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.

2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow and the automatic brake hold system.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Continued

Parking Brake

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.
When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.
Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

➔ **Brake Assist System** P. 775
➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 774

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower speed position.

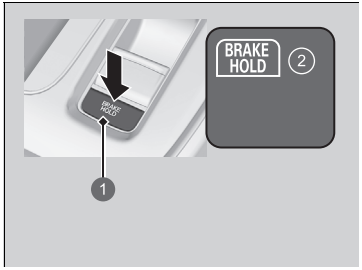
Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Whenever the brakes are activated by CMBS or another system that automatically controls braking, the brake pedal is depressed and released in accordance with braking function.

■ Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system



❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Comes On

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

The system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you fasten the driver's seat belt and start the engine.

≫Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

⚠WARNING

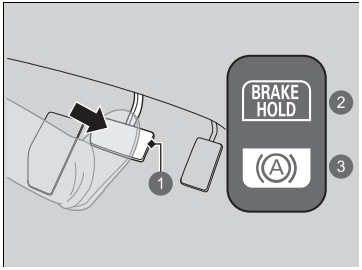
Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

Continued

■ Activating the system



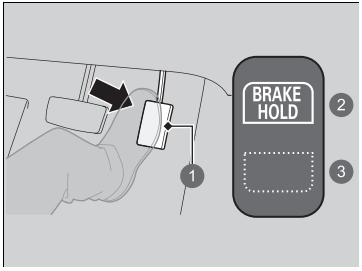
Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must not be in P or R.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.

▶ Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

1 Brake Pedal
2 On
3 Comes On

■ Cancelling the system



Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in a position other than P or N. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

1 Accelerator Pedal
2 On
3 Goes Off

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

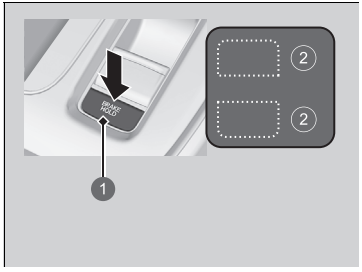
If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ **The system automatically cancels when:**
- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into P or R.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**
- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**



❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Goes Off

Only the automatic brake hold system indicator comes on:
- Press the automatic brake hold button.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

When the automatic brake hold indicator comes on at the same time:
- Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator and the automatic brake hold indicator go off.

Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.
When Stopped P. 777

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

If you turn off the engine or unfasten the driver's seat belt while the automatic brake hold system is on, the automatic brake hold system will automatically turn off. In this case, when the driver's seat belt is fastened and the engine is restarted, the automatic brake hold system will turn on without needing to press the automatic brake hold button.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

* Not available on all models

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

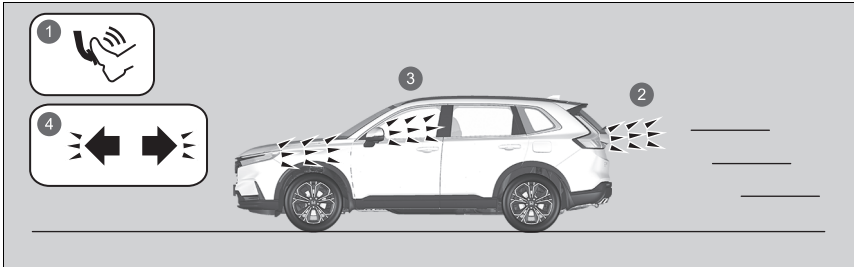
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ **When the system activates:**



1. Hard Braking
2. Brake Lights Come On
3. Hazard Warning Lights Flash
4. Hazard Warning Indicators Blink

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:
- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Put the transmission into P.
4. Turn off the engine.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 30 seconds.

Always set the parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

Continued

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

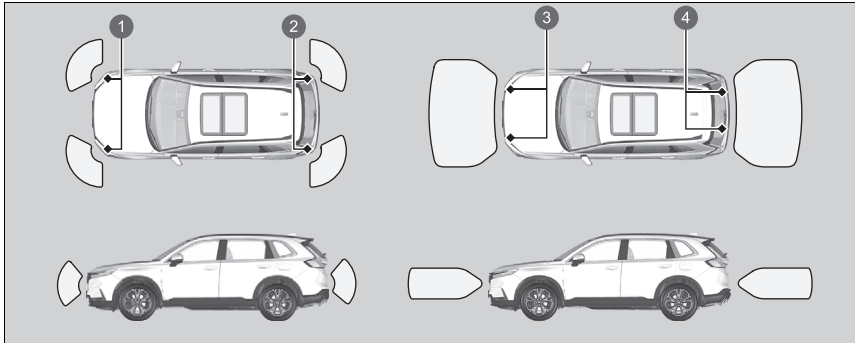
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Putting the transmission into P before the vehicle stops completely.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The Sensor Location and Range



❶ Front Corner Sensors*
❷ Rear Corner Sensors
❸ Front Centre Sensors*
❹ Rear Centre Sensors

Parking Sensor System

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

Models with front sensors

▶If you put any accessories (such as a towing hitch* or bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Parking Sensor System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➔ **Switching the Display** P. 165, 194
➔ **Safety Support** P. 178, 207

The front corner*, rear corner and rear centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 9 km/h.

Models with front sensors

The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than P or R, and the vehicle speed is less than 9 km/h.

Parking Sensor System

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

Models with front sensors

You can turn the rear parking sensor system on and off using the audio/information screen.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

Models with Multi-View Camera

When the vehicle is moving forward at 9 km/h or less, the system detects any obstacles in front of the vehicle and the forward camera image will display as the distance between them decreases.

➔ **Multi-View Camera*** P. 791

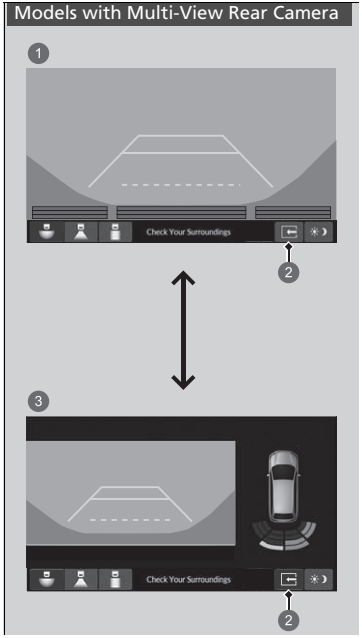
You can customize whether or not to display the forward camera image when an obstacle is detected.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

* Not available on all models

■ Screen Operation

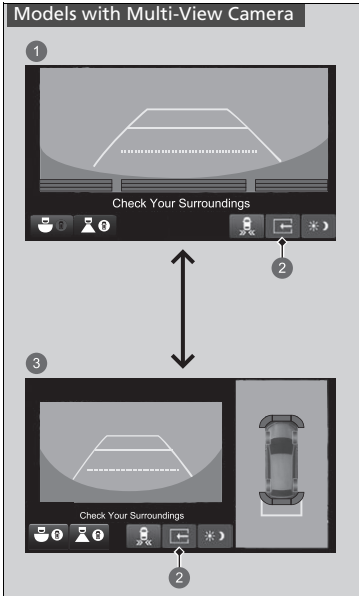
Models with Multi-View Rear Camera



You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.

❶ Split View Off
❷ Split Screen Tab
❸ Split View On

Continued



❶ Split View Off
❷ Split Screen Tab
❸ Split View On

When the Distance Between Your Vehicle and Detected Obstacles Becomes Shorter

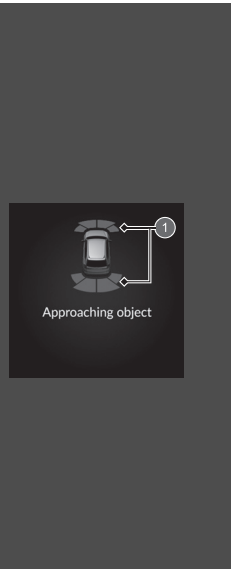
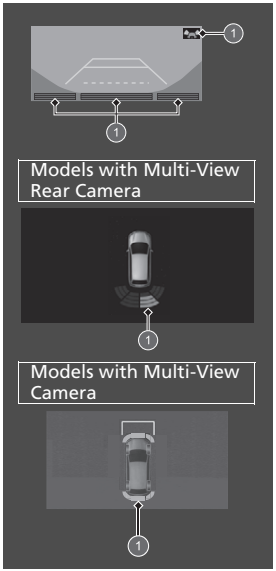
Models with front sensors

Parking Sensor Indicator

The parking sensor indicator blinks.

▶ If the system is turned off, only the parking sensor indicator will blink when an obstacle is detected.

All models

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface	Audio/information screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors			
Moderate	—	Front*: About 70-60*4 or 75-65*5 cm Rear: About 110-75*4 or 110-70*5 cm	Comes on*1/ Blinks*2 in Yellow*3		
Short	Front*: About 55-45*4 or 60-45*5 cm Rear: About 60-45*4 or 65-45*5 cm	Front*: About 60-50*4 or 65-55*5 cm Rear: About 75-60*4 or 70-60*5 cm	Comes on*1/ Blinks*2 in Amber		
Very short	About 45-35 cm	Front*: About 50-40*4 or 55-45*5 cm Rear: About 60-50 cm			
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	Front*: About 40*4 or 45*5 cm or less Rear: About 50 cm or less	Comes on*1/ Blinks*2 in Red		

* Not available on all models

Continued

*1:On the driver information interface
*2:On the audio/information screen
*3:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.
*4:Oceanian models
*5:Except Oceanian models
❶ Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

To temporarily turn off the beeper, press the left[*6] or right[*7] selector wheel while it is sounding. Temporary OFF will be cancelled when the shift position is switched or the vehicle speed reaches 14 km/h or higher.

*6: Models with A-type meter
*7: Models with B-type meter

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

⚠CAUTION

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

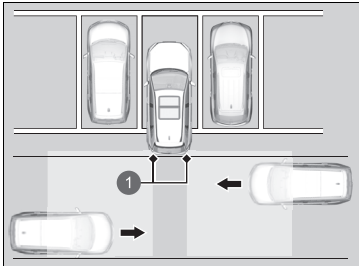
Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the Cross Traffic Monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How the System Works



The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  ➡ **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 788
- The transmission is in R.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h or lower.

❶ Radar sensors:
Underneath the rear bumper corners.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Cross Traffic Monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle or a wall near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of about 5 km/h or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at a speed other than between about 10 km/h and 25 km/h.
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.

If the rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

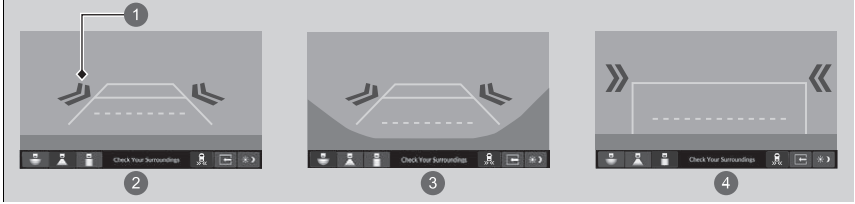
For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

 * Not available on all models

When the System Detects a Vehicle

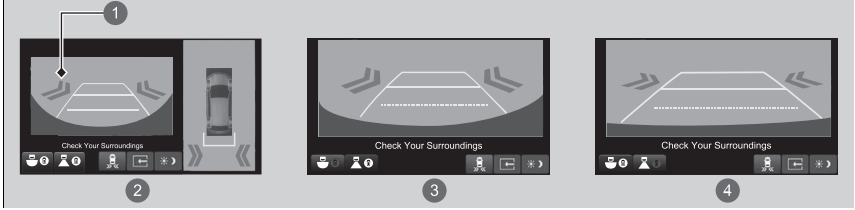
An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

Models with Multi-View Rear Camera



1 Arrow Icon
2 Normal View
3 Wide View
4 Top Down View

Models with Multi-View Camera



1 Arrow Icon
2 Rear Ground View
3 Rear Wide View
4 Rear Normal View

When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the on the lower right changes to in amber when the transmission is in R, mud, snow, ice and other debris may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

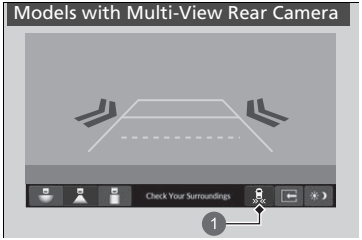
If the comes on when the transmission is in R, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in R, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued

■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off

Models with Multi-View Rear Camera



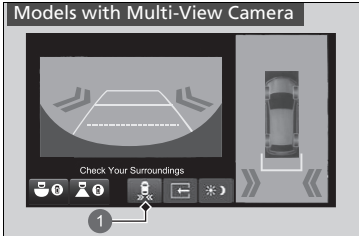
1 Cross Traffic Monitor Icon

The system can be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by pressing the Cross Traffic Monitor icon.

You can also switch the system on and off from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

Models with Multi-View Camera

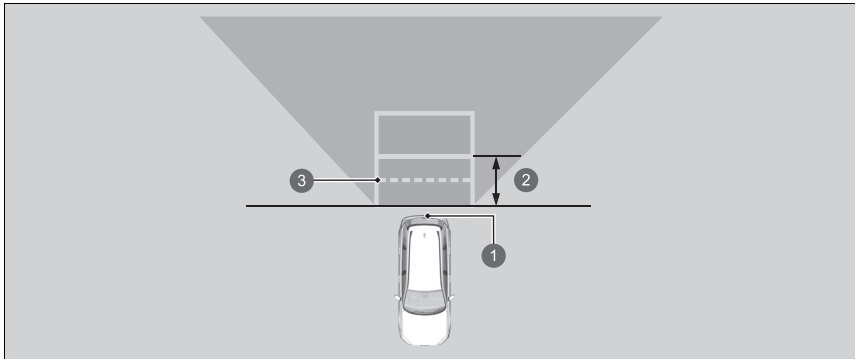


1 Cross Traffic Monitor Icon

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into R.

■ Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



❶ Camera
❷ Approx. 1 m
❸ Tailgate open range

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

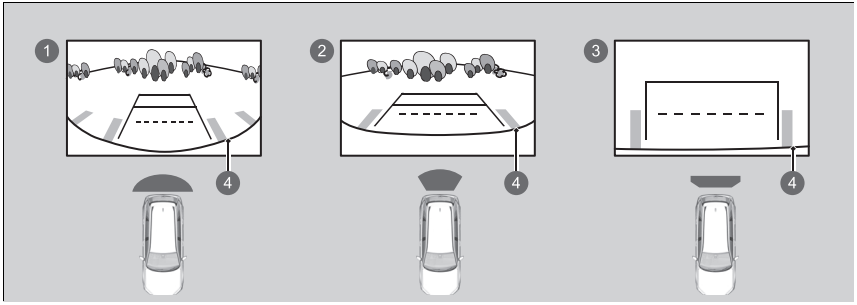
The rear camera view is displayed prior to the audio/information screen.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

* Not available on all models

Continued

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



1 Wide View Mode
2 Normal View Mode
3 Top Down View Mode
4 Bumper

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the engine, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of R, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and put the transmission back into R within 10 seconds after you took it out of R, Top down view mode will be activated.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

Fixed Guideline
ON: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into R.
OFF: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guideline
ON: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
OFF: Guidelines do not move.

If the vehicle's rear view is not displayed on the audio/information screen while the shift position is in R, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Multi-View Camera*

Is a four camera system that views areas commonly known as "blind spots" from different angles, then displays the images on the audio/information screen. This system can be used to:

- Check for obstacles when you are moving in R.
  - **Checking for obstacles at the back of your vehicle** P. 798
- Check for obstacles in front of the vehicle when parking or maneuvering in confined areas.
  - **Checking the front and sides of your vehicle** P. 800
  - **Checking the sides of your vehicle** P. 803
- Check the right and left sides of the vehicle while crossing at intersections with poor visibility (obstructed view, etc.).
  - **Checking from the front blind view at intersections** P. 802

Multi-View Camera*

⚠WARNING

Failure to visually assess the area around the vehicle (directly or by use of the mirrors) may result in a crash causing serious injury or death.

The areas shown in the multi-view camera system display are limited. The display may not show all pedestrians or other objects around your vehicle.

Do not solely rely only on the multi-view camera system display to assess whether it is safe to move your vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Failure to pay proper attention to your surroundings while driving may result in a crash causing serious injury or death.

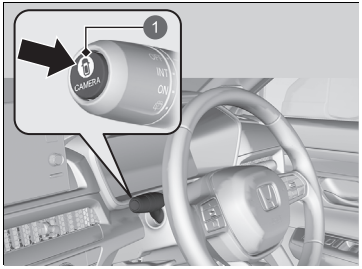
To help mitigate the chances of a collision, only look at the multi-view camera system display when it is safe to do so.

The multi-view camera system does not eliminate all blind spots. The system is for your convenience only.

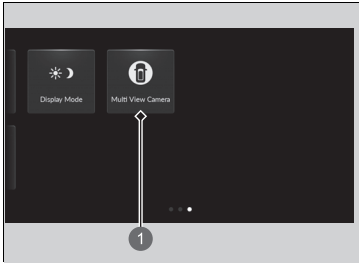
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Displaying an Image From the Multi-View Cameras



❶ **CAMERA** Button



❶ **Multi View Camera**

■ **For frontal views:**
Press the **CAMERA** button or select **Multi View Camera** when the vehicle is stationary or moving at 20 km/h or slower. Press the button again to switch camera views.

■ **For rear views:**
Change the shift position to R when the vehicle is stationary. Press the **CAMERA** button again to switch to rear view mode. You can customize the display setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

Multi-View Camera*

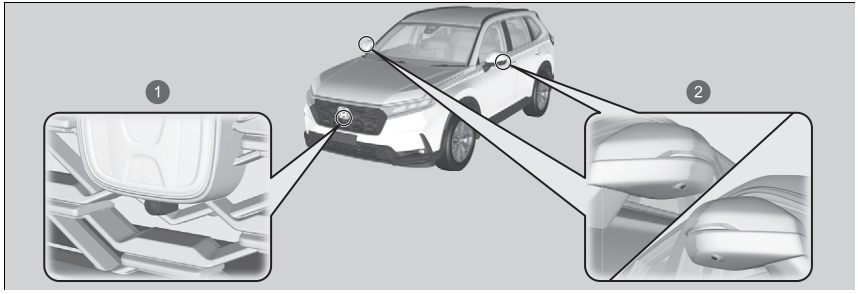
Always keep the camera lenses clean and free from debris.

The navigation system is disabled when the shift position is in R.

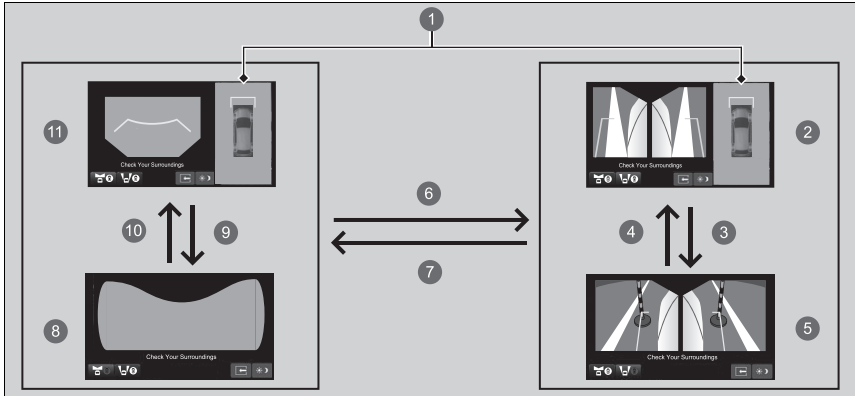
If you press the **CAMERA** button or select **Multi View Camera** while the vehicle speed is more than 25 km/h, the standby screen appears.
When the vehicle speed is reduced below 20 km/h, the screen switches to a multi-view camera system image.

* Not available on all models

Camera Locations and Images



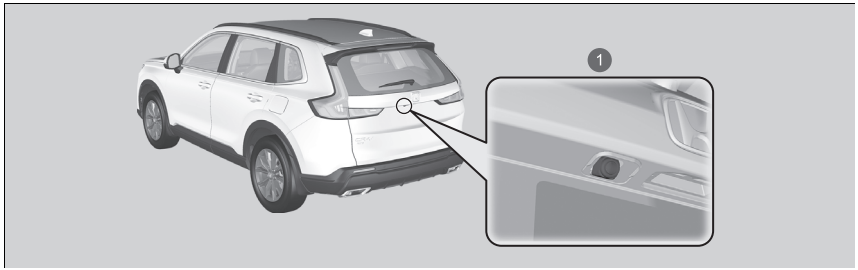
1 Front View Camera
2 Side View Cameras



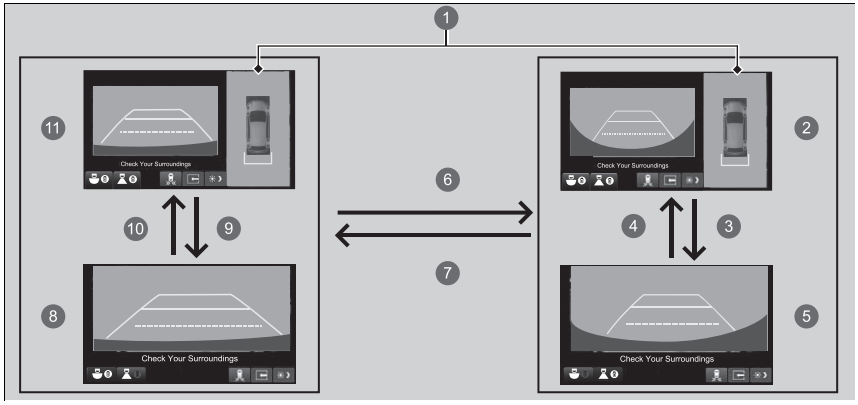
Continued

❶ Ground View: An overhead view created by the combination of images captured by four cameras.
❷ Left and Right Side View + Ground View
❸ or
❹ or
❺ Left and Right Side View
❻ or or **CAMERA** button
❼ or
❽ Front Blind View
❾ or
❿ or
⓫ Front View + Ground View

The unique multi-view camera lenses make distances appear differently than they actually are - objects seen on the audio/information screen may appear closer or further away, and may be distorted. This becomes more apparent the further away an object is from your vehicle.

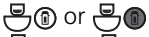
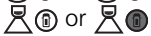


❶ Rear View Camera



❶ Ground View: An overhead view created by the combination of images captured by four cameras.
❷ Rear Wide View + Ground View
❸ or

Continued

❹  or
❺ Rear Wide View
❻  or or **CAMERA** button
❼  or or **CAMERA** button
❽ Rear Normal View
❾  or
❿  or
⓫ Rear Normal View + Ground View

The unique multi-view camera lenses make distances appear differently than they actually are - objects seen on the audio/information screen may appear closer or further away, and may be distorted. This becomes more apparent the further away an object is from your vehicle.

■ Reference Lines and Guide Lines

Following can be displayed when the multi-view camera system is on.
Fixed Guideline: Helps you to get a sense of a distance between your vehicle and the surroundings. The distance may appear differently than the actual distance.
Dynamic Guideline: Indicates vehicle direction while the steering wheel is in the current position.

Displaying an Image From the Multi-View Cameras

The positions/distances indicated by the guidelines and camera views on the display may differ from the actual positions/distances due to the changes in the vehicle height, road conditions, and other factors. The guidelines should be used as a reference only.

The guidelines can be turned on and off using the audio/information screen.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 443, 540

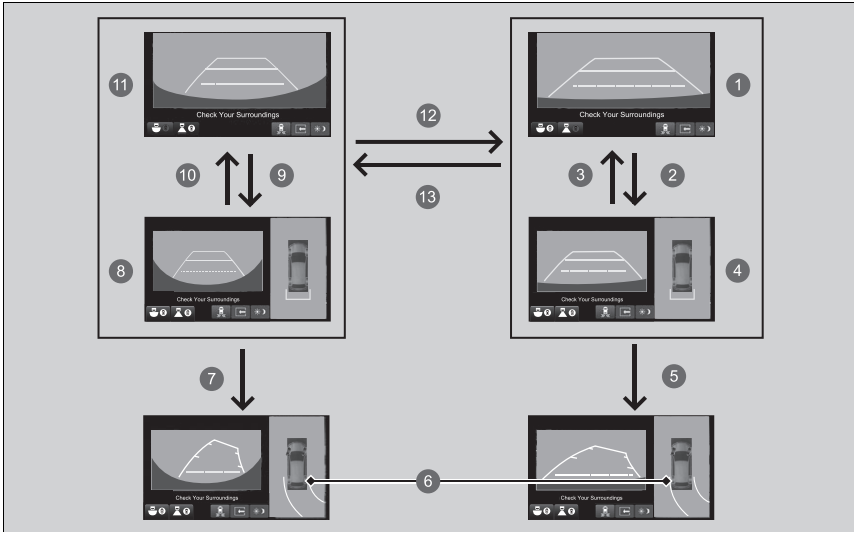
If you turn the guidelines off, they remain off until you turn them back on.

Continued

■ Using the Multi-View Camera

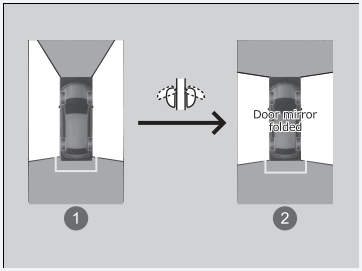
■ Checking for obstacles at the back of your vehicle

The display automatically changes to the rear view when the shift position is changed to R.



Using the Multi-View Camera

The ground view can be displayed even with the door mirrors folded. However, the viewable angle and blind spot change.

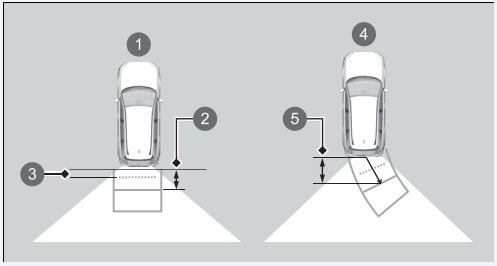


1 Not folded
2 Folded

❶ Rear Normal View
❷ or
❸ or
❹ Rear Normal View + Ground View
❺ When the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees.
❻ The projection lines appear 35 cm outside the vehicle body.
❼ When the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees.
❽ Rear Wide View + Ground View
❾ or
❿ or
⓫ Rear Wide View
⓬ or or **CAMERA** button
⓭ or or **CAMERA** button

Checking for obstacles at the back of your vehicle

When changing the shift position from/to R, you may experience a delay in switching between the audio/information screen and a rear view image.

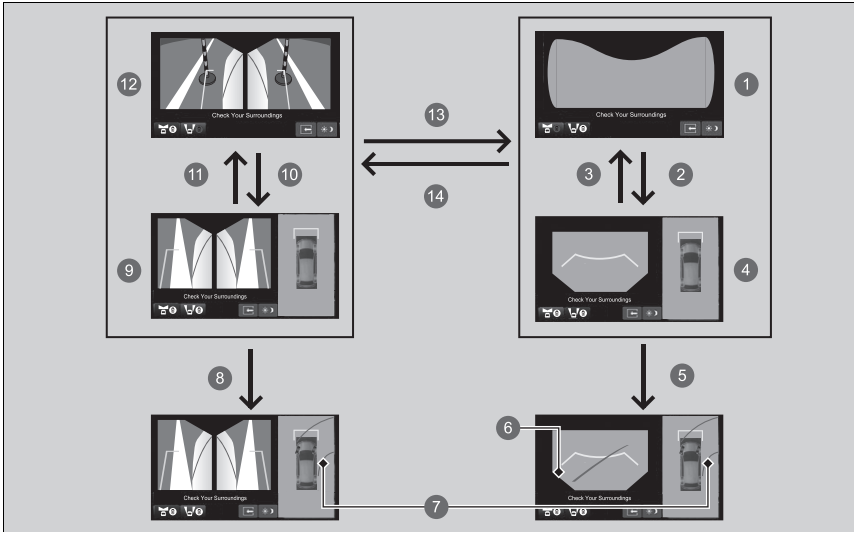


Approximate distances:
❶ The guidelines indicate
❷ 1.1 m
❸ 80 cm
❹ The projection lines indicate
❺ 1.1 m

Continued

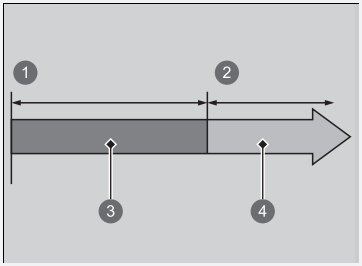
■ Checking the front and sides of your vehicle

You can display the front ground view screen using all the four cameras for the system. Pressing the **CAMERA** button when the vehicle speed is at below 20 km/h changes the image as follows.



Checking the front and sides of your vehicle

If the vehicle speed exceeds 25 km/h while the front or side view image from the multi-view camera is displayed, the screen automatically switches to the audio/information screen.

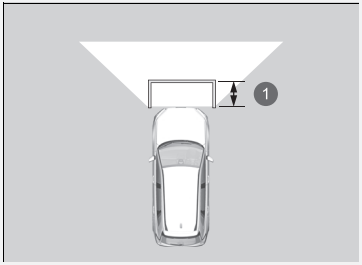


1. 0 km/h
2. 25 km/h
3. Camera Screen
4. Audio/Information Screen

❶ Front Blind View
❷ or
❸ or
❹ Front View + Ground View
❺ When the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees.
❻ Blind spots appear in black.
❼ The projection lines appear 35 cm outside the vehicle body.
❽ When the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees.
❾ Left and Right Side View + Ground View
❿ or
⓫ or
⓬ Left and Right Side View
⓭ or
⓮ or or **CAMERA** button

Checking the front and sides of your vehicle

Approximate distance the reference line indicates

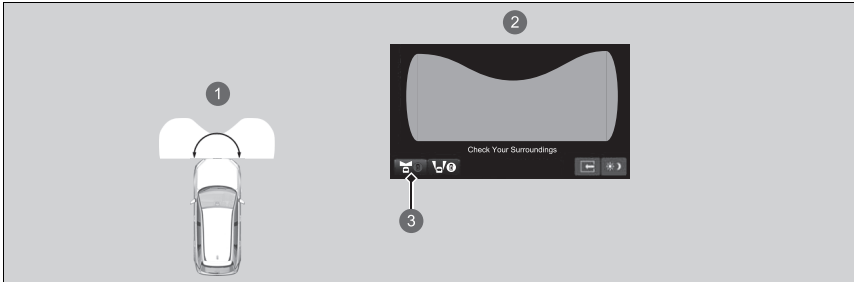


❶ 1.1 m

Continued

■ Checking from the front blind view at intersections

The front blind view screen is useful when you need to check for vehicles crossing from either direction at an intersection with poor visibility.



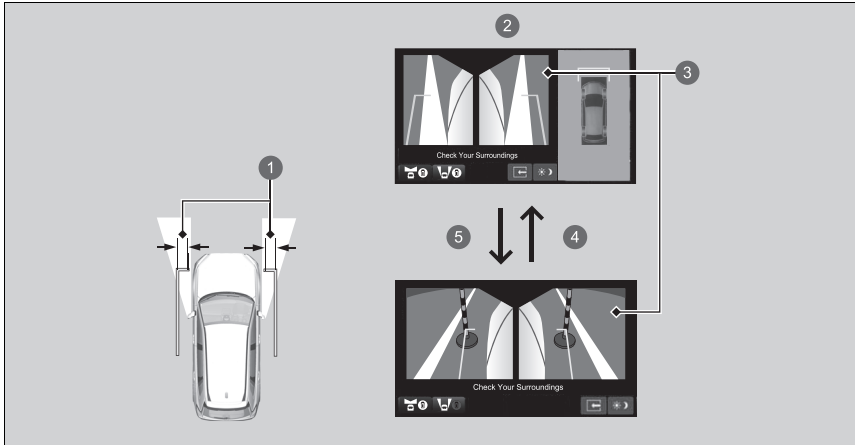
❶ The angle provided by the front blind view screen is 180 degrees.
❷ Front Blind View Screen
❸ When pressing the **CAMERA** button or selecting **Multi View Camera** and Front blind view icon.

Checking from the front blind view at intersections

The front blind view is a wide-angled view. The image will be largely distorted, and objects may appear closer or more distant than they actually are.

■ Checking the sides of your vehicle

The side view screens are convenient when you pull over at a curb or tollbooth, or slowly pass by oncoming vehicles on a narrow road.



❶ 40 cm
❷ Side View Screen
❸ Side Views: The images from the side cameras
❹ or
❺ or

Approximate distance the projection lines indicate is 40 cm from the vehicle.

Checking the sides of your vehicle

When the door mirrors are folded, the side views cannot be displayed.

Continued

■ Multi-View Camera Limitations

The system may not work properly under the following conditions.

Conditions		Solutions
The projection line is not accurate.		Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
The images may not appear clearly when:	• You activate the system in bad weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc.) or in the dark. • Camera temperatures are high. • A sudden change between light and dark such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel. • You drive into the sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk.) • A camera lens is scratched.	Do not use the multi-view camera system but rely only on visual confirmation until the conditions allow the system to work properly.
	• A camera lens is covered with dirt, moisture, or debris. • When water drops or insects get on the camera lens.	Clean camera lenses with a soft cloth moisturised with water, mild detergent or glass cleaner.
	• The audio/information screen is dirty.	Wipe off the screen using a soft dry cloth.
A camera angle is altered.	A camera or the area around the camera has been severely impacted.	Do not use the multi-view camera system and contact a dealer.
An error message is displayed while the multi-view camera system is in use.		
The image does not come on the screen when you press the **CAMERA** button or select **Multi View Camera** on the audio/information screen and the vehicle is moving at 20 km/h or slower.		

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Pakistani models

EURO V/5 Unleaded petrol, manganese: maximum 2mg/Litre, research octane number 91 or higher

Your vehicle is designed to operate on EURO V/5 unleaded petrol with a research octane number of 91 or higher.
The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Singaporean models

Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of petrol with a research octane number less than 92 can lead to engine damage.

Taiwanese models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Models for other countries

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Continued

Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

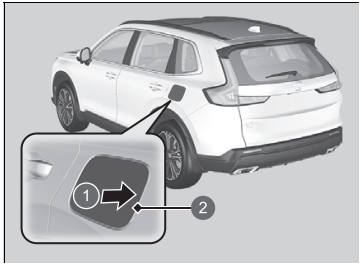
- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 57 L**

■ **Engine cleaner**

Fuel quality varies by region. Add genuine injector cleaner agent according to the time and distance instructions in the maintenance schedule.
Please use a genuine Honda injector cleaner agent. If not available, please use a PEA (polyetheramine) based cleaning agent instead.
Regular use of injector cleaner may be needed in countries or regions without a maintenance schedule. Consult your dealer for more information.

How to Refuel



❶ Press
❷ Fuel Fill Door



❶ Cap

1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Unlock the driver's door.
▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
4. Press and release the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.
5. Manually pull the fuel fill door to a fully open position.
6. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

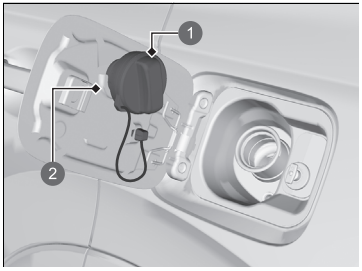
⚠CAUTION

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity and cause fuel to spill.

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door. The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

Continued



1 Cap
2 Holder

7. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
8. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
9. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

Using the Walk away auto lock feature will also lock the fuel fill door. Always make sure both the driver's door and fuel fill door are unlocked before attempting to open the fuel fill door.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock) P. 226

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult the service information provided for your vehicle.

Maintenance Schedule P. 822

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
  Recommended Engine Oil P. 832
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Kilometres driven	÷	Litres of fuel	=	Kilometres per Litre		

GCC country models

You can improve the mileage and reduce the CO_2 emissions of your vehicle by following these tips:

- Operate your vehicle correctly.
- Regularly maintain your vehicle.
- Maintain proper tyre pressure.
- Avoid carrying excessive loads.
- Adopt efficient driving techniques, such as driving at lower speeds, reducing idling time, and avoiding aggressive driving.

Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.

- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the maintenance schedule. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 700°C. It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

Turbo Engine Vehicle

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the engine oil and filter is indicated on the driver information interface. Follow the information on replacement timing.

➡ **Oil Monitor System** P. 815
➡ **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 832

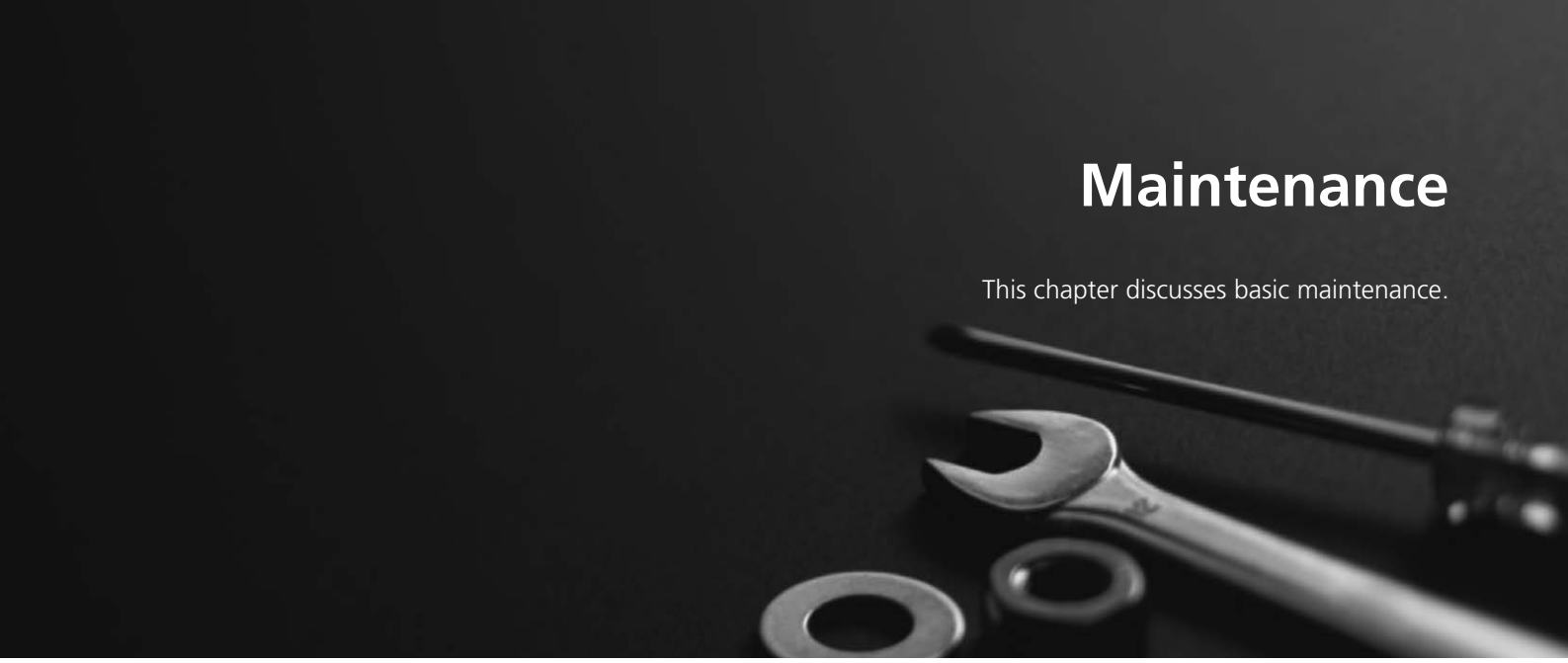
The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** or **Engine temperature near limit. Avoid strong acceleration and high speed.** message may appear on the driver information interface when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain.
This is normal. The message goes off after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

Models with B-type meter

The temperature gauge pointer is at the upper level when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The gauge goes down after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance
Inspection and Maintenance 812
Safety When Performing Maintenance 813
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 814
Oil Monitor System 815
Maintenance Schedule 822
Maintenance Under the Bonnet
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet ...829
Opening the Bonnet 830
Recommended Engine Oil 832
Oil Check 834
Adding Engine Oil 835
Engine Coolant 836
Transmission Fluid 839
Brake Fluid 840
Refilling Window Washer Fluid 841
Fuel Filter 841
Replacing Light Bulbs 842
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades 845
Checking and Maintaining Tyres
Checking Tyres 849
Wear Indicators 850
Tyre Service Life 850
Tyre and Wheel Replacement 851
Tyre Rotation 852
Snow Traction Devices 854
Battery 855
Remote Transmitter Care
Replacing the Remote Battery 859
Climate Control System Maintenance 862
Cleaning
Interior Care 865
Exterior Care 868
Accessories and Modifications 871

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➡ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 822

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➡ **Brake Fluid** P. 840
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 849
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 842
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 845

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  ▶ Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Continued

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the engine compartment.
  ▶ Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

  Models with Auto Idle Stop

  ▶ Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

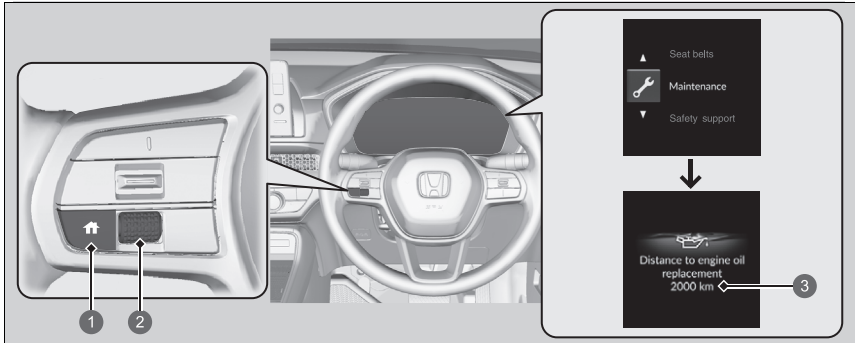
The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

The warning message notifies you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Models with A-type meter

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the oil monitor system information screen. The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface.



❶ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ Remaining distance to the next engine oil maintenance period

The system message indicator (ⓘ) stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

Continued

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

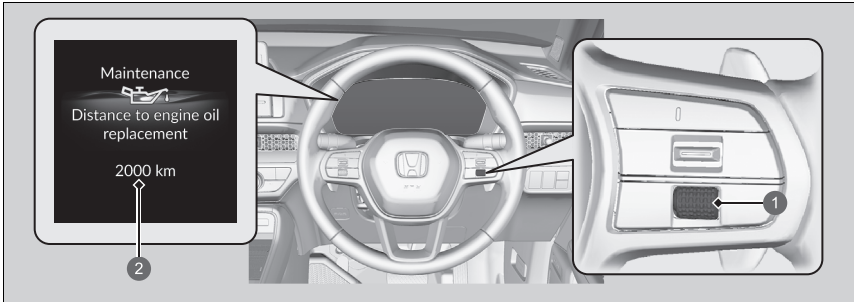
Regardless of what the oil monitor system information indicates, perform maintenance regularly. Please refer to the maintenance schedule for more details.

Maintenance Schedule P. 822

Models with B-type meter

1. Set the power mode to ON.

2. Roll the right selector wheel until the oil monitor system information screen is displayed. The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface.

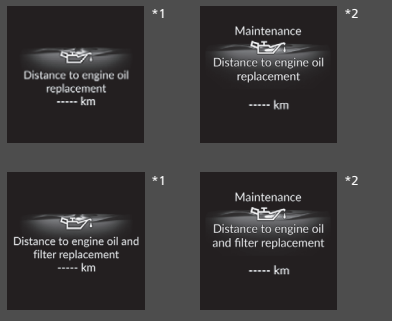
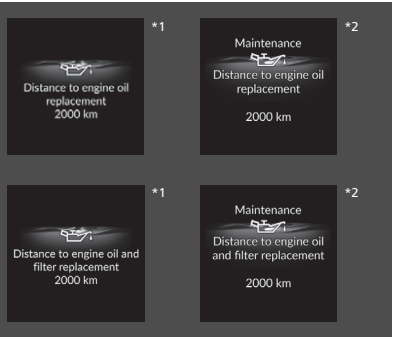


❶ Right Selector Wheel

❷ Remaining distance to the next engine oil maintenance period

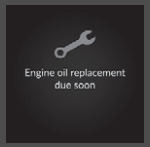
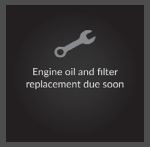
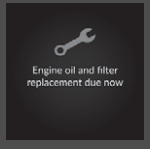
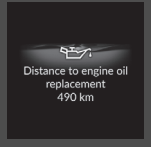
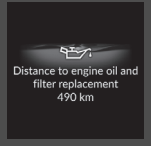
The system message indicator (ⓘ) stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

Oil Monitor System Information on the Driver Information Interface

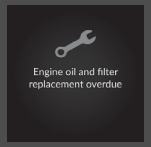
Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Normal		When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change, or the next oil and filter change.
—		When you select the oil monitor system information screen, the remaining engine oil life, or the remaining engine oil and oil filter life is displayed.

*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

Continued

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Replacement Due Soon  	*1  *2  *1  *2 	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter are approaching the end of their life.
Replacement Due Now  	*1  *2  *1  *2 	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have almost reached the end of their service life, and the maintenance service item(s) should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.

*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Replacement Overdue  	 *1  *2  *1  *2	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have passed their service life. The maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced immediately.

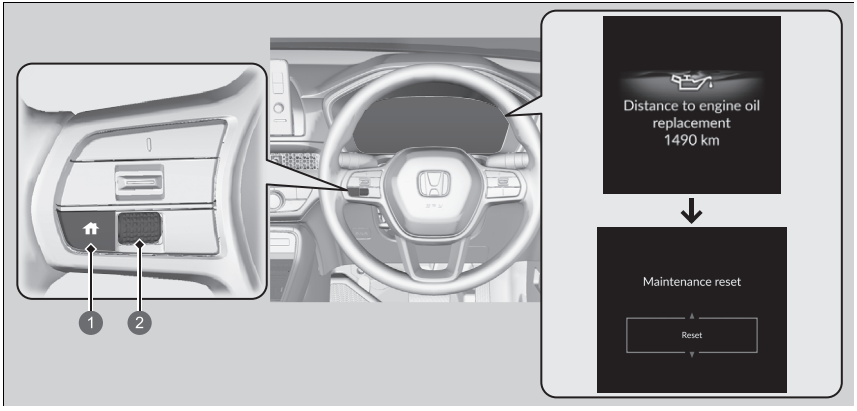
*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.

Models with A-type meter

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the ⌂ (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until 🔧 is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the oil monitor system information screen.
5. Press and hold the left selector wheel for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Reset** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
7. Press the left selector wheel to reset the selected item.
▶ When the oil monitor system information display is reset, the engine oil life is reset to ----- km.



❶ ⌂ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel

* Not available on all models

Resetting the Display

NOTICE
Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

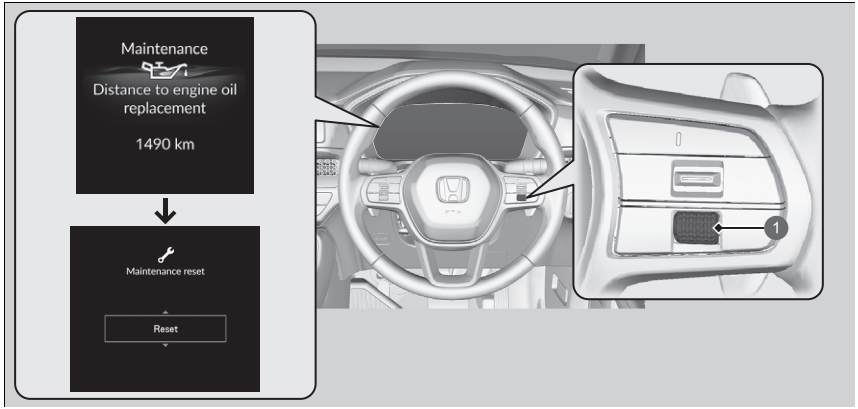
Models with colour audio system
You can also reset the oil monitor system information display using the driver information interface.
➡ **Vehicle Settings*** P. 183

Models with Display Audio
You can also reset the oil monitor system information display using the audio/information screen.
Models without Google built-in
➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 452
Models with Google built-in
➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 552

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

Models with B-type meter

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Roll the right selector wheel until the oil monitor system information screen is displayed.
3. Press and hold the right selector wheel for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
4. Roll the right selector wheel to select **Reset** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
5. Press the right selector wheel to reset the selected item.
   ▶ When the oil monitor system information display is reset, the engine oil life is reset to ----- km.



❶ Right Selector Wheel

Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult the service information provided for your vehicle for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except GCC country, Australian, and New Zealand models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil		When warning appears or 1 year									
Replace engine oil filter		When warning appears or 2 years									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance*1		Every 120,000 km									
Replace spark plugs*2		Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belt			•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Add genuine injector cleaner agent*3		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace transmission fluid			•		•		•		•		•
Replace rear differential fluid*4		•				•				•	
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									

*1:Sensory Method
Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.
*2:Inspect 20,000 km (Algeria models), Inspect 15,000 km (Nigeria, Ghana, Ivory Coast, and Benin models)
*3:Regular use of injector cleaner is required for models designated for Afghanistan, Bangladesh, Cape Verde, Djibouti, Dominica, Equatorial Guinea, Gambia, Grand Cayman, Guatemala, Guinea, Haiti, Honduras, Iraq, Liberia, Nicaragua, Nigeria, Philippines, Peru, Sierra Leone, Togo, and Venezuela.
*4:AWD models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Replace fuel filter in tank*1	Normal		Every 150,000 km									
	Severe		Every 70,000 km*3									
Replace fuel filter in tank*2	Normal		Every 180,000 km									
	Severe		Every 110,000 km*3									
Check expiration date for tyre repair kit bottle (If equipped)			Every 1 year									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km									
Visually inspect the following items:												
Driveshaft boots Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots Suspension components			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections All fluid levels and condition of fluid			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

*1:Africa (except South Africa), South America (except Brazil), and Indonesia models
*2:Except Africa (except South Africa), South America (except Brazil), and Indonesia models
*3:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

GCC country models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil		When warning appears or 1 year									
Replace engine oil filter		When warning appears or 2 years									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance*1		Every 120,000 km									
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belt			•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Add genuine injector cleaner agent*2		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace transmission fluid			•		•		•		•		•
Replace rear differential fluid*3		•				•				•	
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									

*1:Sensory Method
Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.
*2:Regular use of injector cleaner is required for models designated for Bahrain and Saudi Arabia.
*3:AWD models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Replace fuel filter in tank	Normal		Every 150,000 km									
	Severe		Every 70,000 km*1									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km									
Visually inspect the following items:												
Driveshaft boots Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots Suspension components			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Battery electrolyte level			Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections All fluid levels and condition of fluid			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

*1:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Severe Conditions

Follow the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule if you drive your car MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

- Driving less than 8 km per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km per trip.
- Driving in extremely hot, over 35°C condition.
- Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- Towing trailer*, driving with a loaded car-top carrier, or driving in mountainous conditions.
- Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

NOTE: If you only OCCASIONALLY drive under "severe" conditions, you should follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule.

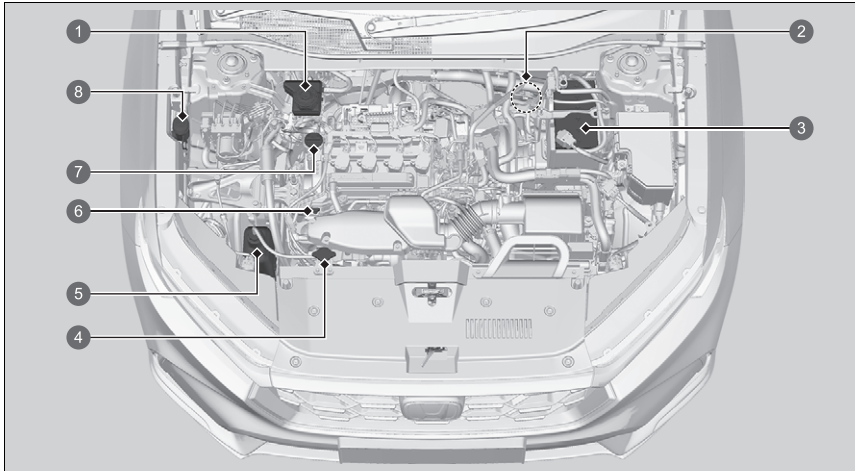
* Not available on all models

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

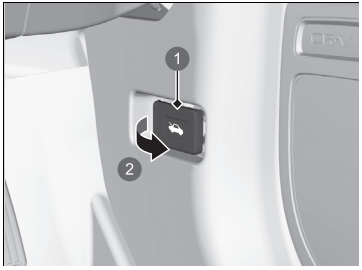
	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



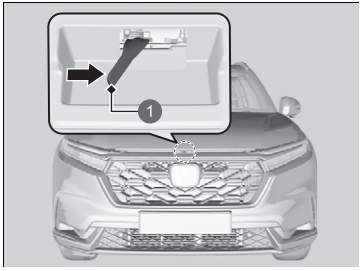
1. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Right-hand Drive Type)
2. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Left-hand Drive Type)
3. Battery
4. Radiator Cap
5. Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
6. Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
7. Engine Oil Fill Cap
8. Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)

Opening the Bonnet



1 Bonnet Release Handle
2 Pull

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.



1 Lever

3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

Opening the Bonnet

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.



4. Lift the bonnet up most of the way.
▶ The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.

When closing, lower it to approximately 30 cm, then press down firmly with your hands.

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

Models with gasoline particulate filter

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

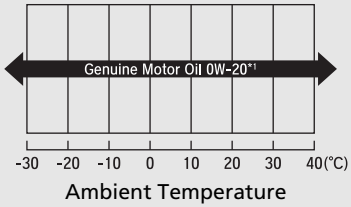
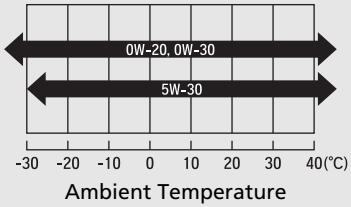
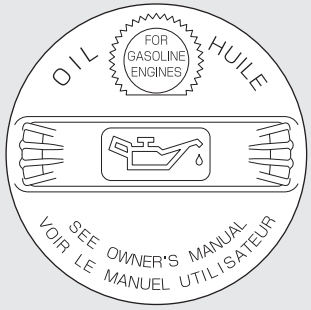
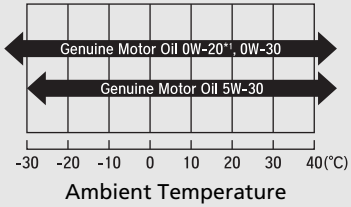
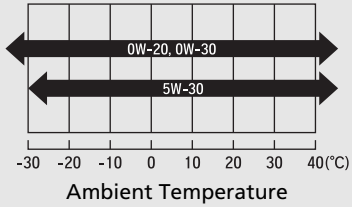
Models without gasoline particulate filter

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Models without gasoline particulate filter

The following seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.



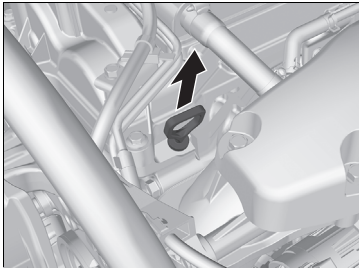
Model	Engine Oil Fill Cap Markings	Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
With Gasoline Particulate Filter		• Honda Genuine Motor Oil 	• ACEA C2/C3/C5 
Without Gasoline Particulate Filter		• Honda Genuine Motor Oil 	• API service SN or higher grade fuel-efficient oil • API Certification Mark "Starburst" • ACEA A5/B5 

*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

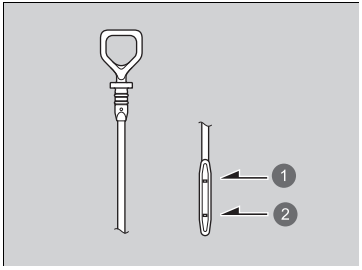
Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



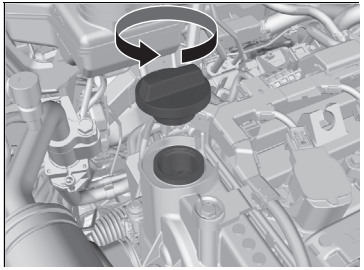
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

❶ Upper Mark
❷ Lower Mark

Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

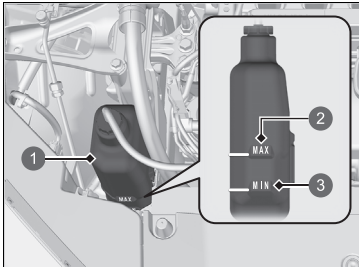
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

■ Reserve Tank



❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

Engine Coolant

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

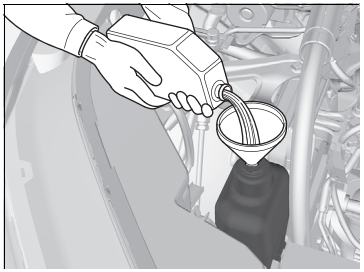
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

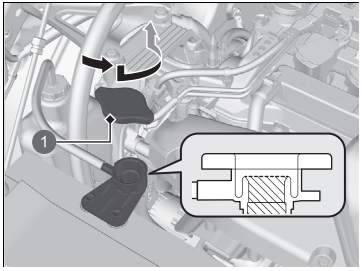
Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.



3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Continued

■ Radiator

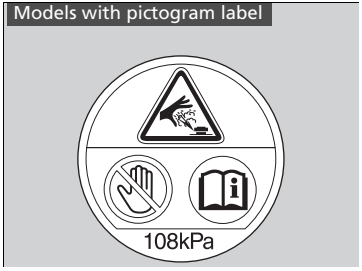


1 Radiator Cap

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8th turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

■ Radiator Cap

Models with pictogram label



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

■ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission (CVT) fluid.

➡ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 822

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission (CVT) fluid yourself.

Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

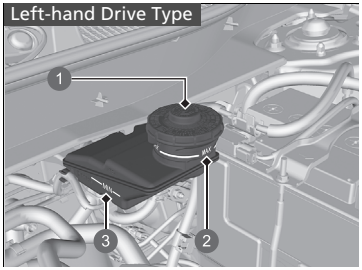
Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Checking the Brake Fluid

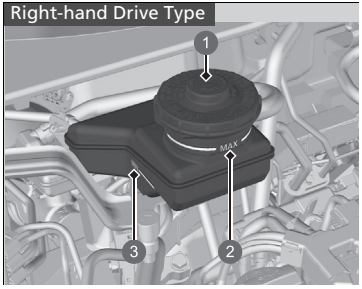
Left-hand Drive Type



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Right-hand Drive Type



❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Brake Fluid

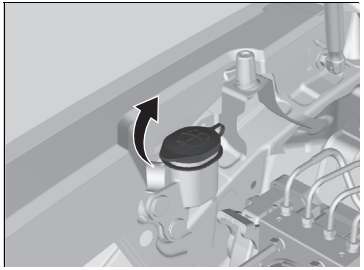
NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lights and Position/Daytime Running Lights

Front turn signal lights and position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Fog Lights*

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Brake Lights, Taillights, Rear Side Marker Lights, and Rear Turn Signal Lights

Brake lights, taillights, rear side marker lights, and rear turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Headlights

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer*, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

* Not available on all models

Taillights, Rear Fog Light*, and Back-Up Lights

Taillights, rear fog light*, and back-up lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

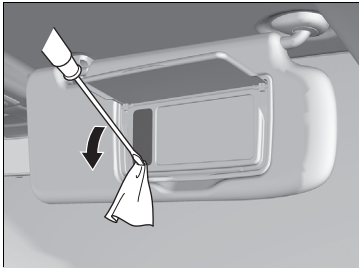
* Not available on all models

Other Light Bulbs

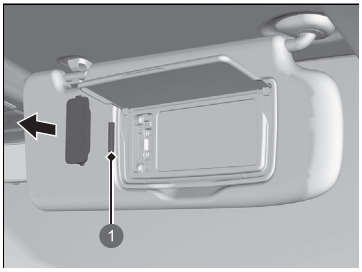
■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Vanity Mirror Light: 1.4 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



1 Bulb

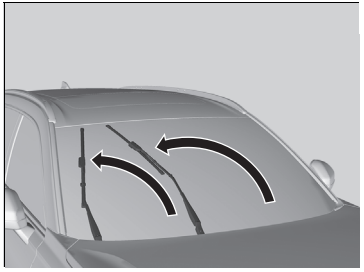
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

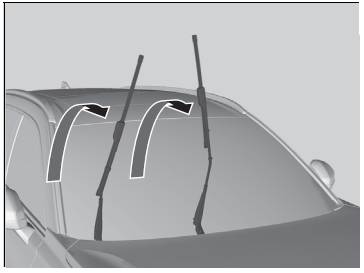
* Not available on all models

Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Lifting the Front Wiper Arms





1. Set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Within 10 seconds of setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position for more than two seconds.
   ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.
3. Lift both wiper arms.

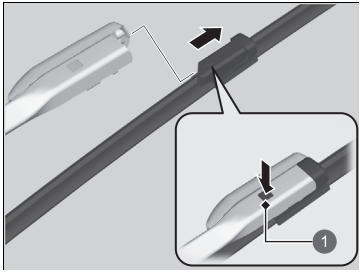
Lifting the Front Wiper Arms

NOTICE

When lifting the wiper arms, always follow the instructions to move them into the maintenance position.

The wiper arms may be damaged if they are moved manually.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade



1 Tab

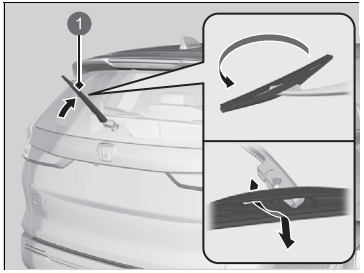
1. Lift both wiper arms.
   Lifting the Front Wiper Arms P. 845
2. Depress the lock tab, then slide the wiper blade off the wiper arm.
3. Slide the new wiper blade onto the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
4. Lower both wiper arms.
5. Set the power mode to ON, then set the wiper switch to the **MIST** position once.
   ▶ The wiper arms return to the standard position.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade

NOTICE

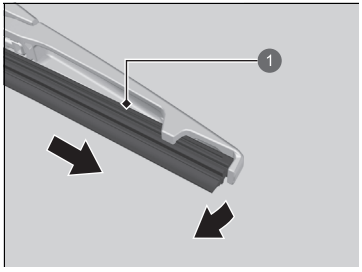
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.

❶ Wiper Arm



3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

❶ Blade

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

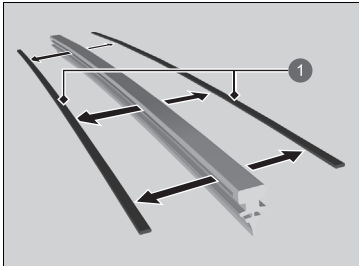
NOTICE

Do not try to forcefully lift up the wiper arm.
The wiper arm may be damaged if it is lifted too high.

NOTICE

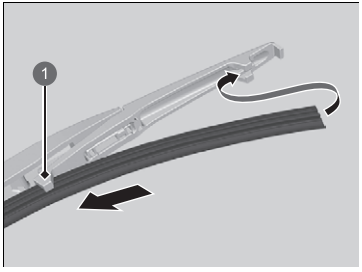
Avoid dropping the wiper arm, as it may damage the rear window.

Continued



1 Retainer

4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.



1 Holder

5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➡ **Wear Indicators** P. 850
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

* Not available on all models

Checking Tyres

⚠WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Taiwanese models

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.

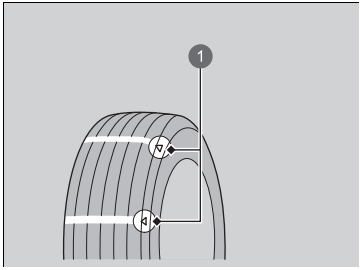
➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 657

Except Taiwanese models

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system*.

➡ **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 660

Wear Indicators



1 Example of a Wear Indicator mark

The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

Checking Tyres

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare*, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

* Not available on all models

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

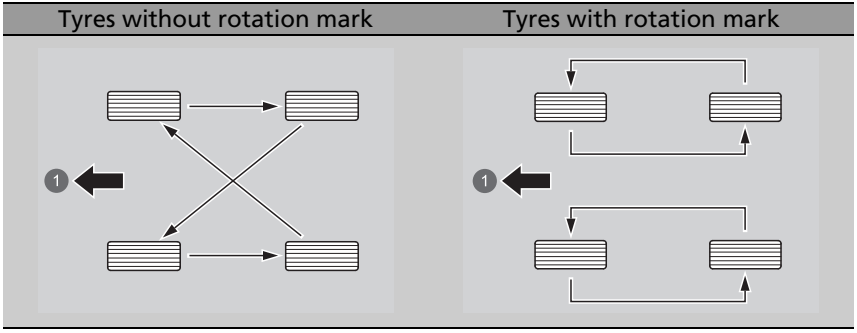
Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Your Vehicle's Tyre Rotation Pattern

Models with compact spare tyre or tyre repair kit

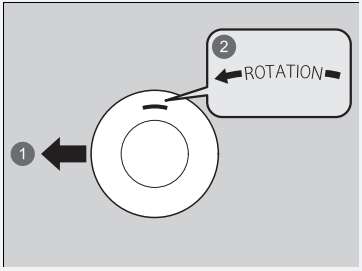
Rotate the tyres as shown here.



❶ Front

Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



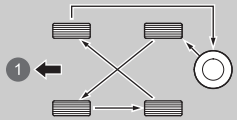
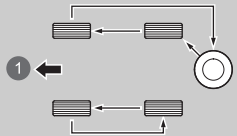
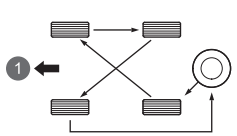
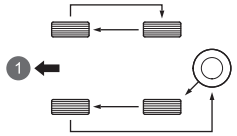
❶ Front
❷ Rotation Mark

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Wheel nut torque for the tyres that come standard-equipped with your vehicle is as follows.
Wheel nut torque:
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

Models with full-size spare tyre

Rotate the tyres, including a spare, as shown here.

Drive Type	Tyres without rotation mark	Tyres with rotation mark
Right-hand		
Left-hand		

❶ Front

Tyre Rotation

Taiwanese models

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

TPMS Calibration P. 657

Except Taiwanese models

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system*.

Deflation Warning System Calibration P. 660

* Not available on all models

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:
- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Latin American and Oceanian models

Bangladeshi, Bruneian, Pakistani, Singaporean, and Sri Lankan models

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
235/65R17 104H	**RUD-matic classic 4716134**
235/60R18 103H	**RUD-matic classic 4716134**
235/55R19 101Y	**RUD-matic classic V 19642**

*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

All models

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Snow Traction Devices

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

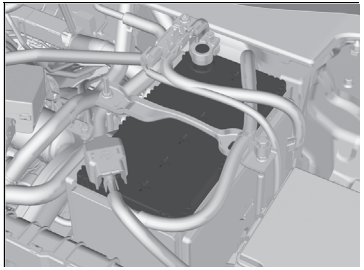
When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

Battery

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Continued

Battery

Emergency Procedures
Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.
Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.
Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

Models with Display Audio

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop* or System Updates.
Using a battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop* or System Updates from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type and size. Ask a dealer for more details.

Specifications P. 940

* Not available on all models

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Models with Display Audio

If the battery cable is removed while a system update is being performed, the electrical system can be permanently damaged. Only remove the battery cable when a system update is not being performed.

Battery

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/TPMS*, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Battery Label

Example



Battery Label

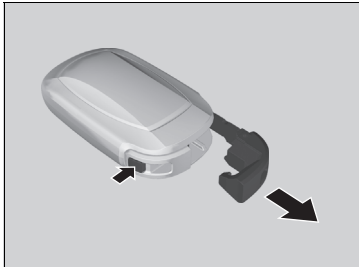
DANGER

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

Replacing the Remote Battery

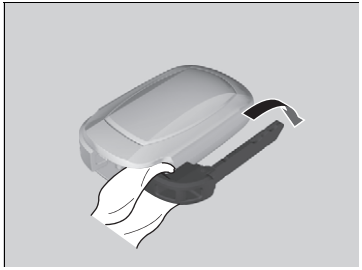
■ Keyless remote

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with the key grip.
▶ Wrap a key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

Replacing the Remote Battery

⚠⚠WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

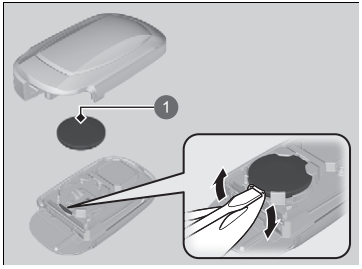
CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery*.

NOTICE
An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

* Not available on all models

Continued



1 Battery

3. Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

Replacing the Remote Battery

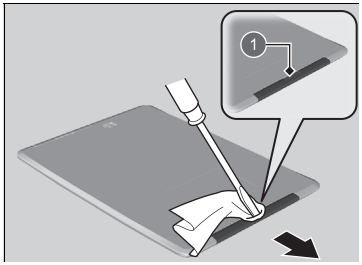
Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

According to Australian Standard;

WARNING

- The battery that powers the remote transmitter is hazardous – new and used batteries should be kept away from children.
- Lithium button/coin batteries can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less if it is swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

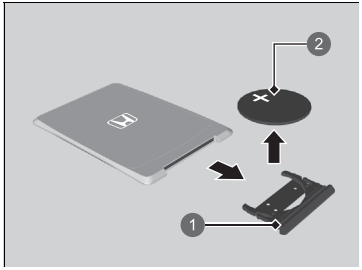
■ Card Key*



❶ Groove

Battery type: CR2412

1. Put the H logo side down of the card key.
2. Push to slide the groove of the battery holder using a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the battery holder.
▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the battery holder.



❶ Battery Holder
❷ Battery

3. Remove the battery. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
4. To reinstall the battery holder, push the battery holder into the card key until it clicks.
▶ Make sure to install the battery holder in the correct side.

* Not available on all models

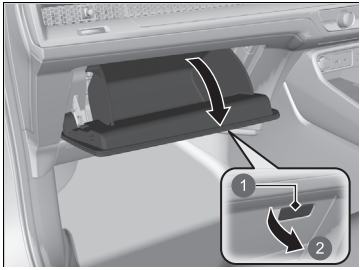
Dust and Pollen Filter

When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

Maintenance Schedule P. 822

How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.

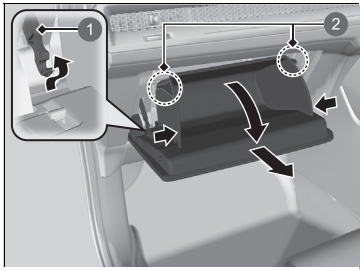
❶ Handle
❷ Pull

Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

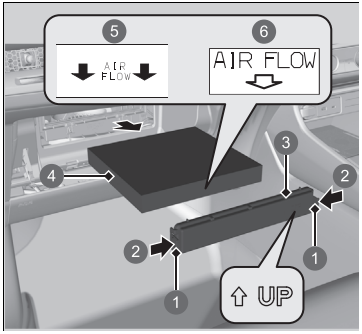
If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.



❶ Stopper
❷ Tab

2. Push the stopper on the passenger's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.
3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
4. Remove the glove box.

Continued



❶ Tab
❷ Push
❸ Cover
❹ Dust and Pollen Filter
❺ Cambodia, Laos, Malaysian, Philippines, and Vietnam models
❻ Except Cambodia, Laos, Malaysian, Philippines, and Vietnam models

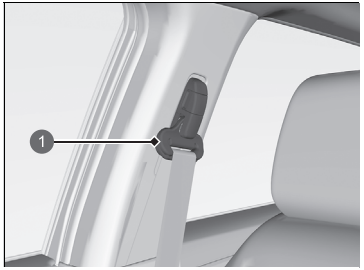
5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
6. Remove the filter from the case.
7. Install a new filter in the case.
▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



1 Loop

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

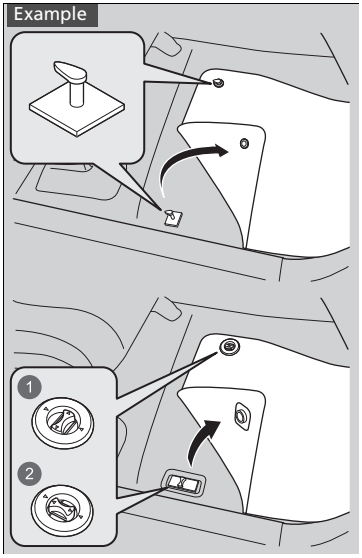
Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Continued

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Floor Mats



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchorages, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

❶ Unlock
❷ Lock

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchorages. Position any second row seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather, resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats, resulting in discolouration or stains.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

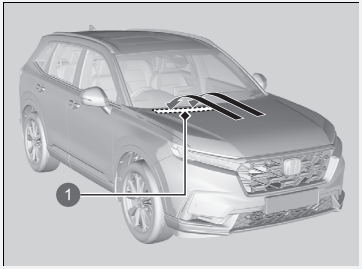
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



1 Air Intake Vents

Lock the doors when washing the vehicle.
Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windscreen, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

Lifting the Front Wiper Arms P. 845

If water and any chemicals are on the brakes when your vehicle is being washed, drive a short distance and apply the brakes several times before parking. Parking while brakes are wet may cause them to be stuck by rust.

■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

Continued

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on the sides of the second row seats (for models with rear side airbags), on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  Fuses P. 920
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Some Honda Genuine Accessories are supplied with an exclusive owner's manual for the operation and care detail of the product. If an accessory owner's manual is provided to you, please refer to it for full detail.

If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

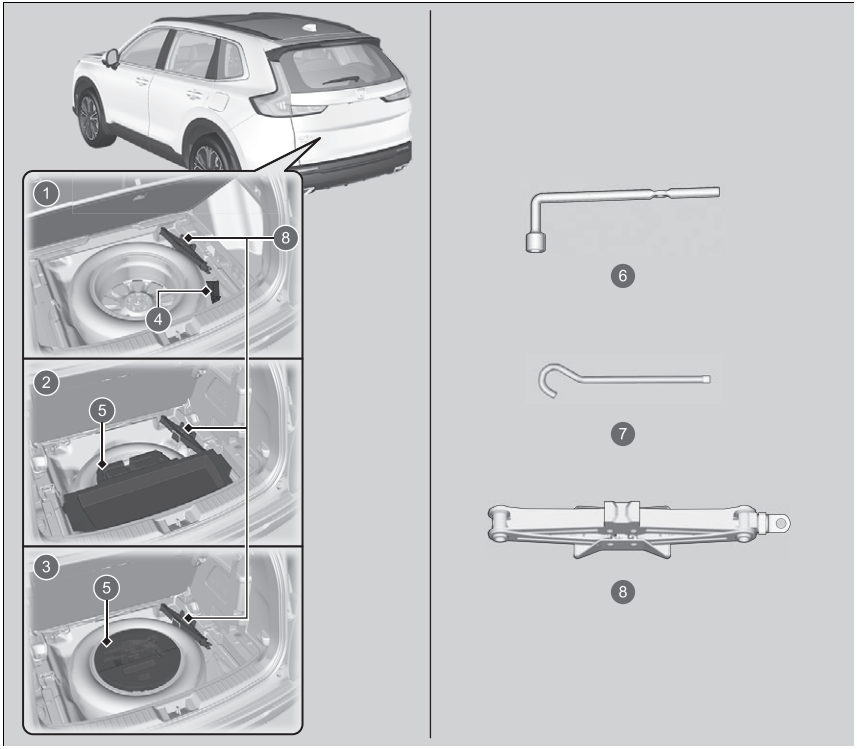
Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools*..... 874
If a Tyre Goes Flat
Models with tyre repair kit
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre..... 875
Models with spare tyre
Changing a Flat Tyre..... 888
Handling of the Jack..... 899
Engine Does Not Start
Checking the Engine..... 900
If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak..... 902
Emergency Engine Start..... 904
Emergency Engine Stop..... 905
If the Battery Is Dead
Jump Starting Procedure..... 906
Shift Lever Does Not Move..... 909
Overheating..... 911
Indicator Coming On/Blinking
If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears..... 913
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On..... 914
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks..... 914
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks..... 915
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On..... 916
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On..... 917
Taiwanese models
If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks..... 918
Except Taiwanese models
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator* Comes On or Blinks...919
Fuses
Fuse Locations..... 920
Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 925
Emergency Towing..... 928
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door....929
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate.....931
Emergency Call (eCall)*..... 933

* Not available on all models

Types of Tools



❶ Five-seater models with full-size spare tyre
❷ Seven-seater models with compact spare tyre
❸ Seven-seater models with full-size spare tyre
❹ Tool Bag
❺ Tool Case
❻ Wheel Nut Wrench/Jack Handle
❼ Jack Handle Bar
❽ Jack

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

* Not available on all models

Models with tyre repair kit

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

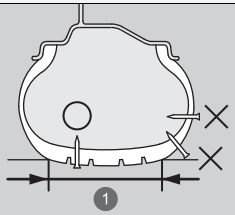
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm	Yes
Larger than 4 mm	No

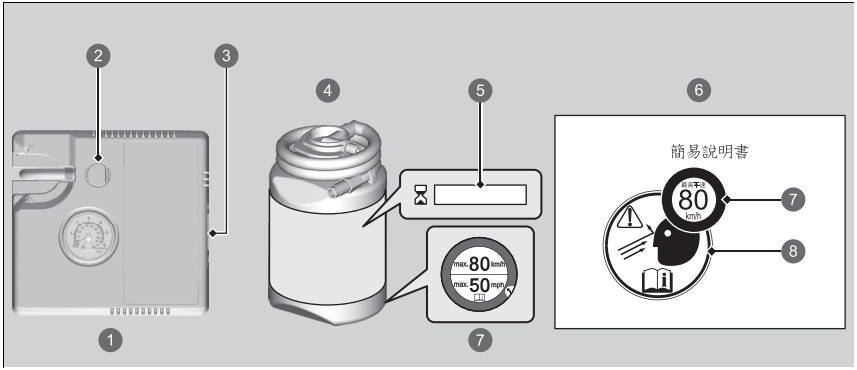
1 Contact Area

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

Continued

■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

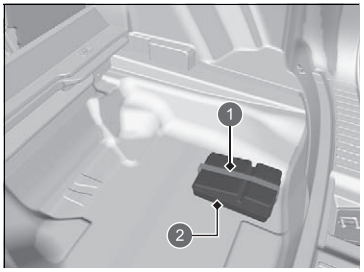


❶ Air Compressor
❷ Deflate Button
❸ Air Compressor Switch
❹ Sealant Bottle
❺ Expiration Date
❻ Instruction Manual
❼ Speed Restriction Label
❽ Wheel Label

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

One of the speed restriction labels is applied to the bottom of the sealant bottle.

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

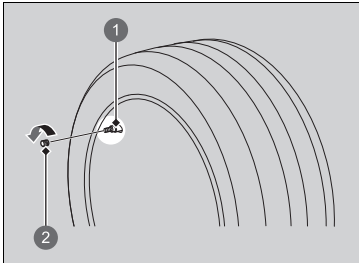


❶ Strap
❷ Bag

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Unfasten the strap and take the bag out of the luggage area.
3. Take the kit out of the bag.
4. Place the kit face up on flat ground near the flat tyre away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

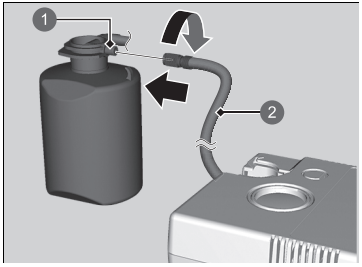
Continued

■ Injecting Sealant and Air



❶ Tyre Valve Stem
❷ Valve Cap

1. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.



❶ Bottle Tyre Valve
❷ Air Compressor Hose

2. Shake the sealant bottle.
3. Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

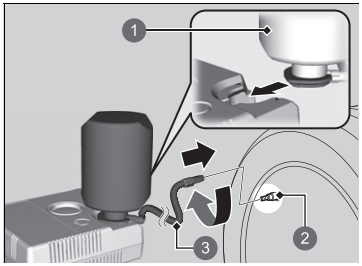
If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.

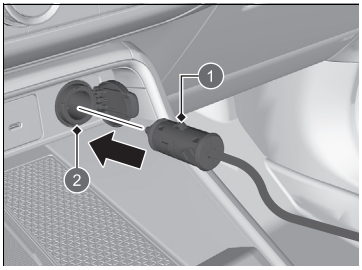
Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose.



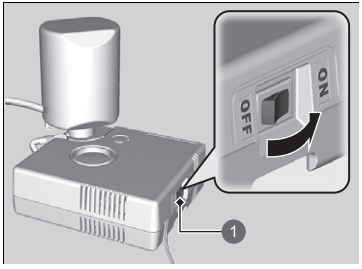
❶ Sealant Bottle
❷ Tyre Valve Stem
❸ Sealant/Air Hose

4. Upside down the sealant bottle, then attach the bottle into the cutout of the air compressor.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

Continued



❶ Plug
❷ Accessory Power Socket



❶ Air Compressor Switch

6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
▶ Do not plug any other electric devices into other accessory power sockets.
➡ **Accessory Power Sockets** P. 317

7. Start the engine.
➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 133

8. Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre.
▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.

9. After the air pressure reaches the specified pressure, turn off the air compressor.
▶ Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
▶ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

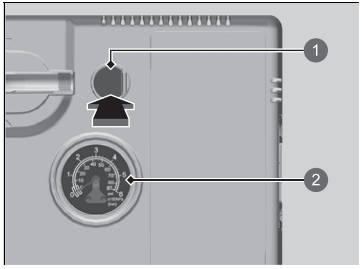
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

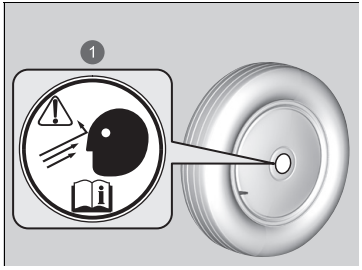
NOTICE
Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

You hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete, the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.



❶ Deflate Button
❷ Pressure Gauge



❶ Wheel Label

10. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
11. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
12. Detach the bottle from the air compressor.
13. Press the deflate button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).

14. Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.
15. Store the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.

Injecting Sealant and Air

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

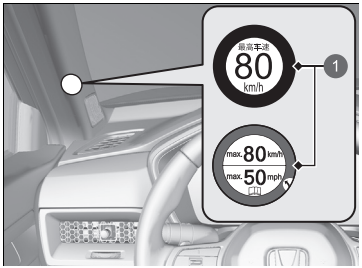
See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:
- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.
  Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.

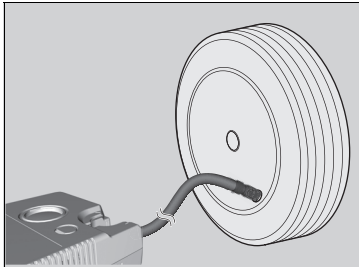
Continued

■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



1. Apply either of the speed restriction labels to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
   ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h.
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

❶ Speed Restriction Label

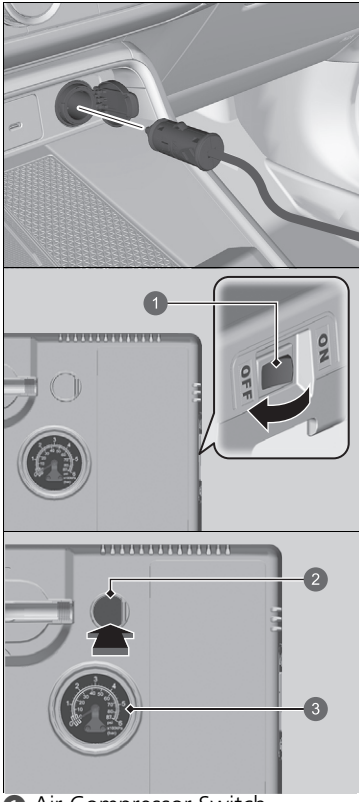


4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

5. If the air pressure is:
- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi): Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 928
- Front:240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/rear:220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi) or more: Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.

▶ If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.

Continued



1 Air Compressor Switch
2 Deflate Button
3 Air Pressure Gauge

- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than front:240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/rear:220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi):
  Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches front:240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/rear:220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi).
  ➡ **Injecting Sealant and Air** P. 878
  Then, drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station.
  Do not exceed 80 km/h.

▶ You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.

6. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
7. Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
8. Press the deflate button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).
9. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

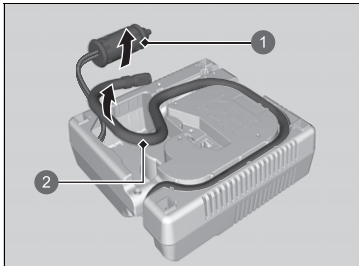
⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



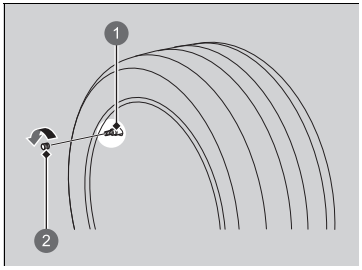
1. Power Plug
2. Air Hose

1. Take the kit out of the luggage area.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre P. 876

2. Place the kit face up on flat ground near the tyre to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

3. Remove the air hose from the kit.



1. Tyre Valve Stem
2. Valve Cap

4. Remove the valve cap.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

⚠WARNING

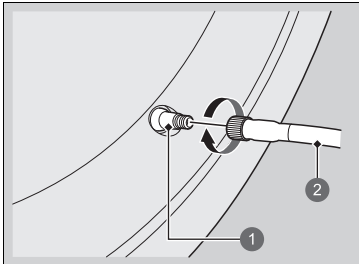
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

NOTICE

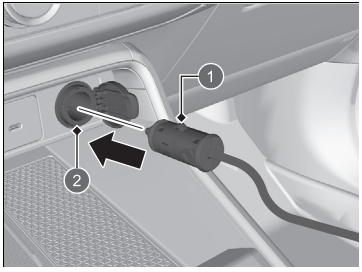
Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Continued



1 Tyre Valve Stem
2 Air Hose

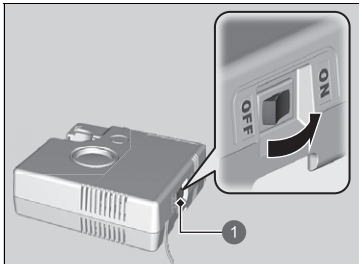
5. Attach the air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.



1 Plug
2 Accessory Power Socket

6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
➡ **Accessory Power Sockets** P. 317

7. Start the engine.
➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 133



1 Air Compressor Switch

8. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
▶ If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.
9. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
10. Turn off the air compressor.
▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
▶ If overinflated, press the deflate button.
11. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
12. Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
13. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Models with spare tyre

Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the regular tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Changing a Flat Tyre

Models with compact spare tyre

Follow compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specifications P. 940

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a regular tyre as soon as possible.

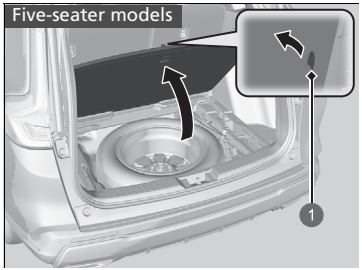
The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the regular rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the regular tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

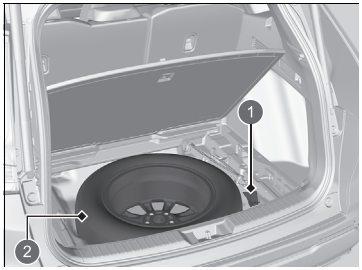
Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



❶ Strap

Five-seater models

1. Pull the strap and open the luggage floor lid.



❶ Tool Bag
❷ Spare Tyre

2. Take the tool bag out of the luggage area. Take the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar out of the tool bag. Go to step 5 and 6.

Changing a Flat Tyre

WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

Seven-seater models

The shape of the tool case varies by model.

Models with compact spare tyre

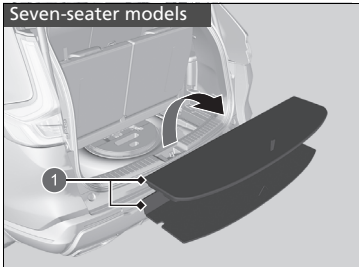
Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

Oceanian models

Do not use the compact spare tyre if you are towing a trailer.

Continued

Seven-seater models



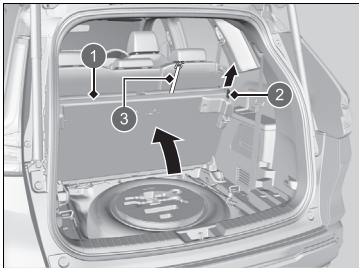
❶ Luggage Floor Lids

Seven-seater models

1. Remove the luggage floor lids (upper and lower).

➡ **Luggage Storage Area*** P. 313

➡ **Luggage Floor Box*** P. 314



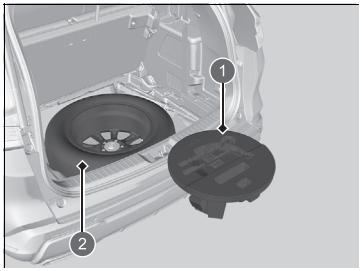
❶ Seat Cushion
❷ Strap
❸ Hook

2. Folding down the third row seat.

➡ **Folding Down the Third Row Seat** P. 294

3. Unlock the seat cushion by pulling the strap.
Push the seat cushion forward, then hang the hook to the head restraint.

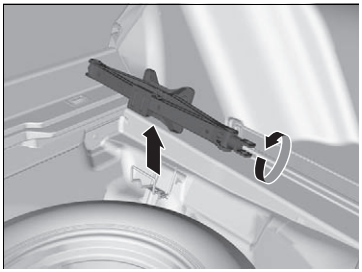
 * Not available on all models



❶ Tool Case
❷ Spare Tyre

4. Take the tool case out of the luggage area. Take the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar out of the tool case.

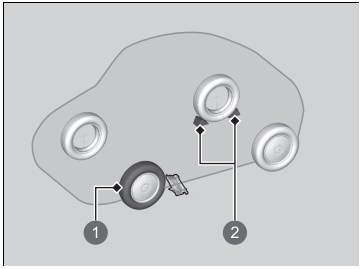
Continued



All models

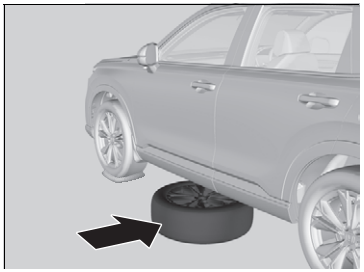
5. Take the jack out of the spare tyre area.

6. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.



7. Place a wheel block or rock in the front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

❶ The tyre to be replaced.
❷ Wheel Blocks



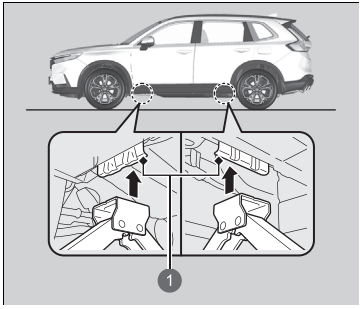
8. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



9. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

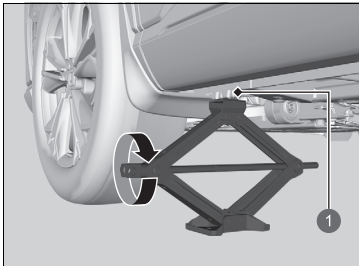
Continued

How to Set Up the Jack



1 Jacking Point

1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.



1 Jacking Point

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠WARNING

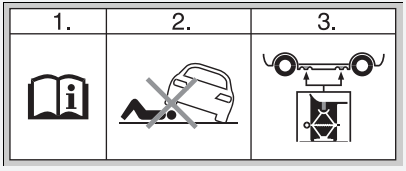
The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

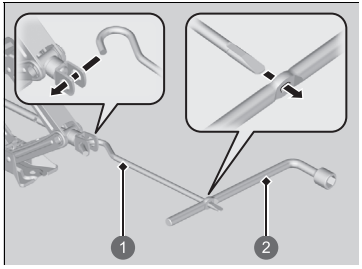
WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

Oceanian models

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.



1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



❶ Jack Handle Bar
❷ Wheel Nut Wrench as Jack Handle

3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

How to Set Up the Jack

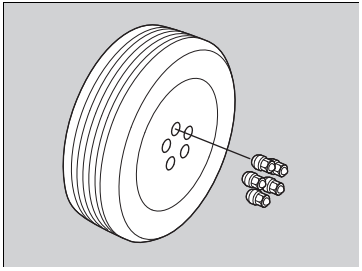
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight (“load”) or may not fit the jacking point.

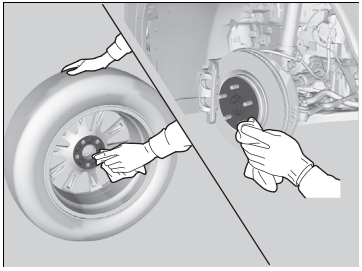
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

Continued

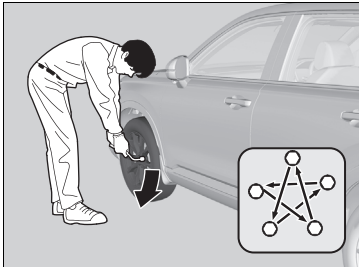
■ Replacing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the spare tyre.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.

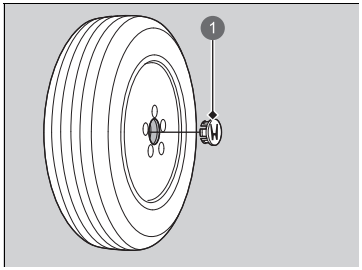


5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around tightening the nuts two to three times in this order.
Wheel nut torque:
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

Replacing the Flat Tyre

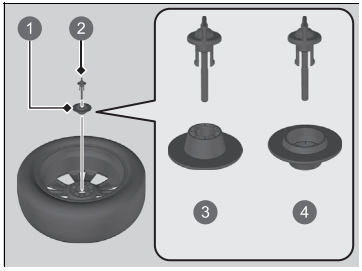
Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

Storing the Flat Tyre



❶ Centre cap

1. Remove the centre cap.
2. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.



❶ Spacer Cone
❷ Wing Bolt
❸ For compact spare tyre
❹ For regular tyre

Models with a compact spare tyre

3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.

Models with a full-size spare tyre

3. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.

All models

4. Securely store the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar back in the tool bag* or the tool case*. Store the tool bag* or the tool case* in the luggage area properly.
5. Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place.

Seven-seater models

6. Return the third row seat to the original position.

Folding Down the Third Row Seat
P. 294

Storing the Flat Tyre

⚠WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Models with deflation warning system

■ Deflation Warning System and the Spare Tyre

Models with compact spare tyre

If you replace a flat tyre with the spare tyre, the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres, **Tyre pressure monitor system problem** will appear on the driver information interface and the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on; however, this is normal and is no cause for concern.

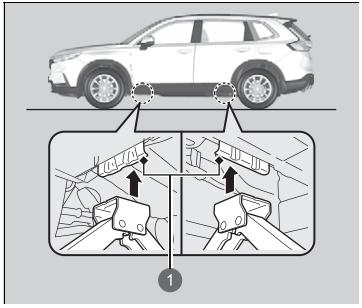
All models

Calibrate the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

➲ **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 660

Models with tyre repair kit

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown. When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



❶ Jacking Points

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Check for a message on the driver information interface.** • If the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears. ➡ **If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak** P. 902
	Check the fuses. Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 925
The starter turns over normally, but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with a fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Review the engine start procedure.** Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 611
	Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. ➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 247 ➡ **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 148
	Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➡ **Fuel Gauge** P. 161
	Check the fuses. Check all fuses or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 925
	If the problem continues: ➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 928

If you cannot start the engine after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

If the Battery Is Dead P. 906

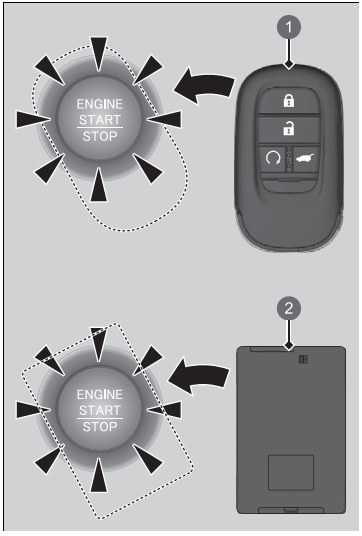
Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily start the engine using the emergency starting procedure.

Emergency Engine Start P. 904

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for more than 15 seconds.

If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak

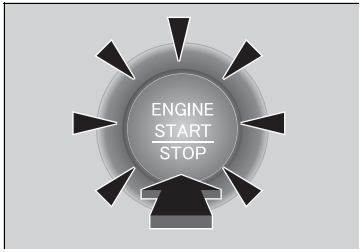
If the beeper sounds, the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears on the driver information interface, the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows:



1. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
   ▶ The beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.
2. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote or card key* while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote or card key* should be facing you.
   ▶ The beeper sounds, and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button stays on for about 10 seconds.

❶ Keyless Remote
❷ Card Key*

 * Not available on all models



3. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on.
▶ The engine starts.
▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Engine Start

If the engine does not start using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to start it using the emergency starting procedure below.
Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Check that the transmission is in P, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
3. Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for at least 15 seconds.

This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to start the engine using the above procedure.
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Emergency Engine Start

Refer to the following if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

➡ **Shift Lever Does Not Move** P. 909

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

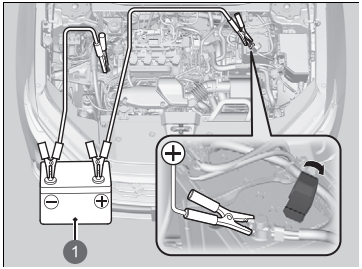
Emergency Engine Stop

NOTICE

Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.
If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



❶ Booster Battery

1. Open the cover on the positive ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
- ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
- ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.

4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

Jump Starting Procedure

⚠WARNING

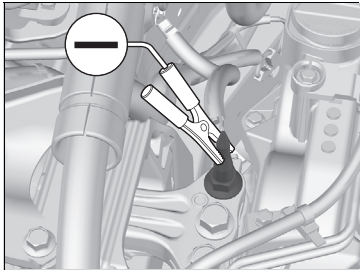
A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

Jump Starting Procedure

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

Continued

■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

Jump Starting Procedure

The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tyre pressure/TPMS*, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

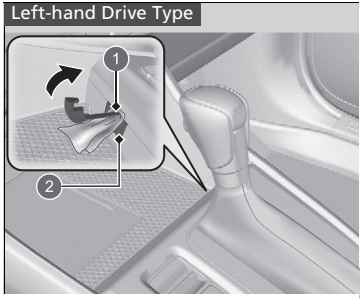
* Not available on all models

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

Releasing the Lock

Left-hand Drive Type



❶ Shift Lock Release Slot
❷ Cover

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
3. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote or card key*.

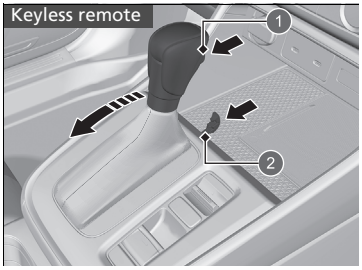
Left-hand Drive Type

4. Wrap a cloth around the tip of the built-in key. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.

* Not available on all models

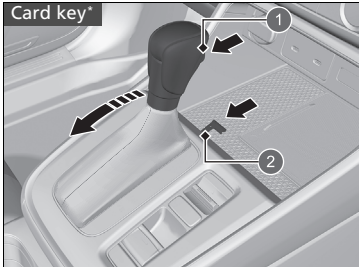
Continued

Keyless remote



❶ Release Button
❷ Shift Lock Release Slot

Card key*



❶ Release Button
❷ Shift Lock Release Slot

All models

5. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
6. While pushing the key in, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into [N].
▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

 * Not available on all models

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

Models with B-type meter

- The temperature gauge is at upper level or the engine suddenly loses power.

All models

- The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.

▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Models with B-type meter

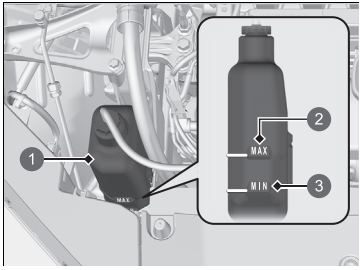
Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge at upper level may damage the engine.

All models

Continuing to drive with the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

Continued

■ Next thing to do



❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface disappears.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the driver information interface.
If the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

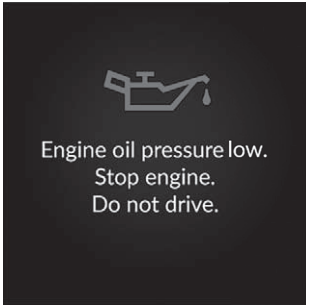
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears



■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.

2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

▶ Add oil as necessary.

Oil Check P. 834

3. Start the engine and check the **Engine oil pressure low** warning.

▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.

▶ The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

■ **Reasons for the indicator to blink**

There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On**
P. 916

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On


(Red)


(Amber)

■ **If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically**

➡ **Parking Brake** P. 767

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  ▶ To prevent the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into P.
- If only the brake system indicator (red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system or Driver Attention Monitor System.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
  If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

Taiwanese models

If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 656

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

Except Taiwanese models

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator* Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on. If the compact spare tyre* is installed, the indicator will either come on or it will first blink for about one minute, then stay on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

➡ **Deflation Warning System*** P. 659

If the compact spare tyre* causes the indicator to come on, change the tyre to a regular tyre. The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre* causes the indicator to first blink, and then stay on, change the tyre to a regular tyre. The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

➡If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator* Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

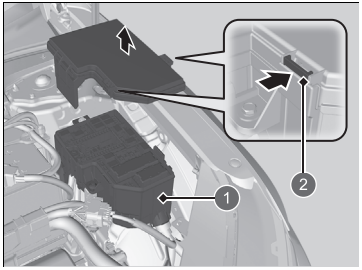
* Not available on all models

Fuse Locations

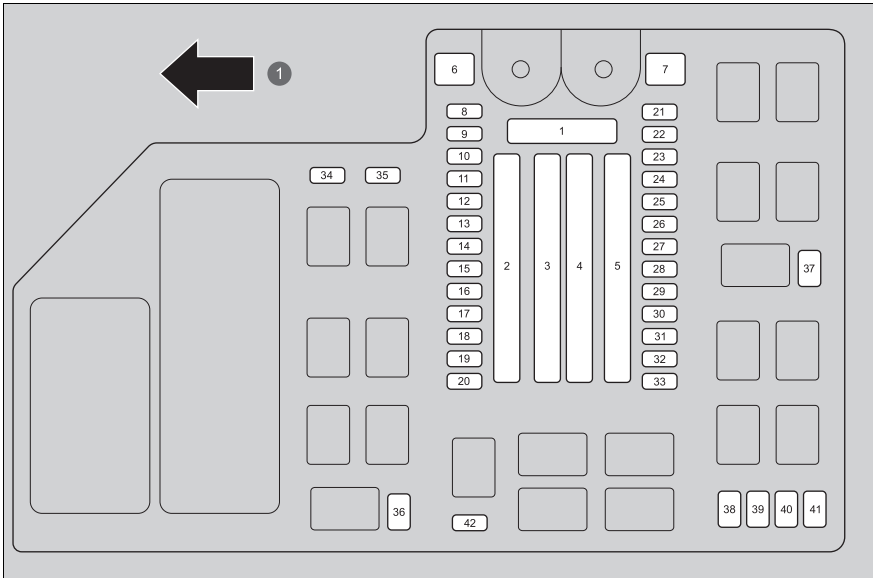
If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.
Fuse locations are shown on the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



1 Fuse Box
2 Tab



1 Front

■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Main Fuse	125 A
2	Idle Stop 2*	30 A
	–	40 A
	Fuse Box Option 1	60 A
	–	40 A
	Fuse Box Option 2*	60 A
	–	60 A
	Fuse Box Main 1	60 A
3	Audio AMP*	30 A
	ST Magnetic Switch	30 A
	–	40 A
	Rear Demister	30 A
	–	50 A
	Blower Motor	40 A
	Power Tailgate Motor*	40 A
4	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	–	40 A
	Electric Brake Booster	40 A
	IG Main 1	30 A
	–	40 A
	IG Main 2	30 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
5	Idle Stop 1*	30 A
	Wiper	30 A
	EPS	70 A
	–	30 A
	–	40 A
	Main Fan	30 A
	Fuse Box Main 2	60 A
6	Sub Fan	30 A
7	Relay Module 2	20 A
8	–	–
9	Back Up	10 A
10	–	–
11	Rear Fog Light*	10 A
12	–	–
13	Audio Sub*	15 A*1 7.5 A*2, *3
14	–	–
15	Front Fog Lights*	10 A
16	–	–
17	A/C Magnetic Clutch	10 A
18	Horn	15 A
19	Front Washer	15 A
20	Audio	15 A
21	Relay Module 1	20 A
22	DBW	15 A
23	Hazard	10 A
24	VBU	10 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
25	IGP	15 A
26	TCU	10 A
27	Left Headlight	20 A
28	Injector	20 A
29	Stop lights	10 A
30	Right Headlight	20 A
31	IG Coil	15 A
32	–	–
33	–	–
34	–	–
35	–	–
36	Audio Main VST*	15 A
37	Audio Sub VST*	15 A
38	–	–
39	IGPS VBACT	7.5 A
40	IGPS FAN	7.5 A
41	IGPS LAF	7.5 A
42	IG1 Monitor 2	5 A

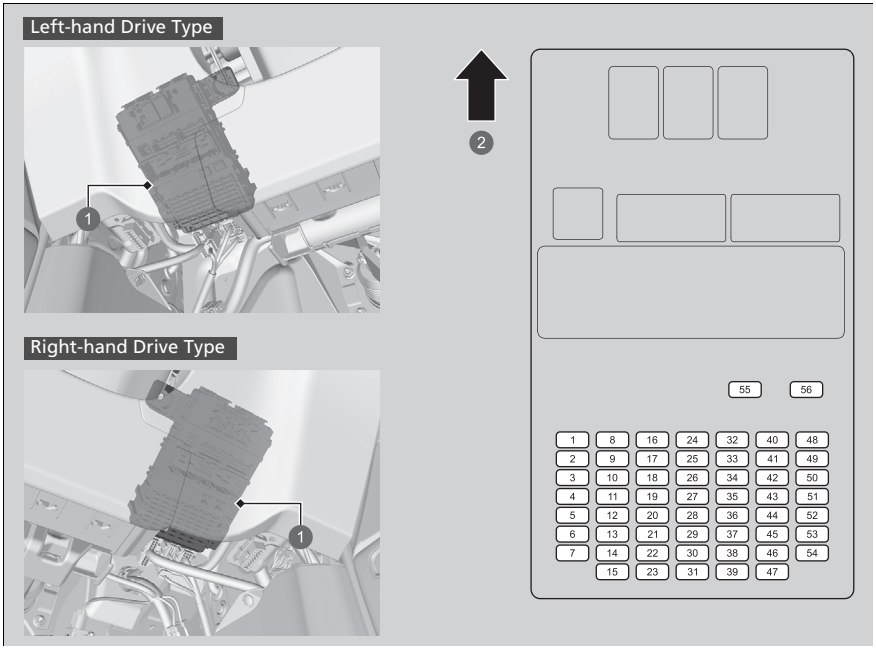
*1:Models with Display Audio with Google built-in and Normal AMP
*2:Models with Display Audio without Google built-in
*3:Models with BOSE AMP and Multi-View Camera

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Interior Main Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.
Fuse locations are shown on the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



1 Fuse Box
2 Up

■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Driver's Power Window	20 A
2	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
3	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
4	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
5	Option	10 A
6	SRS	10 A
7	Tailgate Motor*	(10 A)
8	–	–
9	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
10	Door Lock	20 A
11	Meter	10 A
12	Option 3 (Starter Cut)*	10 A
13	Option 2	10 A
14	Option 6 (VB SOL)	10 A
15	–	–
16	IMG	10 A
17	Trailer*	20 A
18	–	–
19	–	–
20	USB Charger	10 A
21	Accessory Power Socket (Luggage Area)	20 A
22	SMART	10 A
23	–	–
24	E-DPS*	20 A
25	–	–
26	SRS	10 A
27	ACG	10 A
28	Option 5 (ABS)	10 A
29	Fuel Pump	20 A
30	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
31	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
32	Panoramic Roof*	20 A
33	USB Charger PD*	10 A
34	–	–
35	Sunshade*	20 A
36	–	–
37	–	–
38	Rear Blower*	20 A
39	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
40	Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	20 A
41	Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	20 A
42	–	–
43	Option	10 A
44	Daytime Running Light	5 A
45	ACC	10 A
46	–	–
47	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
48	Front Seat Heater*	20 A
49	Passenger's Power Seat Reclining*	20 A
50	Driver's Power Seat Lumbar Support*	10 A
51	–	–
52	Power Tailgate Closer*	20 A
53	Passenger's Power Seat Sliding*	20 A
54	Option 1	10 A
55	–	–
56	–	–

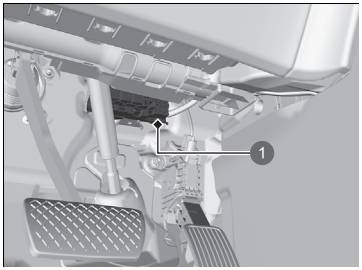
* Not available on all models

Continued

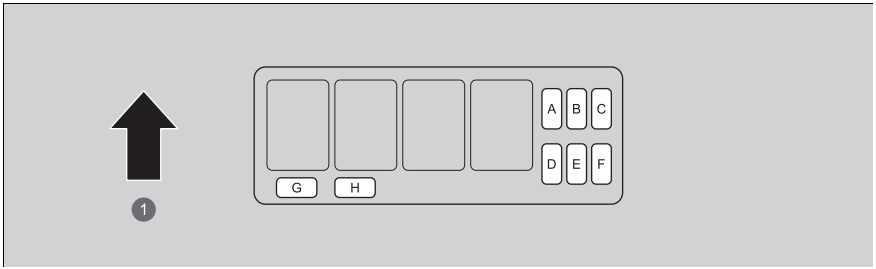
Taiwanese models

■ Interior Sub Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.
Fuse locations are shown on the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



❶ Sub Fuse Box

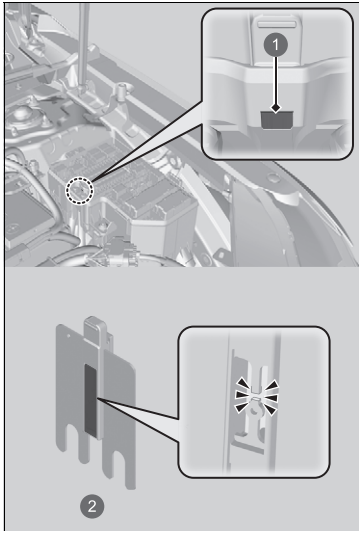


❶ Up

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
A	ACC	5 A
B	EOP	10 A
C	–	–
D	Meter	10 A
E	Option	10 A
F	–	–
G	–	–
H	–	–

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1 Hole
2 Main Fuse

1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the main fuse in the engine compartment fuse box.
   ▶ Look at the fuse through the hole.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

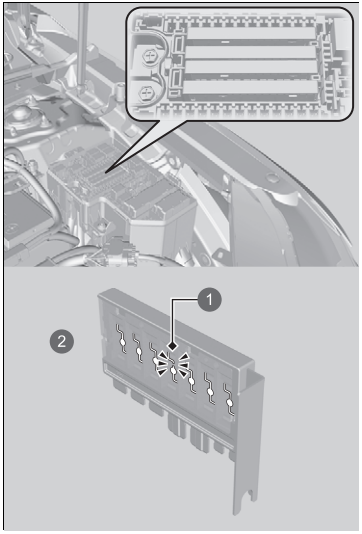
Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

Fuse Locations P. 920

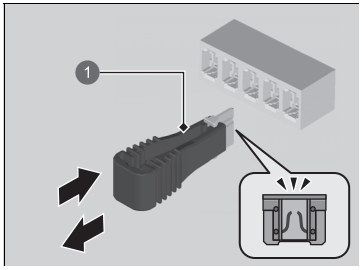
Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

Continued



1 Blown Fuse
2 Combined Fuse

4. Check the combined fuses in the engine compartment fuse box.
▶ Look into the space between the fuses.
▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.



1 Fuse Puller

5. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Emergency Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flatbed equipment
The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

2WD models

■ Wheel lift equipment
The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

NOTICE
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

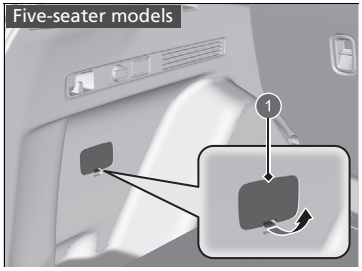
Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

2WD models
Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.
Parking Brake P. 767

What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

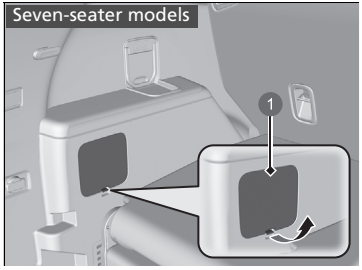
If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.

Five-seater models



❶ Cover

Seven-seater models



❶ Cover

1. Open the tailgate.

Seven-seater models

2. Folding down the third row seat.

➡ **Folding Down the Third Row Seat**
P. 294

All models

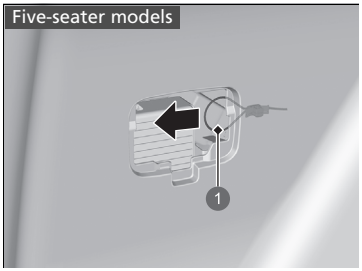
3. Remove the cover.

What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

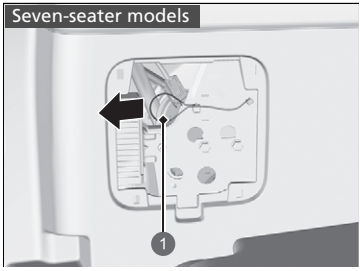
Continued

Five-seater models



1 Release Cord

Seven-seater models



1 Release Cord

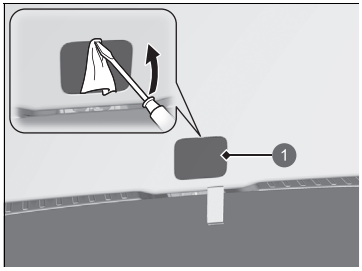
4. Pull the release cord as shown.

5. Open the fuel fill door.

➡ **How to Refuel** P. 807

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

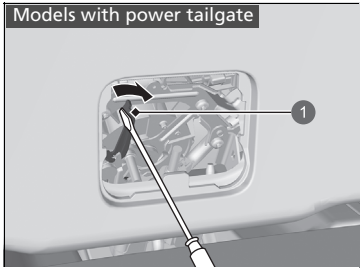
If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1 Cover

1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

Models with power tailgate



1 Lever

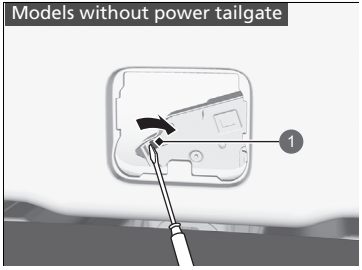
2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right using a flat-tip screwdriver.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

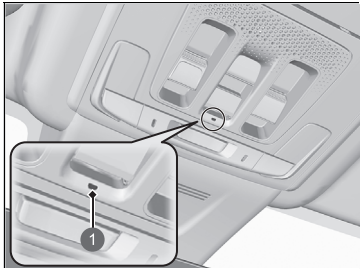
Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

Continued



❶ Lever

Automatic emergency call



If your vehicle is involved in a collision, the vehicle will attempt to connect to a Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) operator. Once a connection is established, various information about the vehicle will be sent to a PSAP operator with whom you will be able to speak. This information includes:

❶ eCall Indicator

- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Type of vehicle (passenger vehicle or light-weight commercial vehicle)
- Type of energy stored for vehicle propulsion (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electricity/hydrogen)
- Last three locations of the vehicle
- Direction of travel
- Triggering mode (automatic or manual)
- Timestamp

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

When the power mode is set to ON, the eCall indicator lights up in green for 1 second, then in red for 1 second.

Emergency Call (eCall)*

Your vehicle is equipped with the eCall service system.

The eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The eCall in-vehicle system is activated when the power mode is set to ON. In the event of a collision, the system will determine the degree of the impact based on information collected from the on-board sensors and, depending on the severity of the collision, will initiate the emergency call.

The eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed.

Manual emergency call P. 935

Any processing of personal data through the eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (replaced by Regulation (EU) 2016/679) and 2002/58/EC, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by Regulation (EU) 2016/679).

* Not available on all models

Continued

If the eCall system is working properly, the indicator will light up in green.
- Green: eCall system is ready.
- Blinking in green: eCall system is connected and making an eCall to a PSAP operator.
- Repeating a pattern of short flashes of the red light: The eCall system has failed to connect to an operator. The eCall indicator will continue this pattern for 5 seconds, then it will light up in green.

If the eCall system is disabled in the event of a critical system failure, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle:
- Red or blacked out: A problem with the eCall system has occurred. If the indicator stays red or blacked out even after you have restarted the vehicle, have the system check by a dealer.
- Blinking in red: The level of the backup battery is too low. While the power is in ON, the battery undergoes recharging. Once the battery has been recharged to a certain level, the eCall indicator lights up in green.

Emergency Call (eCall)*

Recipients of data processed by the eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country in which they are located and are the first to receive.

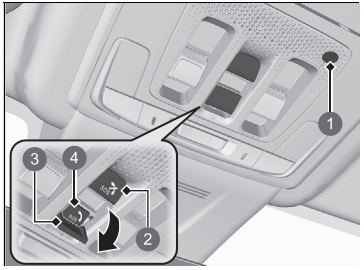
Your vehicle may NOT be able to connect to a PSAP operator if:
- Both the 12V battery and backup battery are too low.
- Your vehicle is in an area without adequate cellular coverage.
- There is a problem with the eCall system itself or its peripheral equipment such as the microphone or speakers.

The backup battery is designed to operate for at least 3 years, after which it may need to be replaced.

The backup battery is not available for direct purchase. For replacement, visit a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Manual emergency call



❶ Microphone
❷ **SOS** Cancel Button
❸ Cover
❹ **SOS** Button

If you need to make an emergency call, you can establish a connection manually. Press the **SOS** button and hold it for more than 0.5 seconds.

To cancel a call, press the **SOS** cancel button for more than 0.5 seconds, before 5 seconds has elapsed since the **SOS** button was pressed.

The **SOS** button is protected by a cover. Open the cover to gain access.

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

Manual emergency call

Do NOT press the button while you are driving. If you need to contact an operator, park the vehicle in a safe place before you make a call.

If the eCall system at first fails to connect to a PSAP operator, it will try again until a connection is established. However, if 2 minutes have elapsed since the first try was attempted, the system will no longer attempt to establish a connection.

The **SOS** cancel button does not cancel a call once the system is connected to an operator.

Continued

Emergency Call (eCall)*

Data privacy

The eCall in-vehicle system is designed to ensure that:

- Data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
- It is not traceable or subject to any constant tracking during its normal operation status.
- Data in the internal memory of the system is automatically and continuously removed.

For the system to function normally, the vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so that the last three locations of the vehicle are kept up-to-date.

The log of activity data in the eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.

 * Not available on all models

Emergency Call (eCall)*

Owner's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by Regulation (EU) 2016/679).

Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Honda eCall Service Information:
If you have any questions about eCall, contact the office relevant to the country in which you reside. See the service book or your local Honda website for a list of offices.

* Not available on all models

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications 940
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number 943
Utility Compliance*
Environmental Protection Regulation....944
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* 945
Open Source Licence 957

* Not available on all models

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	CR-V	
Curb Weight	1,584 - 1,597 kg[*1] 1,594 - 1,665 kg[*2] 1,602 - 1,749 kg[*3] 1,605 - 1,700 kg[*4] 1,613 - 1,700 kg[*5] 1,649 - 1,671 kg[*6] 1,653 - 1,662 kg[*7] 1,653 - 1,763 kg[*8] 1,750 kg[*9]	
Maximum Permissible Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb[*10]	
	2,258 kg[*11] 2,300 kg[*12] 2,326 kg[*13] 2,350 kg[*14]	
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb[*10]	
	Front	1,180 kg
	Rear	1,150 kg[*15] 1,300 kg[*16]

*1: Taiwanese models
*2: Malaysian models
*3: Latin American, Bangladesi, Bruneian and Sri Lankan models
*4: Singaporean models
*5: Oceanian models
*6: Cambodia, Laos, and Philippine models
*7: Vietnamese models
*8: African models and Middle Eastern models
*9: Pakistani models
*10: African models and Middle Eastern models with full-size spare tyre
*11: Oceanian models with five-seaters
*12: Five-seaters models except Oceanian models
*13: Oceanian models with seven-seaters
*14: Seven-seaters models except Oceanian models
*15: Five-seaters models
*16: Seven-seaters models

■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC
Bore x Stroke	73 × 89.5 mm
Displacement	1,498 cm^3
Compression Ratio	10.3 : 1
Spark Plugs	NGK DILKAR8P8SY
Max. Power[*1]	142 kW (190 HP)/6,000 rpm
Max. Torque[*1]	243 N·m (24.8 kgf·m)/1,700-5,000 rpm
Max. Speed[*1]	190 km/h

*1: GCC country and Iraqi models

■ Fuel

Fuel: Type	**Pakistani models** EURO V/5 Unleaded petrol, manganese: maximum 2mg/Litre, research octane number 91 or higher **Singaporean models** Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher **Taiwanese models** Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher **Models for other countries** Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	57 L

■ Battery

Capacity	48AH(5)/60AH(20)[*1] 36AH(5)/47AH(20)[*2]

*1: Taiwanese models
*2: Except Taiwanese models

Idle Stop[*1]:
The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type (LN2 EFB). Ask a dealer for more details.

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.5 L

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)		LED
Headlights (High Beam)		LED
Front Fog Lights*		LED
Front Turn Signal/Position/Daytime Running Lights		LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)		LED
Brake Lights		LED
Taillights		LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights		LED
Rear Side Marker Lights		LED
Back-Up Lights		LED
Rear Fog Light*		LED
High-Mount Brake Light		LED
Rear Licence Plate Light		LED
Interior Lights		
	Front Map Lights	LED
	Rear Map Lights	LED
	Ambient Lights*	LED
	Foot Lights*	LED
	Vanity Mirror Lights*	1.4 W
	Centre Console Light	LED
	Glove Box Light*	LED
	Luggage Area Light(s)	LED
	Console Compartment Light	LED
	Door Inner Handle Lights*	LED
	Beverage Holder Light*	LED

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	520 - 570 g*1 690 - 740 g*2

*1: Models without rear cooler
*2: Models with rear cooler

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HCF-2	
Capacity	Change	3.5 L*1 3.9 L*2

*1: 2WD models
*2: AWD models

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Models with Gasoline Particulate Filter Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 ACEA C2/C3/C5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 Models without Gasoline Particulate Filter Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 API service SN or higher grade or ACEA A5/B5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30	
Capacity	Change	3.2 L
	Change including filter	3.5 L

Refer to the following page to determine whether your vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter.
➡ **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 832

■ Rear Differential Fluid*

Specified	Honda DPSF-II
Capacity	Change 1.247 L

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	5.93 L*1 (change including the remaining 0.61 L in the reserve tank) 5.94 L*2 (change including the remaining 0.61 L in the reserve tank) 6.02 L*3 (change including the remaining 0.61 L in the reserve tank)

*1: Taiwanese models
*2: Left-hand Drive Type except Taiwanese models
*3: Right-hand Drive Type

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	235/65R17 104H*1 235/60R18 103H*2 235/55R19 101Y*3
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact Spare*	Size	T155/90D17 112M
	Pressure kPa (bar [psi])	420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)
Spare* (Full-size tyre)	Size	235/65R17 104H*1 235/60R18 103H*2 235/55R19 101Y*3
	Pressure	Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	17X7 1/2J*1 18X7 1/2J*2 19X7 1/2J*3
	Compact Spare*	17X4T
	Spare* (Full-size tyre)	17X7 1/2J*1 18X7 1/2J*2 19X7 1/2J*3

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel
*3: Models with 19 inch wheel

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length		4,690 mm*1 4,691 mm*2, *3, *4 4,704 mm*5 4,706 mm*6, *7, *8, *9
Width		1,866 mm
Height		1,674 mm*2, *10, *25 1,681 mm*3, *12, *14, *16, *18 1,684 mm*24 1,691 mm*11, *13, *15, *17, *21
Wheelbase		2,700 mm*11, *13, *15, *17, *21 2,701 mm*3, *12, *14, *16, *18, *20 2,702 mm*10, *19, *24, *25
Track	Front	1,608 mm*13, *17 1,611 mm*3, *14, *18 1,612 mm*10, *12, *19, *21, *22, *24, *25 1,613 mm*11, *20, *23
	Rear	1,623 mm*13, *17 1,627 mm*3, *14, *18 1,638 mm*11, *26 1,640 mm*12, *21, *24, *27 1,641 mm*10, *19, *20, *22, *25

*1: Taiwanese models
*2: Cambodia, Laos, and Philippine models
*3: Vietnamese models
*4: Malaysian models
*5: Oceanian models
*6: African and Middle Eastern models
*7: Pakistani models
*8: Singaporean models
*9: Latin American models and Bangladeshi, Bruneian and Sri Lankan models
*10: Fijian models
*11: Malaysian models with AWD
*12: Malaysian models with 2WD
*13: Latin American and Southeast Asia models with AWD
*14: Latin American and Southeast Asia models with 2WD
*15: Australian and New Zealand models with AWD
*16: Australian and New Zealand models with 2WD
*17: Bahraini, Kuwaiti, Qatari, Saudi Arabian models with AWD
*18: Bahraini, Kuwaiti, Qatari, Saudi Arabian models with 2WD
*19: Philippine models
*20: Cambodia and Laos models
*21: African models and Jordan and Lebanon models with full-size spare tyre
*22: Australian and New Zealand models with seven-seaters
*23: Australian and New Zealand models with five-seaters
*24: Iraqi, Jordan, Lebanon, Omani, U.A.E. and Yemeni models with AWD and 17 inch spare tyre
*25: Iraqi, Jordan, Lebanon, Omani, U.A.E. and Yemeni models with 2WD and 17 inch spare tyre
*26: Australian and New Zealand models with AWD and five-seaters
*27: Australian and New Zealand models with 2WD and five-seaters

Oceanian models

■ Max. Towing Weight

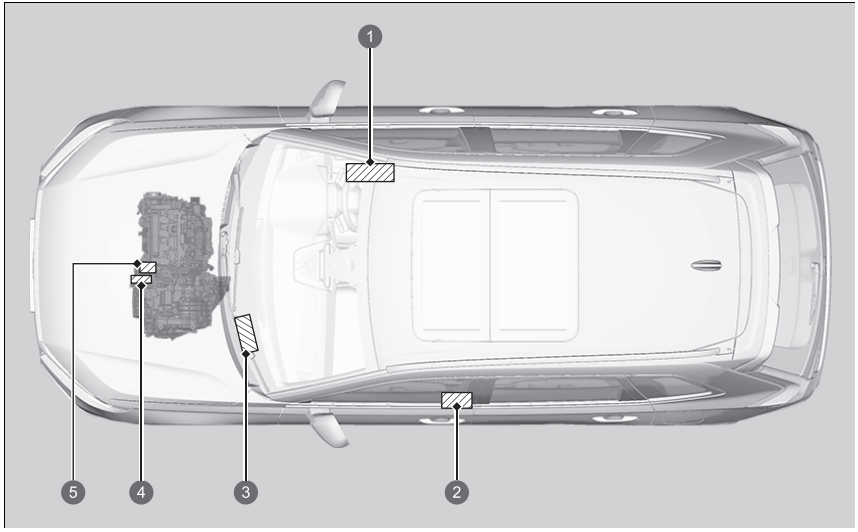
Trailer with brakes	1,000 kg*1 1,500 kg*2
Trailer without brakes	600 kg
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	100 kg

*1: Seven-seaters models
*2: Five-seaters models

* Not available on all models

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.

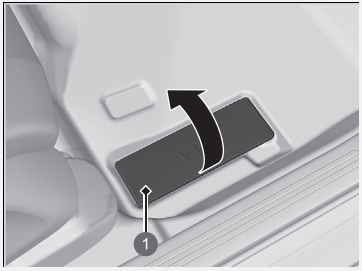


1. Vehicle Identification Number
2. Certification Label*/Vehicle Identification Number*/Certification Plate*
3. Vehicle Identification Number*
4. Continuously Variable Transmission Number
5. Engine Number

* Not available on all models

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



1. Cover

Environmental Protection Regulation

Taiwanese models

NOTICE

Used batteries to be disposed of shall be collected in conformity with the regulations of Environmental Protection Administration.



 * Not available on all models

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Antiguan, Barbudan, Egyptian, Qatari, and Surinamese models

Keyless Access System	
BCM	FOB
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.	This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Egyptian and Qatari models

Keyless Access System Card*
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Australian models

Adaptive Cruise Control/ Collision Mitigation Braking System


* Not available on all models

Continued

Benin models

Adaptive Cruise Control/ Collision Mitigation Braking System
AGREE PAR L'ARCEP BENIN Numéro d'agrément : 2022-160 Date d'agrément : 2022_05_24

Ghanaian models

Adaptive Cruise Control/ Collision Mitigation Braking System
NCA Approved: 7E6-M1-X9B-SRD

Grand Caymanian models

Keyless Access System
BCM

https://continental-homologation.com/honda

CE

Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [41580430] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.
The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://continental-homologation.com/honda

Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

Short range device for remote control

- Frequency band: 125KHz

- Maximum transmitted output: 10mW

Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office

Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300
Aalst - Belgium



Continental

Vehicle Networking and Information (VNI)

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12 | 93055 Regensburg | Germany

Lavinia-Carolina Grecu
VNI CE HW EU2 T5R COE HOM
Phone: +40/74x/xxx1x4
Fax: + 40 256 25-3061
Carolina.Grecu@continental-corporation.com

EU Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 2014/53/EU

Date: 16.07.2020 | Your message dated | Our reference | Your reference

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany

Product type designation: 41580430

Intended use: Integrated Body Controller

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a):	Applied standard(s): EN 62368-1:2014 + A11:2017; EN 62479:2010; EN 50663:2017
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b):	Applied standad: EN 301 489-1 V2.2.3(2019-11); Final draft EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1 (2017-03)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2):	Applied standard(s): EN 300 220 -1 V3.1.1; EN 300 220 -2 V3.1.1; EN 300 330 V2.1.1 (2017)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product: CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 16.07.2020

Klaus Binder
Vice President Finance and Controlling
Vehicle Networking and Information

Norbert Müller
Senior Vice President Vehicle Networking and Information (VNI) Central Engineering (CE)

1/1

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg | P.O. Box: 10 09 43, 93009 Regensburg | Germany
www.continental-corporation.com
Registered office: Hanover | Registered Court: Local Court Hanover
HRB 59424 | VAT ID No.: DE 811900883
Executive Board: Georg Sistermann, Harald Stuhlmann
Account at: Deutsche Bank AG, Frankfurt | BIC / SWIFT: DEUTDEFFXXX | IBAN: DE07 5007 0010 0096 5103 00

Continued

Grand Caymanian models

Keyless Access System
FOB

https://continental-homologation.com/honda

CE

Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [TP_4] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.
The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://continental-homologation.com/honda

Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

Short range device for remote control

- Frequency band: 433.92MHz

- Maximum transmitted output: 1mW

Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office

Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300
Aalst - Belgium



Continental

Vehicle Networking and Information

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12 | 93055 Regensburg | Germany

Morar Petre Bogdan
VNI CE HW EU2 TSR COE HOM
Phone: + 40 374- 35-5511
Fax: + 40 374- 35-3061
petre-bogdan.morar@continental-corporation.com

Date: 15.05.2020
Your message dated | Our reference | Your reference

EU Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 2014/53/EU

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany

Product type designation: TP_4

Intended use: Radio Frequency Transmitter used in vehicle locking/unlocking system

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a): Applied standard(s): EN 62368-1:2014+A11:2017, EN 62479:2010, EN 50663:2017

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b): Applied standard(s): DRAFT EN 301 489-1 V2.2.1(2019-03)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2): Applied standard(s): EN 300 220 -1: V3.1.1, EN 300 220 -2: V3.1.1, EN 300 330 -V2.1.1 2017-02

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product: CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 19.05.2020

Klaus Binder
Vice President Finance and Controlling
Central Engineering (CE)
Vehicle Networking and Information (VNI)

Norbert Müller
Senior Vice President
Central Engineering (CE)
Vehicle Networking and Information (VNI)

1,1

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg | P.O. Box 10 09 45, 93009 Regensburg | Germany
www.continental-corporation.com
Registered office: Hannover | Registered Court: Local Court Hanover
HRB 59424 | VAT ID No.: DE 814909863
Executive Board: Georg Sielemann, Harald Stuhlmann
Account at: Deutsche Bank AG, Frankfurt | BIC / SWIFT: DEUTDEFFXXX | IBAN: DE07 5007 0010 0096 5103 00

Jamaican models

Keyless Access System	
BCM	FOB
This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - "41580430" on the product	This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - "TP_4 " on the product

Nigerian models

Keyless Access System		
BCM	FOB	Card Key*
Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

Nigerian models

Adaptive Cruise Control/ Collision Mitigation Braking System	Hands-Free Telephone System
Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

* Not available on all models

Omani models

Adaptive Cruise Control/ Collision Mitigation Braking System	
OMAN TRA R/7983/19 D172338	Oman – TRA D172338 R/13339/22

Pakistani models

Adaptive Cruise Control/ Collision Mitigation Braking System
Approved by PTA TAC NO: 9.243/2023 PTA Pakistan Telecom Authority

Philippine models

Keyless Access System	
BCM	FOB
No.ESD-RCE-2023291 NTC Type Accepted	No.ESD-RCE-2022596C NTC Type Accepted

Singaporean models

Keyless Access System		
BCM	FOB	Card Key*
Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440	Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440	**Complies with IMDA Standards DA107974**

Singaporean models

Adaptive Cruise Control/ Collision Mitigation Braking System
Complies with IMDA Standards DA01740A

* Not available on all models

Taiwanese models

USB Charger	
http://www.alpine.com/e/RoHS/UCU.pdf	
D74006 RoHS(Pb)	
(1 Port USB CHARGER) 最大額定電流 3.0 A 12.0 V 直流電源； 負極接地 12.0 V 3.0 A MAX	(2 Port USB CHARGER) 最大額定電流 6.0 A 12.0 V 直流電源； 負極接地 12.0 V 6.0 A MAX

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

Taiwanese models

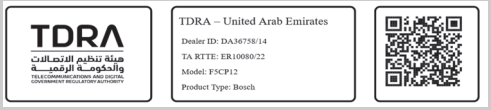
低功率射頻器材技術規範 章節3.8.2警語
取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

 * Not available on all models

U.A.E. models

Keyless Access System		
BCM	FOB	Card Key*
TRA REGISTERED No: ER88345/20 DEALER ID: DA36975/14	TRA REGISTERED No: ER81325/20 DEALER ID: DA36975/14	TRA REGISTERED No: ER02042/21 DEALER ID: DA83384/19

U.A.E. models

Adaptive Cruise Control/ Collision Mitigation Braking System


U.A.E. models

Wireless Charger*


* Not available on all models

Continued

U.A.E. models

Hands-Free Telephone System
Mode Dealer ID Name: 0034163/10 TARTTE: ER10553/22

U.A.E. models

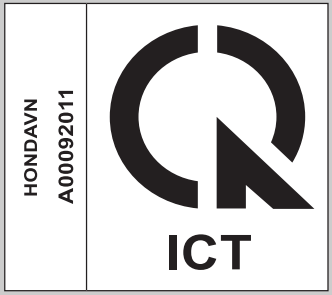
Emergency Call (eCall)*
TDRA ER19526/23 United Arab Emirates

 * Not available on all models

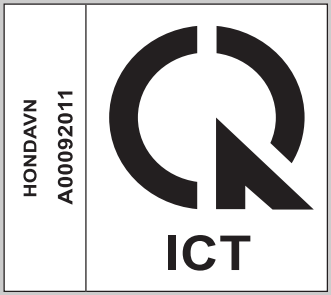
Vietnamese models

Keyless Access System

BCM



FOB



Vietnamese models

Adaptive Cruise Control/ Collision Mitigation Braking System



Wireless Charger*



* Not available on all models

Continued

Vietnamese models

TCU


■ Meter open source licence

The software embedded in this product includes open source software. Refer to the following website for details regarding the open source software.
https://www.nippon-seiki.co.jp/global/business_ic_meter/

■ TCU open source licence*

Except Display Audio with Google built-in

Free/Open Source Software Information
This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).
The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.
https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/

Models with Display Audio with Google built-in

To obtain the source code that is contained in this product, under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licenses that have the obligation to disclose source code, and to access all referred license terms, copyright notices and other relevant documents, please visit *https://opensource.lge.com*. LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to opensource@lge.com. This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product.

■ Multi-View Camera open source licence*

Free/Open Source Software Information
This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).
The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.
http://car.panasonic.jp/oss/n03pkdl6

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Front sensor camera open source licence**

"The product includes code under public domain : https://www.jonolick.com/uploads/7/9/2/1/7921194/jo_jpeg.cpp
The code is based on https://github.com/jpeg-js/jpeg-js/blob/master/lib/encoder.js
Copyright (c) 2008, Adobe Systems Incorporated

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of Adobe Systems Incorporated nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.
*/
/*

Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 625

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 774
Accessories and Modifications 871
Accessory Power Sockets 317
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 153, 707
Adding
  Coolant 836
  Engine Oil 835
  Washer 841
Additives, Engine Oil 832
Adjustable Speed Limiter 637
  Indicator 153
Adjusting
  Armrest 301
  Clock 218
  Front Seats 283
  Head Restraints 297
  Headlights 267
  Mirrors 279
  Second Row Seats 288
  Sound 340, 405
  Steering Wheel 278
  Third Row Seats 293
Agile Handling Assist 654
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 325
  Changing the Mode 327
  Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 328
  Dust and Pollen Filter 862
  Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 327
  Sensor 330
  Synchronization Mode 329
  Using Automatic Climate Control 325
Air Pressure 849, 942
Airbags 62
  After a Collision 64
  Airbag Care 79
  Centre Airbag 71
  Event Data Recorder 1
  Front Airbags (SRS) 64
  Indicator 78, 143
  Knee Airbags 67
  Sensors 62
  Side Airbags 73
  Side Curtain Airbags 76
All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System 655
AM/FM Radio 342, 414, 507, 512
Android Auto 358, 439
Android Auto™ 529
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 774
  Indicator 143
Apple CarPlay 354, 433, 525
Armrest 301
Audio Remote Controls 339, 392, 489
Audio System 334
  Adjusting the Sound 340, 405, 502
  Android Auto™ 529
  App Shortcut Function 396
  Apple CarPlay 525
  Audio System Function 336, 389
  Audio/Information Screen 492
  Basic Operation 336, 389, 486
  Clock Setup 402, 499
  Customized Features 540
  DAB 419
  Display Setup 341, 406, 503
  Error Messages 578
  General Information 580
  Google built-in 533
  How to Update 407
  How to Update Wirelessly 409, 505
  How to Update with a USB Device 410
  Limitations for Manual Operation 370, 466
  MP3/WMA/AAC 346, 425
  Profile Settings 539
  Radio Data System (RDS) 417
  Selecting an Audio Source 401, 498
  Start Up 388, 484
  Status Area 401, 497
  System Updates 407, 504
  System Updates Settings 408, 506
  USB Flash Drives 425, 518, 582
  USB Ports 338, 391, 488
  User Information 535
  Wallpaper Setup 403, 500

Wi-Fi Connection 432, 524
Audio/Information Screen 395, 492
Auto High-Beam 269
Indicator 147
Auto Idle Stop 628
OFF Button 630
Automatic Brake Hold 771
Indicator 140, 771
Automatic Brake Hold System
Indicator 140
Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function 282
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 273
Average Fuel Economy 168, 197
Average Speed 170, 199
AWD (All-Wheel Drive) 655
AWD Torque Distribution Monitor 177, 206

B

Battery
Charging System Indicator 141, 914
If the Battery Is Dead 906
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 855
Maintenance (Replacing) 859
Belts (Seat) 47
Beverage Holders 308
Blind Spot Information System 665
***Bluetooth*® Audio** 348, 429, 521
Booster Seats (For Children) 131
Brake System 767
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 774
Automatic Brake Hold 771
Brake Assist System 775
Fluid 840
Foot Brake 770
Indicator (Amber) 140, 916
Indicator (Red) 138, 139, 915, 916
Parking Brake 767
Bulb Replacement
Brake Lights, Taillights, Rear Side Marker Lights, and Rear Turn Signal Lights 842
Front Fog Lights 842
Front Turn Signal Lights, Position/Daytime Running Lights 842
Headlights 842
High-Mount Brake Light 843
Rear Licence Plate Light 843
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights 842
Taillights, Rear Fog Light, and Back-Up Lights 843
Vanity Mirror Lights 844
Bulb Specifications 941

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas 133
Carrying Luggage 599, 601
Centre Airbag 71
Certification Label 943
Changing Bulbs 842
Charging System Indicator 141, 914
Child Restraint System 81
Booster Seats 131
Child Restraint System for Infants 84
Child Restraint System for Small Children 86
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 122
Larger Children 130
Rear-facing Child Restraint System 84
Selecting a Child Restraint System 87
Using Tether 125
Child Safety 81
Childproof Door Locks 234
Childproof Door Locks 234
Cleaning the Exterior 868
Cleaning the Interior 865
Climate Control System 325
Changing the Mode 325
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 328
Dust and Pollen Filter 862
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 327
Sensors 330
Synchronization Mode 329

Using Automatic Climate Control 325
Clock 218
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System) 677
Coat Hook 310
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 677
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Grey) 154
Colour Audio 336
Console Compartment 307
Continuously Variable Transmission
Creeping 619
Fluid 839
Kickdown 619
Operating the Shift Lever 29, 621, 623
Shift Lever Does Not Move 909
Shifting 620, 622
Controls 217
Coolant (Engine)
Adding the Coolant 836
Overheating 911
Cross Traffic Monitor 785
Cup Holders 308
Customize Display 182, 210
Customized Features 183, 362, 443, 452, 540

D

DAB 419
Daytime Running Lights 266
Dead Battery 906
Defaulting All the Settings 367, 462, 560
Deflation Warning System 659
Indicator 918, 919
Initialisation 660
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 328
Demister 275
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 945
Dimming
Headlights 261
Rearview Mirror 279, 280
Dipstick (Engine Oil) 834
Display Audio 484
Display Audio System 388
Display Setup 341, 406
Door Mirrors 281
Doors 219
Auto Door Locking 235
Auto Door Unlocking 235
Door and/or Tailgate Open Message 46
Keys 219
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 232
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 223
Lockout Prevention System 231
Driver Attention Monitor 173, 202
Driver Information Interface ... 165, 191, 194
Switching the Display 165, 194
Driving 597
Braking 767
Continuously Variable Transmission 619
Shifting Position 620, 622
Starting the Engine 611
Driving Position Memory System 276
Dust and Pollen Filter 862

E

eCall Indicator 933
ECON Button 627
ECON Mode Indicator 149
Elapsed Time 170, 199
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
Indicator 143, 917
Emergency Call (eCall) 933
Automatic Emergency Call 933
Manual Emergency Call 935
Emergency Engine Start 904
Emergency Engine Stop 905
Emergency Stop Signal 776
Emergency Towing 928
Engine
If the Battery Is Dead 906
Number 943
Oil 832
Starting 611

Engine Coolant
Adding the Coolant ... 836
Overheating ... 911
Temperature Gauge ... 161
Engine Oil ... 832
Adding ... 835
Checking ... 834
Low Oil Pressure Warning ... 913
Recommended Engine Oil ... 832
ENGINE START/STOP Button ... 257
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System ... 917
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) ... 133
Exterior Care (Cleaning) ... 868
Exterior Mirrors ... 281

F

Features ... 333
Filter
Dust and Pollen ... 862
Flat Tyre ... 875
Fluids
Brake ... 840
Continuously Variable Transmission ... 839
Engine Coolant ... 836
Windscreen Washer ... 841
FM/AM Radio ... 342, 414, 507, 512
Fog Lights ... 264
Folding Down the Second Row Seat ... 290, 291
Folding Down the Third Row Seat ... 294
Foot Brake ... 770
Front Airbags (SRS) ... 64
Front Seat Heaters ... 323
Front Seats ... 283
Adjusting ... 284
Front Sensor Camera ... 763
Fuel ... 31, 805
Average Fuel Economy ... 168, 197
Economy and CO_2 Emissions ... 809
Gauge ... 161
Instant Fuel Economy ... 168, 197
Low Fuel Indicator (Amber) ... 142
Range ... 168, 197
Recommendation ... 805
Refueling ... 805
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions ... 809
Fuel Fill Cap ... 807
Fuel Fill Door ... 807, 929
Fuses ... 920
Inspecting and Changing ... 925
Locations ... 920, 922, 924

G

Gauges ... 160
Glass (care) ... 866, 869
Glove Box ... 306
Google built-in ... 533

H

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System ... 561
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History ... 569
Automatic Transferring ... 570
Favourite Contacts ... 571
HFT Buttons ... 561
HFT Menus ... 563
HFT Status Display ... 562
Limitations for Manual Operation ... 562
Making a Call ... 573
Options During a Call ... 577
Phone Setup ... 566
Receiving a Call ... 576
Ringtone ... 570
Hands-Free Telephone System ... 368, 463
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls ... 380, 473
Automatic Transferring ... 378, 474
Favorite Contacts ... 381, 475
HFT Buttons ... 368, 463
HFT Menus ... 371, 467
HFT Status Display ... 370, 465
Limitations for Manual Operation ... 370, 466
Making a Call ... 383, 479
Options During a Call ... 387, 482
Phone Settings Screen ... 469
Phone Setup ... 373, 470
Receiving a Call ... 386, 481
Ringtone ... 378, 474
Hazard Warning Button ... 6, 7

Head Restraints 297, 299
Headlights 261
Adjuster 267
Aiming 842
Auto High-Beam 269
Dimming 261
Operating 261
Head-Up Display 212
Heaters (Front Seat) 323
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) ... 368, 463, 561
High Beam Indicator 147
Hill Descent Control System 635
Indicator 149
Hill Start Assist System 616
Honda SENSING 33, 674

I

Identification Numbers 943
Engine and Transmission 943
Vehicle Identification 943
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate 931
Immobilizer System 247
Indicator 148
Indicators 136
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (Amber) 153
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (White/Green) 153
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval 154, 707
Adjustable Speed Limiter (White/Green) ... 153
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 143
Auto High-Beam 147
Auto Idle Stop (Green) 151
Auto Idle Stop OFF 151
Auto Idle Stop Suspend 152
Auto Idle Stop System (Amber) 151
Automatic Brake Hold 140, 772
Automatic Brake Hold System 140, 771
Charging System 141
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Amber) 154
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Grey) 154
ECON Mode 149, 627
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 143
Front Fog Light 147
High Beam 147
Hill Descent Control System (White/Green) 149
Immobilizer System 148
Intelligent Speed Limiter (White/Green) 153
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber) 154
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (White/Green) 154
Lights On 147
Low Fuel (Amber) 142
Low Temperature 143
Low Tire Pressure/TPMS 145, 656
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System 146, 659
M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/ Shift 141
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 141
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) 140, 916
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 138, 139, 915, 916
Parking Sensor 150
Rear Fog Light 147
Road Departure Mitigation (Amber) 155
Road Departure Mitigation (Grey) 155
Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF 155
Safety Support (Amber) 156
Safety Support (Green/Grey) 159
Seat Belt Reminder 142
Security System Alarm 149
Shift Position 141
Speed Alarm Indicator 150
Supplemental Restraint System 143
System Message 150
Transmission System 141
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 147
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF 144, 653
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 144, 652
Instant Fuel Economy 168, 197
Instrument Panel 135

Intelligent Speed Limiter 644
Indicator 153
Interior Lights 303
Interior Rearview Mirror 279, 280

J

Jacking Points 894
Jump Starting 906

K

Key Number Tag 221
Keyless Access System 223
Keyless Lockout Prevention 231
Keys 219
Lockout Prevention 231
Number Tag 221
Rear Door Won't Open 234
Remote Transmitter 229
Kickdown 619
Knee Airbags 67

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 729
LaneWatch 669
Lead Car Departure Notification System 751
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto 594
Lights 261, 842
Auto High-Beam 269
Bulb Replacement 842
Daytime Running Lights 266
Fog Light 264
Front Fog Lights 264
High Beam Indicator 147
Interior 303
Light Switches 261
Lights On Indicator 147
Load Limit 601
Locking/Unlocking 219
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 235
Childproof Door Locks 234
From Inside 232
From Outside 223
Keys 219
Using a Key 230
Lockout Prevention System 231
Low Battery Charge 914
Low Fuel Indicator (Amber) 142
Low Keyless Remote/Card Key Signal Strength 222
Low Oil Pressure Warning 913
Low Speed Braking Control 691
Low Temperature Indicator 143
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator 919
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator 918
Lower Anchorages 115
Lubricant Specifications Chart 941
Luggage (Load Limit) 601
Luggage Hooks 311

M

Maintenance 811
Adding the Coolant 836
Battery 855
Brake Fluid 840
Cleaning 865
Climate Control 862
Coolant 836
Oil 834
Oil Monitor System 815
Precautions 812
Remote Transmitter 859
Replacing Light Bulbs 842
Safety 813
Schedule 822
Transmission Fluid 839
Tyres 849
Under the Bonnet 829
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 141, 914
Map Light Switches 304
Maximum Permissible Weight 601, 940
Meters, Gauges 160
Mirrors 279
Adjusting 279
Door 281
Interior Rearview 279, 280
Modifications (and Accessories) 871

MP3 ..... 346, 425
Multi-View Camera 791
Multi-View Rear Camera 789

N

Navigation 171, 200
No Content 180
Numbers (Identification) 943

O

Off-road Guidelines 609
Oil (Engine) 832
  Adding 835
  Checking 834
  Low Oil Pressure Warning 913
  Recommended Engine Oil 832
  Viscosity 832
Oil Monitor System 815
Open Source Licences 589, 957
Opening/Closing
  Bonnet 830
  Panoramic Roof 253
  Power Windows 249
  Tailgate 236
Outside Temperature Display 162
Overheating 911

P

Paddle Shifters
  (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) 625
Panoramic Roof 253
Parking Brake 767
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator
  (Amber) 140, 916
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator
  (Red) 138, 139, 915, 916
Parking Sensor System 779
Passing Indicators 261
Petrol 805
  Economy and CO_2 Emissions 809
  Gauge 161
  Information 805
  Instant Fuel Economy 168, 197
  Refueling 805
Phone 171
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 348, 429, 521
Power Tailgate 238
Power Windows 249
Precautions While Driving 617
Pregnant Women 58
Profile Settings 539
Puncture (Tyre) 875

R

Radiator 838
Radio (AM/FM) 507, 512
Radio (FM/AM) 342, 414
Radio Data System (RDS) 417, 510
Range 168, 197
RDS (Radio Data System) 417, 510
Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control
  System 655
Rear Demister Button 275
Rear Seats
  Second Row Seats 288
  Third Row Seats 293
Rearview Mirror 279, 280
Refueling 805
  Fuel Gauge 161
  Low Fuel Indicator (Amber) 142
  Petrol 805, 940
Regulations 945
Remote Transmitter 229
Replacement
  Battery 859
  Bulbs 842
  Fuses 920, 922, 924
  Rear Wiper Blade Rubber 847
  Tyre 851, 888
  Wiper Blade Rubber 845
Resetting a Trip Meter 168, 197
Road Departure Mitigation 697
  On and Off 702
Road Departure Mitigation (Grey) 155

S

Safe Driving 41
Safety Check 46
Safety Labels 134
Safety Message 0
Safety Support 178, 207
Seat Belts 47
  Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage 55
  Checking 59
  Fastening 53
  Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 122
  Pregnant Women 58
  Reminder 50
  Warning Indicator 50, 142
Seat Heaters 323
Seats 283
  Adjusting 283
  Front Seats 283
  Seat Heaters 323
  Second Row Seat 288
  Third Row Seat 293
Second Row Seat (Folding Down) 290
Security System 247
  Immobilizer System Indicator 148
  Security System Alarm Indicator 149
Select Lever 29
Selecting a Child Restraint System 87
Selector Knob (Audio) 337
Setting the Clock 218
Settings 183
Shift Lever 29
  Releasing 909
  Won't Move 909
Shift Position Indicator 141, 621, 623
Shifting (Transmission) 620, 622
Shoulder Anchorage 55
Side Airbags 73
Side Curtain Airbag 76
Siri Eyes Free 352
SOS Button 935
SOS Cancel Button 935
Spark Plugs 940
Specifications 940
Specified Fuel 805, 940
Speed Alarm 172, 201
Speed Limiter, Adjustable 637
Speed Limiter, Intelligent 644
Speedometer 160
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 64
Starting Assist Brake Function 634
Starting the Engine
  Does Not Start 900
  If the Battery Is Dead 906
Steering Wheel 278
  Adjusting 278
Stopping 777
Sunglasses Holder 312
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 64
Switches
  (Around the Steering Wheel) 6, 7, 8, 257
System Message Indicator 150
System Updates 407, 504

T

Tachometer 160
Tailgate 236
  Unable to Open 931
TCU Open Source Licence 957
Temperature
  Gauge 161
  Outside Temperature Display 162
Temperature Sensor 162, 330
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre 875
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 875
Third Row Seat (Folding Down) 294
Third Row Seat Access 292
Time (Setting) 218
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 656
  Indicator 145
Tools 874
Towing a Trailer 602
  Equipment and Accessories 604
  Load Limits 602
Towing Your Vehicle
  Emergency 928
TPMS
  (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) 656
  Indicator 145
Traffic Jam Assist 742
Traffic Sign Recognition System 756

Transmission 619, 620, 622
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 625
Creeping 619
Fluid 839
Kickdown 619
Number 943
Shift Lever Does Not Move 909
Shift Position Indicator 141, 621, 623
Trip Meter 168, 197
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) 875
Troubleshooting 873
Blown Fuse 920, 922, 924
Brake Pedal Vibrates 37
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 38
Emergency Towing 928
Engine Won't Start 900
Noise When Braking 39
Overheating 911
Puncture/Flat Tyre 888
Rear Door Won't Open 38, 234
Shift Lever Won't Move 909
Warning Indicators 136
Turbo Engine Vehicle 810
Turn Signals
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 147
Tyres 849
Air Pressure 942
Checking and Maintaining 849
Inspection 849
Puncture (Flat Tyre) 888
Rotation 852
Tyre Chains 854
Wear Indicators 850
Winter 854

U

Under-floor Storage Area 313
Unlocking the Doors 223
USB Flash Drives 346, 425, 518, 582
USB Ports 338, 391, 488
User Information 535

V

Vanity Mirrors 11
Vehicle Identification Numbers 943
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) 652
OFF Button 653
OFF Indicator 144
System Indicator 144
Viscosity (Oil) 832, 941
Voice Control Operation 411
Audio Commands 412
General Commands 412
List Commands 413
Navigation Commands 413
Phone Commands 412
Standard Commands 413
Voice Portal Screen 412
Voice Recognition 411
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) 652

W

Wallpaper 403, 500
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 913
Warning Labels 134
Warnings 182, 211
Watts 941
Wear Indicators (Tyre) 850
Wi-Fi Connection 432, 524
Window Washers 272
Adding/Refilling Fluid 841
Switch 272
Windows (Opening and Closing) 249
Windscreen
Cleaning 866, 869
Defrosting/Defogging 275, 328
Washer Fluid 841
Wiper Blades 845
Wipers and Washers 272
Winter Tyres 854
Tyre Chains 854
Wipers and Washers 272
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 273
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 845
Rear 274
Wireless Charger 319
WMA 346, 425
Worn Tyres 849